





Class G125

Book B97

copy 2





ELEMENTS  
OF  
GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY  
COMBINED,

IN A  
CATECHETICAL FORM,

FOR THE USE OF  
FAMILIES AND SCHOOLS.

---

---

BY FREDERICK BUTLER, A. M.

---

---

ACCOMPANIED WITH AN  
ATLAS.

---

*Geography and History, to be Useful, should be Inseparable.*

---

**Fourth Edition,**  
REVISED, CORRECTED, AND BROUGHT DOWN  
TO THE PRESENT TIME.

---

PUBLISHED BY  
DEMING & FRANCIS, WETHERSFIELD, CONN  
Sold by  
*Rossiter Robbins, Cincinnati, Ohio.*

---

1828.

3125  
B77  
copy 2

DISTRICT OF CONNECTICUT, SS.

*Be it remembered*, That on the twenty-sixth day of February, A. D. 1825, in the forty-ninth year of the independence of the United States of America, Deming & Francis of the said district, have deposited in this office the title of a Book, the right whereof they claim as proprietors, in the words following to wit :

“Elements of Geography and History-Combined, in a Catechetical Form, for the Use of Families and Schools; by Frederick Butler, A. M. Accompanied with an Atlas. Geography and History, to be useful, should be inseparable.”

In conformity to the act of the Congress of the United States, entitled “An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned.”

CHARLES A. INGERSOLL,

*Clerk of the District of Connecticut.*

A true copy of record, examined and sealed by me,

CHARLES A. INGERSOLL,

*Clerk of the District of Connecticut.*

In Exchange

Duke University

JUL 12 1933

## PREFACE.

---

The Author of this work feels it his duty to say, that the several Geographies now in use in schools, are valuable, as far as they extend, and do great credit to their several authors; but he has long been impressed with the belief, that a serious defect is common to them all, viz. a want of *general history*. To remedy this defect, the Author published his "Catechetical Compend of History" in 1817, with directions in his preface that it should be taught in schools, upon the maps of the several Geographies; the work was well received, but the application to the instruction of Geography failed. The public soon expressed a desire for a more enlarged view of the subject, which led the Author to publish his "Sketches of Universal History" in 1818. This was designed more immediately for the use of Academies, and was also well received; but the intended application to the instruction of Geography failed; which led the Author to pursue the subject, and adopt a third plan, and incorporate with the science of Geography, *general historical views of every kingdom and state in the world*; this he accomplished in 1819; but owing to unforeseen circumstances, the publication of the work was suspended.

The Author spared no pains in collecting and arranging such facts as were calculated to render the work useful and interesting; and has compressed into a small cheap volume, a mass of information, comprising a concise *Geographical and Historical view of every State and Nation, from its origin down to the present time*; in which all the great political changes, ancient and modern, that have taken place in the world, are clearly explained.

The Geographical descriptions of countries are so arranged in the work, as to lay the best possible foundation, and pursue the most connected train of history, not only of each country, but upon each grand division of the earth; so that the history when taken collectively, may appear as one connected whole.

The whole Geographical part is a collection of Questions and Answers, calculated to render a system of instruction easy

and familiar; numerous other Questions upon the Maps are added, in order to exercise the student in his Geographical researches; promiscuous Questions are also added to the history of each country, for the use of schools.

In compiling this work, the Author had before him the Geographies of Morse, (both Universal and Abridgement) Cummings, Adams, Dwight, Willett, and Dana's Sketches of the Western States; from which he made the most valuable selections. The historical sketches are derived from Rollin's Ancient History, Russell's Modern Europe, Robertson's South America; and various other writers, particularly upon the United States.

The Author assures the public that he has used every exertion to have the work correct, by revising and comparing it with the latest publications, particularly those of Morse, Worcester, and Woodbridge, and from which he has made some valuable selections. How far the Author has succeeded in his attempts to render the work acceptable, he can with cheerfulness rely upon the candour of the public to decide.

This work is accompanied with an improved ATLAS, containing nine Maps, in which all the modern Geographical changes are carefully and particularly laid down, viz.—I. A Map of the World, upon which are designated the degrees of civilization, government, and religion of each country; also the trade winds and gulf-stream of the Atlantic ocean, the monsoons of the Indian ocean &c. II. North America. III. The United States, which is much improved, particularly the Western Section, and extends to the Pacific ocean, including Spanish North America, designating the boundary lines as settled with Spain, Russia, and England—also, discoveries, settlements, and military posts upon the Missouri—together with the discoveries upon the Columbia river, &c. IV. South America. V. Europe. VI. British Isles: and upon that of England are designated the several counties that formed the 7 kingdoms of the Saxon Heptarchy. VII. Asia. VIII. Africa. IX. Palestine. On the face of all the maps are exhibited the height of mountains, length of rivers, and the situation of every missionary establishment now formed.

*Wethersfield, Conn. 1825.*



## RECOMMENDATIONS.

---

*Excerpt from the "American Journal of Education," an ably conducted Review, published at Boston.*

Butler's ELEMENTS OF GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY COMBINED, contain much that will be gratifying to every Teacher, who adopts a practical mode of instruction. Some of the advantages likely to result from the use of this work, are peculiar. Geography is here combined with History; the former science is thus applied to one of its principal uses, and is rendered more pleasing, than it otherwise could be to the young; while the latter is practically and thoroughly taught; and in so interesting a way too, as to produce a desire for a more extensive knowledge of it.

Another excellent feature in the plan of this Geography is, that half of the book is allotted to America, and much the greater part of that space is occupied with the United States."

---

*Doylestown, Penn. Jan. 1846.*

Having examined with considerable attention a new School Geography, by Frederick Butler, I most cheerfully express my approbation of the work. The plan of teaching any science by questions and answers, possesses some advantages over the common method; but the great recommendation of this book is, the union of History and Geography, to a much greater extent than in any work which I have read. This cannot fail to aid the student in the acquisition of knowledge, as it will give him an opportunity of associating events and dates with all those circumstances of place, which are calculated to fix them in his memory. The work contains a great deal of matter, which appears to be judiciously selected.

E. SMITH,

Teacher Union Academy.

*Doylestown, Berks co. Penn. Jan. 1826.*

I heartily concur in the above recommendation, and wish to add, that in my opinion, the Atlas which accompanies this Geography, contains a set of maps much better executed than those in most of our School Geographies. Among the improvements to be found in this Atlas, I cannot help mentioning the degrees of Civilization, Government, &c. of every State and Nation on the Earth; these give it a decided superiority over every other Atlas with which I am acquainted.

GEORGE MURRAY

Teacher, English Department, Union Academy.

## RECOMMENDATIONS.

*Doylestown, Penn 1826.*

ELEMENTS OF GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY COMBINED, by Frederick Butler, is a work which I most cheerfully recommend to parents, and to all who are engaged in the instruction of youth. It comprises much in a small space; the arrangement is such as appears to me to be well calculated to aid the memory; the form of question and answer seems the best adapted to the youthful learner, and the union of History and Geography is calculated to impart a higher degree of interest to the study, and while it aids the memory, furnishes much additional knowledge to the mind.

CHARLES HYDE,  
Pastor Presbyterian Church, Doylestown.

---

*Lafayette Seminary, Fayette, Ky. May 30, 1827*

FREDERICK BUTLER, Esq.

Sir,—Your ELEMENTS OF GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY COMBINED, together with your ATLAS, to the former, have recently come under my notice, and after a satisfactory examination of the same, most cheerfully state, that I am decidedly of the opinion, that it is a work of intrinsic merit, and that it has superior claims on the public, for encouragement, to any other work, of the kind, that has come under my notice.

Given under my hand, the date, &c. above written,  
BEVERLEY A. HICHE, Teacher

---

*Bryan's Station Seminary, Fayette city, Ky. June 1, 1827.*

Sir—I have examined with attention your work, entitled ELEMENTS OF GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY COMBINED, and am decidedly of the opinion, that it is a work better calculated for the use of schools and private students, than any of the kind which has preceded it.

Yours, &c. JOSIAH GAYLE,  
Teacher of Latin and the English Sciences

# CONTENTS.

---

	<i>Page.</i>
Introduction	9
Grand Divisions	13
NORTH AMERICA	14
Greenland	22
British America	23
United States	33
—Grand Divisions of the United States	49
—Eastern States	49
—Middle States	76
—Southern States	95
—Western States	110
Spanish North America	174
Native Tribes	181
West Indies	185
NORTH AMERICA	195
Columbia	200
Guiana	205
Brazil	206
Buenos Ayres	208
Chili	210
Bolivar	213
Peru	215
Independent America	219
South American Isles	220
EUROPE	221
Great Britain	251
England	253
Scotland	254
Ireland	256
British Isles, &c.	258
France	259
Spain	254
Portugal	258
Italy	260
Italian States	263
Switzerland	270
Germany	272
Austria	277
Prussia	288
Saxony	292
Hanover	293
German States, &c.	294
Bavaria	297
Wirtemberg	298
Baden—Netherlands	299

Denmark	305
Norway	306
Sweden	307
Lapland	310
Russian Empire	"
Russia in Europe	311
Poland	316
Turkey in Europe	318
Turkish or Grecian Isles	321
Republic of the Seven Isles	"
Grecian Revolution	323
ASIA	332
Turkey in Asia	339
Arabia	341
Persia	347
Tartary	350
Russia in Asia	"
Chinese Tartary	353
Independent Tartary	354
Tibet	355
China	357
Corea	361
Japan	362
Hindoostan	363
British India	366
Further India	368
Asiatic Isles	371
Australasia	374
Polynesia	376
AMERICA	378
Northern Africa	381
Egypt	"
Nabia	388
Abyssinia	390
Middle Africa	391
Eastern Coast	392
Cape of Good Hope	"
Western Coast	393
African Isles	396
Astronomical Geography	399
Geometrical Definitions	405
Of the Globes	406
Of Maps	411
Construction of Maps	413
Promiscuous Questions on the Atlas	415

**ELEMENTS**  
OF  
**GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY**  
**COMBINED.**

---

**Introduction.**

Q. What is Geography ?

A. Geography is a description of the Earth.

Q. How may Geography be divided ?

A. Geography may be divided into Physical, Political, Statistical and Astronomical.

Q. What is Physical Geography ?

A. Physical Geography is a description of the Form of the Earth, with its natural divisions, productions, climates, &c.

Q. What is Political Geography ?

A. Political Geography is a description of Human Society.

Q. What is Statistical Geography ?

A. Statistical Geography is a description of the Extent, Population, and Resources of Nations.

Q. What is Astronomical Geography ?

A. Astronomical Geography shews the connection between the Earth, and the Sun, Moon, and other heavenly bodies, and the relation they bear to each other.

Q. What is the figure of the Earth ?

A. The Earth is nearly a sphere or Globe ; and is termed a *spheroid*, because the diameter through the equator, from east to west, is thirty-four miles longer than the diameter through the poles, from north to south.

Q. What is the length of the Earth's diameter ?

A. The Earth's diameter is about eight thousand miles, and its circumference twenty-five thousand miles.

Q. How is the earth known to be a globe?

A. The earth is known to be globular from its having been circumnavigated, from the form of its shadow upon the moon at an eclipse, and from analogy to all the other heavenly bodies.

### NATURAL DIVISIONS.

Q. What are the natural or physical divisions of the globe?

A. *Land* and *water*.

Q. What proportion is land?

A. About two-fifths.

Q. What proportion is water?

A. About three-fifths.

Q. What are the natural or physical divisions of the land?

A. The land is divided into continents, islands, peninsulas, isthmuses, capes, promontories, mountains, coasts and shores.

Q. What are the natural or physical divisions of the water?

A. The water is divided into oceans, seas, gulfs, bays, channels, straits, roads, sounds, havens, lakes and rivers.

Q. How do these natural divisions of the earth correspond with each other?

A. They have a striking resemblance in their several forms.

Q. What is a continent and what does it resemble?

A. A *continent* is the largest body of land, and resembles an *ocean*, which is the largest collection or body of water.

Q. What is an island, and what does it resemble?

A. An *island* is a body of land entirely surrounded by water, and resembles a *lake*, which is a collection of water entirely surrounded by land.

Q. What is a peninsula, and what does it resemble?

A. A *peninsula* is a body of land almost surrounded by water, and resembles a *bay* or *gulf*, which is a collection of water almost surrounded by land.

Q. What is an isthmus, and what does it resemble?

A. An *isthmus* is a narrow neck of land that joins two continents, as the isthmus of *Darien*, and resembles a *strait*, which is a narrow passage of water that unites a sea with an ocean, as the *strait of Gibraltar*.

Q. What is a promontory, and what does it resemble?

A. A *promontory* is a mountain that projects into the sea, and resembles a *bay*, which is an arm of the sea that projects into the land.

Q. What is the difference between a promontory and a cape?

A. A promontory is an elevated, or *high* land, and a *cape* is *low*, flat land; both project into the sea.

Q. What is a mountain, and what does it resemble?

A. A *mountain* is an elevated body of land, more or less extensive, and answers to a *river*, which is a deep collection of water, more or less extensive.

Q. What is a coast?

A. A *coast* is an extensive border of an ocean.

Q. What is a shore?

A. A *shore* is a more limited border of an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

Q. What is a channel?

A. A *channel* is a narrow passage of water from one sea to another.

Q. What is a road?

A. A *road* is a convenient place of anchorage for ships, without the port or harbour.

Q. What is a frith or estuary?

A. An *estuary* or *frith* is an extended opening of a river at its mouth, resembling a gulf.

Q. What is a sound?

A. A *sound* is a strait where ships can find anchorage.

### POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

Q. Which are the grand political divisions of the Earth?

A. Empires, kingdoms, oligarchies, principalities, and republics.

Q. What is an Empire?

A. It is the union of several distinct states and governments under one head, called an Emperor.

Q. What is a Kingdom?

A. It is generally the union of one state or nation, under one head, called a King.

Q. What is an Oligarchy?

A. It is generally the government of a small state, which is in the hands of the nobility.

Q. What is a Dutchy or Principality?

A. It is the government of a small state by a Duke, or Prince, who is subject to some other power.

Q. What is a Republic?

A. It is a government in the hands of the people, and administered by their representatives, legally chosen.

### CIVIL DIVISIONS.

Q. What is a constitution of civil government?

A. That system of laws, rules, and regulations, by which the rights and duties of the rulers and people, are defined and protected.

- Q. What constitute the essential parts of a free government?
- A. The Executive, Legislative, and Judiciary departments.
- Q. What are the duties of the Executive department?
- A. To preserve order, and enforce the laws.
- Q. What are the duties of the Legislative department?
- A. To frame and enact the laws, and provide for their support.
- Q. What are the duties of the Judiciary department?
- A. To interpret the laws, and apply them in their operation.
- Q. What is a republican form of government termed?
- A. The Congress, which consists of a President, Vice-President, a Senate, and House of Representatives; all chosen by the people.
- Q. What constitutes a mixed monarchy?
- A. A mixed monarchy, partakes of the three governments, viz. Monarchy, Aristocracy, and Democracy, or Republican.
- Q. What is this form of government termed?
- A. The Parliament, which consists of the King, House of Lords, and House of Commons: the two first are hereditary, and the last is elective.
- Q. What principle in nature was the cause of civil government?
- A. Necessity, or self preservation, and equal rights.

### RELIGIOUS DIVISIONS.

- Q. Which are the principal religions in the world?
- A. The Pagan, or Heathen religion, Natural religion, Judaism, the Christian, and Mahometan.
- Q. Which is the Pagan, or Heathen religion?
- A. That which ascribes religious worship to idols, or images of any kind, called idolatry.
- Q. What is Natural religion?
- A. That which acknowledges one Supreme God, but denies Divine revelation, called Deism.
- Q. What is Judaism?
- A. The religion of Moses, and the ancient prophets, of the Old Testament part of the Bible.
- Q. What is Christianity?
- A. The religion taught by Jesus Christ and his apostles.
- Q. What is Mahometanism?
- A. The religion of the Koran, as taught by the impostor Mahomet.



## GRAND DIVISIONS.

Q. How many continents are there and how are they divided ?

A. There are on the globe two continents, viz. the Eastern and Western. The eastern continent is divided into Europe, Asia, and Africa ; the western continent is divided into North and South America.

Q. Which is the largest division and how is it situated ?

A. America is the largest division, and is situated between 30 degrees of north latitude and 56 degrees of south latitude : between 35 deg. and 169 deg. of west longitude.

Q. What is the extent of America ?

A. America is about 9000 miles long, and 3700 miles broad, in the widest part ; it is but 60 miles at the isthmus of Darien.

Q. Which is the next largest division ?

A. Asia is the second division in size, and is situated between the equator and 80 deg. of north latitude ; and between 25 deg. and 170 deg. of east longitude.

Q. What is its extent ?

A. Asia is about 4700 miles long and 4300 broad.

Q. Which is the next largest division ?

A. Africa is the third division in size, and is situated between 37 deg. of north latitude, and 34 deg. of south latitude ; between 17 deg. of west longitude, and 51 deg. of east longitude ; it is about 4300 miles long and 3500 broad.

Q. Which is the next largest division ?

A. Europe is the fourth division in size, and is situated between 35 deg. and 75 deg. of north latitude, and 8 deg. of west longitude and 60 deg. of east longitude ; it is about 3300 miles long and the same in breadth.

Q. How many Oceans are there ?

A. There are five Oceans, viz. the great Pacific, lying between Asia and America ; the Atlantic, lying between Europe and America ; the Northern, lying about the north pole ; the Southern, lying about the south pole ; and the Indian, lying south of Asia and east of Africa.

Q. How are the islands situated ?

A. [The islands will be considered in connection with the several portions of the globe to which they more immediately belong.]

## NORTH AMERICA.

Q. What is the situation and extent of North America ?

A. North America extends from 7 deg. 30 min. north latitude to the 80th deg. or the pole, and from 90 deg. west to 20 deg. east longitude, from Philadelphia ; average breadth about 2000 miles ; and is bounded on the north by the Northern ocean, on the east by the Atlantic, on the south by the isthmus of Darien and the gulf of Mexico, and on the west by the Pacific.

Q. Which are the statistical divisions of North America ?

A. North America is all included under the dominions of Great Britain, the United States, Spain or Independent Spanish America, Russia, and the Aborigines. The island of Greenland is claimed by Denmark.

Q. What are the climate and face of the country ?

A. North America enjoys all the climates in the world, embracing the torrid, temperate and frigid zones ; it is intersected with the most extensive ranges of mountains, the largest lakes, and the longest rivers in the world.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Rocky or Chippewan range extends from the isthmus of Darien to the Northern ocean.

Q. What is the general elevation of this range ?

A. In Mexico it rises to an elevation of about 9000 feet above the level of the sea, and forms the extensive *table-lands* of that country. †

Q. Which are the principal peaks of this range ?

A. Popocatapetl and Orizaba, in Mexico, which are volcanoes ; Highest Peak, and James' Peak, near the sources of the Arkansaw and La Platte rivers. The two first are about 17,000 feet, and the two last from 11 to 12,500 feet. These, with many others are covered with perennial snow.

Q. What is the average breadth of this range ?

A. About 50 miles.

Q. What other mountains are connected with this range ?

A. A branch extends from the northern part of the Rocky mountains, in a north-easterly direction to Labrador ; another range rises in California and extends near the coast of the Pacific, up to the 60th degree of north latitude, where it terminates in Mount St. Elias, an elevation 18,000 feet above the level of the sea.

† All extensive level tracts of land, on high elevations, are termed *table-lands*.

Q. What are the natural advantages of these ranges of mountains?

A. These mountains give rise to the majestic rivers that flow into the Pacific ocean, the Northern ocean, the gulf of Mexico, Hudson's bay, and the gulf of St. Lawrence.

Q. What other important ranges of mountains are found in North America?

A. The great eastern or Apalachian chain.

Q. What is the course and extent of this range?

A. The Apalachian or Allegany chain rises at the Chickasaw bluffs, on the southern borders of Tennessee, and taking an easterly direction through the northern sections of the states of Mississippi, Alabama and Georgia, enters South Carolina, and thence taking a north-eastern direction, runs nearly parallel with the coast, and terminates in the Catskill bluffs, on the Hudson river.

Q. What is the average height of this range?

A. From 1000 to 4000 feet; and its average breadth about 150 miles.

Q. Which are the most considerable branches of this range?

A. The Clinch mountains of Tennessee, and the Cumberland mountains of Kentucky.

Q. What other range is connected with this chain?

A. The Blue ridge, which rises near the source of the Apalachian chain, and running parallel with it, terminates at West-Point, on the Hudson.

Q. What ranges of mountains east of the Hudson are connected with this chain?

A. The Taghonnuc range, which appears to be a continuation of the Blue ridge, until it unites with the Green mountains of Vermont, near Bennington. Next is the central range, that commences at the New-Haven bluff, and runs through Connecticut; Massachusetts, and Vermont, and forms the Green mountain range. The third is the eastern range, that commences at East Rock, near New-Haven, and running north, crosses the Connecticut river at Northampton, where it soon unites with another range that rises at Lyme, near the Sound; these united, form the range of the White mountains, that extend to the northern boundary of the United States.

Q. Which is the highest elevation of these ranges?

A. The White Hills of New Hampshire, which rise to the height of 6,634 feet above the level of the sea, and are capped with snow 10 or 11 months in the year; their summits are generally covered with white, fleecy clouds, from whence they derive their name.

Q. What other mountains in New-England are connected with these ranges?

A. Several, which will be considered in connection with the States in which they are situated.

Q. Which are the principal declivities formed by these several ranges of mountains?

A. The great western declivity of the Rocky or Chippewan range, through which the waters pass off into the Pacific ocean; the northern declivity of the same range, through which the waters run into the Artic ocean; the eastern declivity of the same chain, in connection with the western declivity of the Apalachian chain, through which, in connection with the great southern declivities of the two chains, the waters pass off into the gulf of Mexico. Also the eastern declivity of the Apalachian chain, through which the waters run into the Atlantic ocean. These declivities, together with the basin of the St. Lawrence, embracing the great lakes, between the northern and southern declivities, drain off the vast waters of North America.

#### RIVERS.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The principal rivers of North America are, the Columbia, or river of the west, or the Origon, that forms the great basin that drains off the waters west of the Stony range; the Missouri, in connection with the Mississippi, that forms the great central basin of North America; the St. Lawrence, that forms the great basin that drains off the waters of the great lakes. [The other numerous rivers that flow into the Atlantic ocean, Hudson's bay, the Artic ocean, and gulf of Mexico, are best described on the Map of North America.]

#### LAKES.

Q. What is the number of lakes in North America?

A. The number of lakes in North America is about 200.

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. Lake Superior is the largest body of fresh water on the globe, and is about 15 or 1600 miles in circumference.

Q. What is the general character of this lake?

A. Lake Superior is surrounded by a rocky shore, and is subject to storms more violent than the ocean; it abounds with a great variety of valuable fish, and contains numerous islands.

Q. Which are the next in size?

A. The next in size are Michigan, Erie, Ontario, and Champlain; these lakes are navigable for large vessels, and have become famous for their naval combats.

Q. Which are the other lakes of North America ?

A. The other lakes of North America are generally small, and will be considered in connection with those sections of country in which they are situated.

#### BAYS.

Q. Which are the principal bays in North America ?

A. The principal bays in North America, are Baffin's bay, Hudson's bay, Chesapeake bay, Massachusetts and Boston bay, Delaware bay, bay of Fundy, &c. [For the other numerous bays see the map of North America.]

#### GULFS.

Q. Which are the principal gulfs of North America ?

A. The gulfs of Mexico and Florida on the south, the gulf of St. Lawrence on the east, and the gulf of California on the west.

#### STRAITS.

Q. Which are the principal straits ?

A. Davis' and Hudson's straits, and straits of Bellisle, on the east, and Beering's straits on the north-west.

[For the principal capes, promontories, peninsulas, sounds, &c. see the map of North America.]

#### INLAND NAVIGATION.

Q. Which are the principal channels of inland navigation ?

A. The St. Lawrence, Mississippi, Missouri, and Columbia, are the principal channels of inland navigation in North America.

Q. Can you describe the navigation of the St. Lawrence ?

A. The St. Lawrence is navigable to Quebec for ships of the line, and to Montreal for ships of 5 or 600 tons ; from thence a boat navigation commences to lake Ontario, which is navigable to the river Niagara, for sloops and large vessels, 170 miles ; a portage at the falls, of 7 miles, commences the navigation of lake Erie, for vessels of 60 or 70 tons, to Detroit, 230 miles ; by the straits of Detroit 28 miles, lake St. Clair 20 miles, and the river St. Clair 60 miles, the navigation continues into lakes Huron and Michigan. From lake Huron, through the canal at the rapids of St. Mary, the navigation extends through lake Superior to the 9 mile portage, which opens the navigation of the lake of the Woods, 1100 miles from Montreal. Here commences the navigation of the great north-western chain of lakes that extends to Hudson's bay. (See the map.)

Q. Which is the more common route of the fur traders?

A. The route of the fur traders is from Montreal up the Ottawa river, and across to lake Huron by the way of lake Nipissing and the French river.

Q. How may the grand route of the St. Lawrence be extended to the Mississippi?

A. By a canal from the head waters of the Fox river, (that falls into the north-west part of lake Michigan, through Green bay,) to the waters of the Ouisconsin, which falls into the Mississippi.

Q. What other routes are connected with this chain?

A. The navigation of the Hudson river, which extends through the great northern canal from fort Edward to White Hall, on lake Champlain, and through this lake down the river Sorelle to the St. Lawrence. The grand western canal that extends from Albany along the banks of the Mohawk river to Rome, and from thence to Buffalo, on lake Erie, a distance of more than 300 miles, where it meets the route of the St. Lawrence.

Q. What variation may be given to the grand route of the St. Lawrence?

A. A canal is contemplated from the head waters of the Chicago, at the south-western extremity of lake Michigan, to the head waters of the Illinois, which will open a communication from New-York to the Mississippi, and to the head waters of the Missouri.

Q. How far may this route be extended?

A. By a portage of about one mile from the head waters of the Yellow Stone, or Missouri, to the head waters of Clark's river, (a branch of the Columbia,) it will extend to the Pacific ocean.

Q. What other variation may be given to this route?

A. A canal from the head waters of the Maumee to the head waters of the Wabash, will open a communication from lake Erie to the Mississippi, through the river Ohio. Another canal from the head waters of the Cayahoga to the head waters of the Muskingum, will open another communication from lake Erie to the river Ohio. A canal is now in forwardness from the mouth of the Scioto, on the Ohio, to Cleaveland, on lake Erie, about 306 miles.

Q. Are these canals practicable?

A. Congress have appropriated 100,000 acres of land for the accomplishment of the one, and 200,000 for the accomplishment of the other, of these contemplated canals.

Q. Which is the next most extensive route of inland navigation?

A. Through the channel of the Mississippi river, to the head

waters of the Missouri, which extends more than 4000 miles. This route also embraces the navigation of all the tributary streams of the Mississippi and Missouri, which are too numerous and extensive to be inserted here. (See the atlas.)

Q. Which is the next important channel of inland navigation?

A. The Chesapeake bay, with its numerous inlets and streams, opens an inland communication with the states of Virginia, Maryland, Delaware, and Pennsylvania, that extends to the southern line of the state of New-York, on the north, and the Allegany range on the west. Also, by the grand portage, from Cumberland, on the Potomac, to Wheeling, on the Ohio, (called the great Cumberland road,) it opens a communication across the Allegany to the Mississippi, through the river Ohio.

Q. What improvements are contemplated on this route?

A. A canal is projected from Baltimore to Philadelphia,† and another from the head waters of the Potomac to the head waters of the Monongahela, which will extend the inland navigation of the Chesapeake to Pittsburg, on the Ohio.

Q. Which are the next important channels of inland navigation?

A. The state of Alabama is watered extensively by the river Alabama, and its tributary streams, which connect the internal navigation of that state with the gulf of Mexico. [The internal navigation of the Atlantic states will be considered separately, in connection with each state.]

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of North America?

A. North America was first discovered by John Cabot in the year 1496, which caused a spirit of adventure for further discoveries, and the continent was visited by a succession of adventurers through the 16th century, from England and France; but no settlements were made on the eastern shores until the forepart of the 17th century.

About the year 1517, the Spaniards, from their settlements on the island of Cuba, explored the shores of the gulf of Mexico as far west as the isthmus of Darien; but made no settlements until the Spanish adventurer Cortez, conquered the kingdom of Mexico, in 1521. This laid the foundation of the Spanish settlements and dominions in North America.

At this time the whole continent of North America was possessed by numerous tribes of Indians, who were all in a state of nature, of an olive complexion, savage in their manners

† This connects Chesapeake and Delaware bays, and is nearly accomplished.

and habits, and without the arts, or even the use of iron. The Mexicans were in some respects an exception to this general character; they possessed an extensive empire upon the south-western section of North America, governed by a regular system of laws, with the great monarch Montezuma at their head; they were idolaters, but not in common with the other Aborigines; they worshipped the sun, and had a regular priesthood; their capital was a regular built city, ornamented with rich and splendid temples, particularly the temple of the sun. (See Mexico.)

Florida was discovered by Ferdinand de Soto, early in the 16th century, and several attempts were made to settle the country by the French and Spaniards soon after; but no permanent settlements were effected until about the middle of the 17th century. (See Florida.)

In 1608, the French commenced the settlement of Quebec in Lower Canada, and continued to settle the province until they were dispossessed by the English at the peace of Paris, 1763, which commenced the dominion of Great Britain in Canada.

In the year 1607, the English commenced the settlement of Jamestown, in Virginia; but it did not become permanent until 1610, which commences the history of Virginia, under lord Delaware.

Attempts were made by sir Walter Raleigh, and others, to settle Carolina, in connection with Virginia, but they all failed until the year 1663, when the first permanent settlement commenced in Carolina.

In the year 1613, the Dutch from Holland, commenced the settlement of New-York. In 1664, the English seized on the city and colony of New-York, and their possession was confirmed by the peace of Breda, 1667.

In 1620, the English commenced the settlement of Plymouth.

*Questions for Reviewing the History.*

- When and by whom was North America discovered?
- When and by whom was Mexico discovered, and conquered?
- What was the general character of the natives at that time?
- What exceptions to this general character were peculiar to the Mexicans?
- When and by whom was Florida discovered, and when settled?
- When did the French commence the settlement of Canada, and when was it conquered by the English?
- When did the English commence the settlement of Virginia?
- When did the English commence the settlement of Carolina?
- When did the Dutch commence the settlement of New York?
- When was it taken by, and confirmed to the English?



in New-England, which laid the foundation of the five New-England colonies, New-Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode-Island and Connecticut.

In 1626, the Swedes commenced the settlement of Delaware. In 1656, the Dutch government of New-York dispossessed the Swedes, and annexed the settlement to New-York.

In 1633, the English commenced the settlement of Maryland, under lord Baltimore.

Louisiana was first discovered by Ferdinand de Soto, about the middle of the 16th. century. About the middle of the 17th century it was explored and settled by the French, under the reign of Louis XIV. (See Louisiana.)

In 1664, the English commenced the settlement of New-Jersey, under lord Carteret; and in 1674, the colony was divided by the proprietors into East and West-Jersey; but they have continued under one government.

In 1681, the colony of Pennsylvania was settled under Wm. Penn.

Georgia was originally considered as a part of Carolina; but no permanent settlements were made until the year 1732, when general Oglethorpe commenced the settlement of Georgia.

In 1754, these colonies, in connection with Great Britain, commenced a war with the French in Canada, called the French and Indian war, that continued to the capture of Quebec, in 1759, and the cessation of hostilities with France in America, 1761.

Canada and Nova Scotia were ceded by France to Great Britain at the Peace of Paris, February, 1763; but the Indian war continued to rage in America until September, 1764.

In 1764, Great Britain commenced a system of taxation upon her North American colonies, which, by their firm resistance led to a war that commenced April, 1775.

When and where did the English commence the settlement of New-England?

When did the Swedes commence the settlement of Delaware, and when was it taken by the Dutch?

When was Maryland settled by the English?

When and by whom was Louisiana discovered and settled?

When and by whom was New Jersey settled?

When and by whom was Pennsylvania settled?

When and by whom was Georgia settled?

When did the old French war commence, and when did it close?

What territories of France in America were ceded to G. Britain in 1763?

When did the Indian war close in America?

When and in what manner did G. Britain begin to oppress her American colonies, and what was the result?

In 1773, adventurers began to explore the country west of the Allegany mountains, and east of the Mississippi, for the purpose of settling; and the same year colonel Daniel Boon commenced the first settlement in Kentucky.

---

When did the first settlements commence west of the Allegany mountains?

## GREENLAND.

Q. Is Greenland a part of the continent of North America?

A. Geographers have generally considered Greenland as a part of North America, but since the straits of Barrow have been explored, as far as the 114th degree of west longitude, and the Artic ocean has been seen by Hearne, Franklin, and Mackenzie, at three distinct points, between that and Beering's straits, it has been generally considered as an island.

Q. How is Greenland situated?

A. Between the 60th degree of north latitude and the pole, and between the Frozen ocean on the east, and Davis' straits, Baffin's bay and the Artic ocean on the west.

Q. What are the face of the country, climate, and population?

A. Greenland is a dreary, solitary waste, locked in the severities of winter about eight months in the year; the summers of Greenland last but about two months, which are one continued day, and produce a scanty pittance to a dwarfish race of Esquimaux Indians, who are supposed not to exceed 10 or 12,000.

Q. Which are the known mountains of Greenland?

A. These are an elevated groupe, which may be seen forty or fifty leagues at sea, upon the western border, and are called the Stag's horn.

Q. Are there any settlements in Greenland?

A. The Danes and Norwegians have several settlements upon the south-western borders of Greenland, which have been visited by christian missionaries.

Q. What are the animals of Greenland?

A. The animals of Greenland are such as are common to the frozen regions, reindeers, foxes, bears, &c. They have a variety of fowls, and fish, that visit their shores; also the seal and walrus.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Greenland?

A. Greenland was first discovered and settled from Norway

by the Danes, in the year 1682 ; it was partially christianized about the year 1720, by Egede, a Lutheran ; since that time it has been considered as a missionary station. In 1733, Matthew Stach began his missionary labours in Greenland.

*Questions.*—By whom was Greenland first discovered, and what year ? By whom christianized, and when ? Who first commenced missionary labours in Greenland ? In what year ?

## BRITISH AMERICA.

Q. What provinces belong to British America ?

A. The provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, including New Britain, or the country about Hudson's bay ; the islands of Newfoundland and Cape Breton ; New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and the island of St. John's. The population of British America is about 500,000 exclusive of the Aborigines.

### UPPER CANADA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Upper Canada ?

A. Upper Canada lies between 42 deg. and 52 deg. of north latitude, and between 74 deg. and 97 deg. of west longitude ; and is 1100 miles long and 500 broad.

Q. How is it bounded ?

A. It is bounded on the north by New South Wales or Hudson's bay ; on the east by the river Ottawas, which divides it from Lower Canada ; on the south by a line running through the centre of the great lakes, which divides it from the United States ; on the west by Detroit river and lake Winnipeg, or the 97th deg. of west longitude, or rather by one vast forest that extends to the territory of the U. States on the west, and the Russian territory on the north-west.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. Upper Canada is divided into 19 counties, and these into townships of 12 by 9 miles square. Population about 100,000, mostly English, and many of them emigrants from the United States.

Q. What is the climate of Upper Canada ?

A. It is remarkably salubrious ; the winters are five or six weeks shorter than in Lower Canada, at and about Quebec, and much more mild ; the heats of summer are also more mild, and the frosts of autumn are later, and more favorable to the crops of the season.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. Generally level, with many prairies or natural meadows, of a rich soil.

Q. What are the productions?

A. Wheat, rye, corn, oats, flax, barley, &c. the same as are common to the northern states : with a spontaneous growth of hops, grapes, &c.

Q. What are its mineral productions?

A. Iron, copper, &c.

Q. Which are its principal rivers?

A. St. Lawrence, Ottawas, and Grand river, are the principal rivers in Upper Canada.

Q. Which are its principal lakes?

A. Winnipeg, Superior and Huron, on the west; Erie and Ontario, on the south; with Simcoe, Nipissing, Temiskanning, &c. in the interior.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. York, the capital of Upper Canada, situated upon lake Ontario, with an excellent harbour; Kingston, Queenston and Newark.

Q. What is the government of this province?

A. Its government is under the direction of the Governor General of British America, who resides at Quebec.

Q. What is the religion?

A. It consists of several denominations, and the government allows a free toleration.

Q. What is the state of learning?

A. Such as is common to the new settlements in the United States.

Q. What are the natural curiosities?

A. The falls of Niagara, and an inflammable spring near the falls, that emits a gas that will boil water in a few minutes; also a volcano near Burlington, are the natural curiosities of U. Canada.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Upper Canada?

A. It was erected into a colony in 1791; and became the theatre of war, after Commodore Perry's victory upon lake Erie, in 1814.

---

Questions.—When was Upper Canada erected into a colony? How was it effected by Commodore Perry's victory?

## LOWER CANADA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Lower Canada ?

A. Lower Canada is situated between 45 deg. and 52 deg. of north latitude, and between 61 deg. and 71 deg. of west longitude. It is 800 miles long and 500 broad.

Q. How is it bounded ?

A. It is bounded on the north by Labrador ; east by Labrador, the gulf of St. Lawrence, and New Brunswick ; south by the United States ; and west by Upper Canada.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. It is divided into 6 districts, 21 counties, and again into towns. Population about 300,000.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. Near the gulf of St. Lawrence, the winters are very severe ; but between Quebec and Montreal they are more mild. The summers of this province are variable, and at times intensely hot. In the south-western parts, vegetation commences in the spring, nearly two months earlier, than in the north-eastern.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The basin of St. Lawrence extends through the province, inclosed by two declivities, or ranges of mountains, and the face of the country is agreeably undulated.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil is generally fertile in the vale of the St. Lawrence ; and the productions the same as in Upper Canada, and New England.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The St. Lawrence extends through the province of Lower Canada, and discharges the vast waters of all the great lakes into the gulf of its own name. This gulf is 90 miles wide at its mouth, and embosoms the island of Anticosti.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Quebec and Montreal.

QUEBEC, city, N. A. capital of Lower Canada, on a promontory, on N. W. side of the St. Lawrence, 130 miles below Montreal, nearly 400 from the sea, 700 W. by N. Halifax. Lon. 71. 12. W. Lat. 46. 49. N. Pop. in 1818, 15,257 ; Catholics 11,991 ; Protestants 3,246. Catholics stated, in 1820, at 14,000. Houses in 1818, 2,070. The promontory on which Quebec is built, is formed by the rivers St. Lawrence and St. Charles, and is the termination of a ridge of land, generally from one to two miles wide, which runs from east to west. On the north it has the bold promontory of Cape Diamond, rising almost perpendicularly 345 feet above the water ; and across it, at the N. E. or lower end, the city is built. The fortifications extending across the peninsula, shut in the ground on which the city stands, the circuit of which is about two and a half miles. It is divided into two parts

Upper and Lower. The Upper town is situated on the side of Cape Diamond which slopes to the north, towards the river St. Charles. It is separated from the Lower town by a line of steep rocks, which runs from the Cape to the west. The Lower town is situated immediately under Cape Diamond, on ground that may be termed artificial as formerly, at flood tide, the water of the river used to wash the very foot of the rock. The streets run from the upper side of Cape Diamond down to the St. Charles, a distance of about half a mile; they are of considerable breadth, and the houses large and commodious; those next to the river have attached to them very extensive warehouses, and vessels come close to the wharves to discharge their cargoes. The communication from the Lower to the Upper town is by a winding street, at the top of which is a fortified gate.

The Upper town is the seat of government, and the principal residence of the military. The peculiar situation occasions great irregularity and unevenness in the streets. Many of them are narrow, but most of them are well paved; the breadth of the principal ones is 32 feet; others only from 24 to 27 feet. The houses are mostly built of stone, of very unequal height, with high sloping roofs. Great improvement has of late years taken place in the mode of building; and many of the houses are modern and very handsome. The principal public buildings are the castle of St. Louis, the Hotel Dieu, which includes a convent, hospital, &c.; the convent of Ursulines, the monastery of the Jesuits, now used for barracks; the Protestant and Catholic cathedrals, the Scots church, the Lower town church, the court house, the jail, the artillery barracks, the armory, and the French seminary or college, containing usually about 200 pupils. Some of the public buildings are spacious and elegant; but they do not add very much to the general appearance of the city. The castle of St. Louis, the governor's residence, is a handsome stone building of three stories, situated on the summit of a rock near the edge of a precipice, upwards of 200 feet high. The armory contains small arms in complete repair for the equipment of 20,000 men.

Quebec is esteemed the strongest town in America, and ranks as a fortress of the first consequence. The citadel, on the highest point of Cape Diamond, presents a formidable combination of powerful works, from whence a strong wall, supported by small batteries in different directions, runs to the edge of the precipice, with which other batteries are connected. The basin, or harbor of Quebec, is very beautiful, safe, and spacious, being sufficient to contain 100 sail of the line. The depth of water is 28 fathoms, with a tide rising 17 or 18 feet, and at the springs, from 23 to 24 feet. The river St. Lawrence, which is about 12 miles wide above the town, here contracts itself suddenly to the width of one mile. From this, according to some, is derived the name Quebec, which in the Algonquin language, signifies contraction; others derive it from the Norman language, "Quel bec," "what a point!" The exports consist of grain, flour, timber, ashes, furs, &c. The annual value of the exports and imports amounts to about £1,000,000 sterling. In 1821, the number of vessels entered was 434, carrying 102,786 tons; value of imports, \$2,185,196. Quebec was settled by the French in 1608. In 1759, it was taken by the English under general Wolfe, and ceded to them in 1763. In 1776, an unsuccessful attempt was made against the city by the Americans, under general Montgomery, who was slain, together with about 700 men.

The scenery exhibited to the view from various parts of the Upper town, is wonderfully picturesque, beautiful, and sublime. In the variegated expanse that is laid open before the spectator, stupendous rocks, immense rivers, trackless forests, and cultivated plains; mountains, lakes, towns, and villages in turn, strike the attention, and the senses are almost bewildered in contemplating the vastness of the scene.—“Quebec,” says professor Silliman, “for an American city, is certainly a very peculiar town: a military town—most compactly and permanently built—stone its sole material—environed, as to its most important parts, by walls and gates—and defended by numerous heavy cannon—garrisoned by troops, having the arms, the costume, the music, the discipline of Europe—foreign in language, features, and origin, from most of those whom they are sent to defend—founded upon a rock, and in its highest parts overlooking a great extent of country—between three and four hundred miles from the ocean—in the midst of a great continent—and yet displaying fleets of foreign-merchants, in its fine capacious bay—and shewing all the bustle of a crowded seaport—its streets narrow—populous, and winding up and down almost mountainous declivities—situated in the latitude of the finest parts of Europe—exhibiting in its environs the beauty of an European capital—and yet in winter smarting with the cold of Siberia—governed by people of different language and habits from the mass of the population—opposed in religion, and yet leaving that population without taxes, and in the full enjoyment of every privilege, civil and religious; such are some of the important features which strike a stranger in the city of Quebec.”

MONTREAL, town, Lower Canada, the second in rank in the province, in a district of the same name, 180 miles above Quebec, 200 below lake Ontario, 243 N. Albany, 30 N. by W. Boston. Lon. 73. 35. W. Lat. 45. 31. N. Population in 1809, estimated at 16,000; in 1821, 18,767. Houses 2 274. It is situated on south side of the island of Montreal, in the St. Lawrence, at the head of ship navigation. The harbor, though not large, is always secure for shipping during the time the navigation of the river is open, and vessels drawing 15 feet water can lie close to the shore. The general depth of water is from three to four and a half fathoms. The greatest inconvenience is the rapid of St. Mary, about a mile below, whose current is so powerful, that without a strong north-east wind, vessels cannot stem it.

Montreal is divided into Upper and Lower towns; one, however, is but little elevated above the other. The streets are for the most part, laid out in a regular manner; generally rather narrow; but the new ones are of convenient width. The houses are mostly built of greyish stone, with the roofs covered with sheet-iron or tin; many of them large, handsome, and in a modern style; seldom of more than two stories. The streets have a dull uniformity, and the city has hitherto been described by travellers as of an extremely heavy and gloomy appearance, but has of late been much improved, and may now be styled tolerably handsome.

The principal public buildings are the general hospital, the Hotel Dieu, the convent of Notre Dame, the French cathedral, the English church, the old monastery of Franciscans converted into barracks, the college, the seminary, the court house, the government house, bank, &c. Montreal is the grand depot of the greatest company in North America, who carry on the fur trade, and whose concerns are of vast extent and importance. It is also the channel through which the com-

merce is carried on between Canada and the United States. A canal from Montreal to La Chine was commenced in 1821. The district of Montreal is divided into 10 counties.†

Q. What are the religion and manners of this province?

A. The Roman Catholic and Episcopal religions generally prevail, but the government allows a free toleration. French vivacity gives a general stamp to their manners, and the French language generally prevails.

Q. What is the state of education?

A. Generally low, especially among the lower class of the people.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Lower Canada?

A. Lower Canada was first discovered by John Cabot, in the year 1497. It was explored by Champlain, and other French adventurers, who commenced the settlement of Quebec, 1607—8. Its population and settlements increased rapidly by the exertions of France, and kept pace with the British colonies, with whom they carried on a succession of cruel, savage wars, until the years 1759—60, when Canada was taken by the English; and it was confirmed to Great Britain by the peace of Paris, 1763.

---

*Questions.*—When and by whom was Canada first discovered? By whom explored? What town did they settle? When was it taken, and by whom? When confirmed to them?

### NEW BRUNSWICK.

Q. What are the situation and extent of New Brunswick?

A. New Brunswick lies south-east of Lower Canada, and is a part of British America. (See the Atlas.)

Q. What are the climate, face of the country and productions?

A. The same as in Lower Canada.

Q. Which is the principal river?

A. The St. John's, which is noted for its navigable waters, and the lofty pines upon its banks.

Q. Which are its principal bays?

A. The bays of Fundy, Chignecto, Passamaquoddy, and Chaleur.

Q. What distinguishes the bay of Fundy?

A. The high tides, which rise 50 or 60 feet.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. St. John's is the capital: but Frederickstown is the

---

† The description of all the capital cities and towns, in this work, are taken from Worcester's Universal Gazetteer, Boston edition for 1822, and by his permission.



seat of government ; both are situated upon the river St. John's.

Q. What is the population of New Brunswick ?

A. About 50,000.

Q. What is the religion and general character of this province ?

A. Much the same as in Lower Canada.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of New Brunswick ?

A. New Brunswick was a part of Nova Scotia until the year 1784, when it became a separate province.

*Questions.*—Of what province was New Brunswick a part ? When did it become a separate province ?

### NOVA SCOTIA.

Q. How is Nova Scotia situated ?

A. Nova Scotia lies south-east of New Brunswick, [see the atlas,] and is about 300 miles long and 150 broad.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. It is generally mild, and often enveloped in fogs.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. Generally rough and barren upon the coast, but fertile and level in the interior.

Q. What are its minerals and exports ?

A. Coal, gypsum, or plaster of Paris, limestone, and iron : fish is one of the most valuable articles of export.

Q. Which are its chief towns ?

A. Halifax, Annapolis, Shelburn, Liverpool, and Windsor, are the chief towns of Nova Scotia.

Q. What is the state of learning ?

A. There is a college at Windsor, and literature is improving.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Nova Scotia ?

A. Nova Scotia was discovered by John Cabot, in the year 1497, and a settlement commenced by a colony of Scotch, under Sir William Alexander, in the year 1622.

De Mons received of Henry IV. king of France, a patent of all this part of North America, situated between the 40th and 46th degrees of north latitude, in the year 1604, and called it Le Acadie. The next year he explored the coast very generally, from the river St. Lawrence to Cape Cod, and commenced settlements at Port Royal, St. John's and St. Croix, on the bay of Fundy. In the year 1749, the English government sent out a colony and settled the town of Halifax.

which excited a jealousy on the part of France, that proved one of the causes of the seven years war, called the old French war in America. The French settlements grew and flourished, and Nova Scotia, or Le Acadie, became one of the strong holds of France in North America, until the year 1755, when it was conquered by the English; and it was confirmed to Great Britain by the peace of Paris, 1763.

At the close of the Revolution in America, in 1783, Nova Scotia became an asylum for those unfortunate emigrants, called Tories, or refugees, who had abandoned their country in the time of the war, and taken refuge with the British in New York, and elsewhere.

---

*Questions.*—When was Nova Scotia first discovered, and by whom? When and by whom was a settlement first made? Who received a patent of this part of North America? What was it called? When and by whom was Halifax first settled? For what is Nova Scotia famous?

### ISLANDS.

Q. Which are the principal Islands belonging to British America?

A. Newfoundland, St. John's and Cape Breton.

Q. How are they situated?

A. At the entrance of the gulf of St. Lawrence. [See the atlas.]

Q. What is the extent and population of *Newfoundland*.

A. Newfoundland is about 380 miles long and 160 broad, and contains an average population of about 30,000.

Q. What are the face of the country and climate?

A. The face of the country is rocky and barren; the climate is severely cold in winter, and extremely hot and foggy in summer.

Q. What is the use of this island to Great Britain?

A. Its harbors afford shelter and protection to their fishing vessels, and its shores accomodate them in curing their fish.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Placentia, Bonavista, and St. John's.

Q. Which are the principal fishing banks?

A. Great bank, Green bank, Whale bank, and St. Peter's bank.

Q. What is the value of this fishery annually?

A. It is generally estimated at about 2,000,000 dollars.

Q. What number of vessels and men are now employed in this fishery, by England and the United States?

A. About 3000 sail, and 100,000 men

Q. What are the situation and extent of *St. John's*?

A. It lies near the coast of New-Brunswick: is about 100 miles long, and an average of 20 broad.

Q. What are its soil, productions, population, and chief towns?

A. Its soil and productions are much the same as New-Brunswick; its population is about 6000, and its chief town is Charlotte.

Q. What are the situation and extent of *Cape Breton*?

A. It lies at the entrance of the gulf of St. Lawrence, is 109 miles long, and upon an average about 50 broad. [See the atlas.]

Q. How is it separated from Nova Scotia?

A. By the gut of Canso, which is the common passage for ships into the gulf of St. Lawrence.

Q. What are the face of the country, climate, &c.?

A. The face of the country is low, and abounds with lakes and swamps; and the climate is much like Newfoundland and Nova Scotia, infested with fogs.

Q. What are its population and chief towns?

A. Its population is about 4000, and its chief towns are Sidney and Louisburg.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Newfoundland?

A. Newfoundland was discovered by John Cabot, in the year 1497. It was visited by his son Sebastian Cabot, in 1502; also by James Quartier, a Frenchman, who wintered in Canada, 1534; again by Quartier, 1540; and the grand cod fishery commenced in 1542, under the patronage of Francis I. king of France.

Great Britain partially dispossessed the French, in the year 1713, by the peace of Utrecht; again more generally, by the peace of Paris, 1763; but finally, by the peace of Paris, 1783.

Q. What is the history of *St. John's*?

A. See the history of Cape Breton.

Q. What is the history of Cape Breton?

A. Cape Breton was discovered by John Cabot on his first voyage, 1497. It was settled by the French in 1713, who built the city of Louisburg, upon the south-east part of the island, and inclosed it with a wall, and fortified it at great expense, as a key to Canada, and their fishery.

Louisburg was taken by the New-England troops under the command of general Pepperel, in 1745. It was restored

to France at the peace of Aix-la-Chappelle, in 1748 : was taken by the English in 1758, and confirmed to Great Britain by the peace of Paris, 1763.

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Newfoundland first discovered? When did the grand cod fishery first commence? When was Cape Breton first discovered? When and by whom was Louisburg settled? By whom was it taken in 1745? When was it taken by and confirmed to the English?

### NEW-BRITAIN, HUDSON'S BAY, &c.

Q. What are the situation and character of New-Britain?

A. New-Britain is situated upon the north-eastern extremity of North America, including Labrador; and is separated from Greenland by Davis' straits.

Q. What are the face of the country and climate?

A. The eastern shore is dreary, rocky and barren; the interior is mountainous, and intersected by numerous small lakes and streams, that abound with fish and wild fowl; but the climate is excessively cold and severe. The Esquimaux Indians are common to both.

Q. What is peculiar to their quadrupeds?

A. They all turn white as snow in winter.

Q. Which are the most considerable fur establishments?

A. Albany fort, Moose fort, York fort, Churchill fort, &c.  
[See the atlas.]

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of New-Britain?

A. New-Britain was discovered by Frobisher, in the year 1585, and Hudson's bay, by captain Henry Hudson, 1610. In 1670, a company was chartered by the British government, styled the Hudson Bay company, who erected forts and trading houses on the principal rivers, which greatly facilitated and improved the commercial interest of this country, and encouraged and protected a fur trade with the natives. Mackenzie explored the interior of British America, to the Frozen ocean on the north, and the Pacific ocean on the west, in the years 1789 and 1793. At the mouth of the river to which he gave his own name, he discovered the Frozen ocean; [see the atlas.] And at or near Queen Charlotte's Sound, (Pacific ocean,) latitude 52 deg. 30 min. north, he inscribed his name upon a flat rock with vermilion. He performed his tour in one canoe, from lake Chippewyan, or the

lake of the Hills, throughout this vast interior, with very few portages.

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was New-Britain discovered? What bay was discovered by captain Hudson? Who first explored the interior of British America? How far did he explore it? Where did he first discover the Frozen ocean? Where the Pacific ocean? How did he perform his tour?

## UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of United America?

A. United America lies between the 25th, 42d, 45th, 49th, and 54th degrees of north latitude, and 69th and 125th degrees of west longitude.

Q. How is it bounded?

A. This is best explained on the map.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. The face of the country is beautifully variegated with the most extensive ranges of mountains, the longest and noblest rivers, the largest and most numerous lakes, the richest and most fertile basins, together with the most grand natural scenes of any other country in the world.

### CLIMATES OF THE U. STATES AND AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTS.

Q. What is the climate of the United States?

A. It embraces all the climates between the cold regions on the north and the tropical regions on the south.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil is various, but remarkably good; and the productions include all the variety that is common to all the climates in the world.

Q. How may the climates and agricultural products of the United States be divided?

A. Into four regions, viz. the Northern, Middle, Southern, and Tropical.

Q. Which is the northern region, and what are its agricultural products?

A. The northern region of the United States includes the states of Maine, New-Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode-Island, and the state of New-York. Grazing or pasturage is one of the most important branches of agriculture in this region. Wheat was formerly an important article among the products of New-England, when the country was new, but it is little attended to since the soil has

been reduced by tillage: rye has become a substitute for wheat, most generally; this and Indian corn, oats, barley, and potatoes, have become the staple vegetable products in New-England; orchards flourish throughout, and cider is their common drink; cider brandy is a very considerable article of export; peaches flourish in the southern part. Wheat continues to be one of the staples of New-York; the others are similar to those of New-England.

Q. Which is the middle region, and what are its productions?

A. New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and Virginia, east of the Allegany; Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Missouri, and Kentucky, west of the mountains. Wheat is among the staples of this region, and in many parts the principal; and throughout is the best in the United States, and one of their most valuable exports, either in grain or flour. In the Atlantic states of this region orchards flourish well, and the Newark cider of New-Jersey is the best in the world. In the western section, cider is not so common, and whiskey is used as a general substitute. Peaches flourish on both sides of the mountain, and are often used for the distillation of peach brandy. The grape begins to be cultivated for wine on both sides of the mountain, and vine-yards have been planted at or near Philadelphia, and at Vevay, on the Ohio. Horses, cattle, and swine, are extensively raised on the grazing farms in this region, particularly in the western section, and are an important article of commerce.

Q. Which is the southern region, and what are its productions?

A. The southern section of Virginia, the states of North and South Carolina, and Tennessee, and the northern sections of Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, with the Territory of Arkansas, include the southern region. Cotton, rice, indigo, and maize, or Indian corn, are the staples of this region; tobacco, oats, barley, and hemp, will flourish, but the Irish potatoe cannot be cultivated to advantage. Peaches, figs, and pomegranates, flourish well; and oranges and lemons in the southern parts; but apples, pears, plums, &c. will not flourish.

Q. Which is the fourth or tropical region, and what are its productions?

A. The southern sections of Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, with Louisiana and Florida, compose the tropical region. Sugar, cotton, indigo, oranges, lemons, figs, &c. Maize, or Indian corn yields most luxuriantly, and in East Florida produces two crops in a year. Coffee and tea, will, it is most probable, both flourish in this region.

## MINES AND MINERALS.

Q. What are the minerals of the United States ?

A. Gold, silver, copper, iron, lead and cobalt.

Q. Which of the precious stones are found in the United States .

A. The emerald, in its purity, has not been discovered, but the beryl, which is an inferior species, is often found.

Q. Which of the most valuable building stones are found in the United States ?

A. Marble, both white and variegated, is found extensively in the United States ; also quarries of slate and sandstone.

Q. What inflammable minerals are found in the United States ?

A. Bituminous coal, and anthracite, or stone coal, peat, sulphur, and petroleum.

## SALINES.

Q. Are salt springs common to the United States ?

A. The United States abound with salt springs in the interior, west of the Allegany, and in Louisiana ; and an extensive plain has been discovered among the southern branches of the Missouri river, covered or incrustated with salt.

Q. What other salts are found in the United States ?

A. Epsom salts are found in a cave in Illinois, and nitre is found in numerous caves in Kentucky and Tennessee.

## MINERAL SPRINGS.

Q. Are mineral springs found in the United States ?

A. They are numerous, and of various qualities, as may be seen under the several states.

## POST-ROADS AND POST-OFFICES.

Q. What general improvements have been made in the roads of the United States ?

A. The greatest, for the time, of any other nation. Turnpike roads have become general throughout the country, and bridges have multiplied and improved in connection with the roads.

Q. Which are the most important roads in the United States ?

A. The first is the great post-road that traverses the Atlantic states, from Maine to Florida, which is 1800 miles in extent. The next in importance are the great western turnpike from Albany to Buffalo, from Philadelphia to Pittsburg, and the great national or Cumberland road from Washington to Wheeling, on the Ohio : also Jackson's road from Nashville, in Tennessee, to lake Pontchartrain, or New-Orleans.

Q. What have been the general progressive improvements in roads :

A. In 1790, the extent of post-roads was estimated at 1875

miles ; in 1818 it was estimated at nearly 5200 miles, and in 1824 the mail was transported 2000 miles per day, which will raise the amount of post-roads to 130 or 140,000 miles.

Q. What is the number of Post-Offices in the United States ?

A. More than 5000.

Q. How is this establishment conducted ?

A. By a postmaster-general, who resides at Washington, and is considered one of the heads of departments in the government.

#### NATIONAL POWER, GOVERNMENT, &c.

Q. What is the national power of the United States ?

A. The national power of the U. States consists, 1st, In their free government : 2d, In their free and intelligent character, or free system of education : 3d, In their national resources : 4th, In their well organized militia and naval strength : And lastly, in the local situation of their country.

Q. What is the government of the United States ?

A. A confederate republican system, uniting all the States under one general Congress, which consists of a President, Vice President, a Senate and House of Representatives. The President and Vice President are chosen by electors chosen by the people, once in four years. The Senate consists of two Senators from each State, chosen by the legislature for six years ; the Vice President of the United States is, ex-officio, president of the Senate. The House of Representatives are chosen by the people, once in two years, and they appoint their own Speaker, form their own rules and regulations, and keep a journal of their proceedings. They have the sole power of impeaching all public officers, and the Senate the sole power of trying such impeachments. Whatever regards the Legislative department is vested in the Congress of the United States. The powers of Congress are expressly defined by the constitution.

The President of the U. States is, ex-officio, commander-in-chief of the army and navy, and militia of the U. States, when in actual service. He grants reprieves and pardons ; nominates, and with the advice and consent of the Senate, appoints ambassadors, judges, and the several heads of departments, and other officers, and forms treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senate concur.

The Judiciary of the United States consists of one Supreme Court, and such Circuit and District Courts, as Congress may ordain ; and the Judges are appointed to officiate during their



good behaviour, and their salaries are permanent during their continuance in office. The jurisdiction of these courts is particularly defined by the constitution.

Q. What is their military force ?

A. United America keeps no standing army in time of peace, except to garrison her military posts ; she depends upon her militia.

Q. What is the naval force of United America !

A. Eleven ships of the line, sixteen frigates, and twenty sloops of war, brigs, &c.

#### COMMERCE AND MANUFACTURES.

Q. What is the commerce of the United States ?

A. Their imports in 1822, amounted to 83,000,000 of dollars, and their exports to 72,000,000 ; balance against them \$11,000,000 of dollars.

Q. What is the tonnage of the United States ?

A. About 1,400,000 tons.

Q. What are the manufactures ?

A. Not accurately known ; but respectable and increasing.

Q. What is the coinage of their mint annually ?

A. From one to four million of dollars.

#### REVENUE AND NATIONAL DEBT.

Q. What is the annual revenue of the United States ?

A. From 12 to 18 or 20 million of dollars.

Q. What is the national debt ?

A. About 70 or 80 million of dollars.

#### CHIEF CITIES AND POPULATION.

Q. Which are the principal cities ?

A. Washington, in the District of Columbia, is the seat of government, which, with the others, will be considered in their several places.

Q. What is the population of the United States ?

A. By the census of 1820, it amounted to 9,600,000.

Q. How often does their population double ?

A. Once in about twenty-five years.

Q. What will it amount to, at that ratio, at the commencement of the next century ?

A. About 92,000,000.

#### NATIONAL CHARACTER AND EDUCATION.

Q. What is the national character of the United States ?

A. More elevated and refined than that of any other nation on the earth.

Q. What is the immediate cause of this?

A. The general enjoyment of civil, religious, and literary freedom, which so universally prevail.

Q. What is the state of education in the United States?

A. The state of education is the most free and respectable in the world. The first settlers of New-England commenced a system of education *in their primary schools*, which has extended generally throughout the Union, and formed a permanent basis of education that is equally enjoyed by all classes of the community. This system of education may well be denominated the *Bulwark of National Liberty*, as well as of *National Character*.

#### RELIGION AND LITERATURE.

Q. What is the religion of United America?

A. A free toleration is sanctioned by the constitution, and the christian religion prevails throughout, under all its various denominations.

Q. What is the literature of the United States?

A. Highly respectable; there are in the Union about 30 colleges, some of which are of the first respectability; and more than 100 academies; but they have no national seminary, excepting their Military School at West Point. A national university is contemplated by Congress.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the general summary of the history of the United States?†

A. At the close of the old French and Indian war, in 1763, Great Britain began to oppress her North American colonies, by a system of taxation, by the way of duties on commerce, stamps, &c. which led to a general resistance; and the colonies called a general Congress, which convened at Philadelphia, in September, 1774.

In April, 1775, hostilities commenced in America, and the first blood was spilt at Lexington, in Massachusetts. On the 10th of May, the second congress convened at Philadelphia; and on the morning of the same day, colonel Allen, with a party of Green mountain boys, took fort Ticonderoga, without firing a gun. On the same day, colonel Warner surprised and took Crown Point.

† The history of the United States has been carried forward with North America, down to the year 1774; from that time it became distinct.

On the 15th of June, colonel George Washington was unanimously chosen by congress, captain-general and commander-in-chief of the American armies ; early in July he joined the army at Cambridge, near Boston.

On the 17th of June was fought the famous battle of Bunker Hill, near Charlestown, (Mass.) between a detachment of the Americans, and the flower of the British army ; the Americans distinguished themselves by their valor, and the British suffered most severely.

On the 1st of September, general Washington detached colonel Arnold, with 1100 men, by the way of Kennebeck river, to join general Montgomery before Quebec. General Montgomery entered Canada, by the way of lake Champlain, in the month of September, On the 2d of November he took fort St. John's ; on the 11th, he entered Montreal in triumph, and on the 5th of December he joined colonel Arnold before Quebec. On the 31st of December, general Montgomery attempted to storm Quebec, and failed, with the loss of his life.

On the 1st of January, 1776, the British burnt Norfolk, in Virginia.

On the 17th of March, Boston was evacuated by the British general Howe, and he retired with his fleet and armament to New-York. The navy of the United States, at this time, consisted of two ships, two brigs, and a sloop, carrying a force of about 200 men, under the command of commodore Ezekiel Hopkins.

On the 16th of April, the British (Cork) fleet and armament arrived in Cape Fear river, under the command of sir Peter Parker, lord Cornwallis, and others, where they were joined by sir Henry Clinton from New-York ; on the first of June, this armament arrived before Charleston, S. C. ; on the 26th they brought their ships to bear upon the town, and commenced a terrible assault, but the attack was repelled with

QUESTIONS.—When and where did the Americans convene their first congress ?

When and where did the revolutionary war commence ?

When and by whom were Ticonderoga and Crown Point taken ?

Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American armies and when ?

When was fought the memorable battle of Bunker Hill ?

What officers and troops were sent into Canada, and what was the result ?

When was Boston evacuated by the British ?

What was the naval force of America at this time ?

firmness, and the enemy retired with great loss and disgrace, and raised the siege.

In May, the British were reinforced at Quebec, from England, and the Americans, under the command of general Lincoln, retreated out of Canada, and retired to Crown Point and Ticonderoga.

On the 4th of July, congress declared the United Colonies free and independent states.

On the 12th of July, lord Howe arrived at New York from England, with a powerful fleet and armament, and joined his brother general Howe.

On the 27th of August was fought the battle of Long-Island, in which the enemy were victorious, and the next night general Washington drew off his army to New York, and retired to White Plains. General Howe pursued, and on the 29th of October, commenced an attack upon general Washington, that caused him to retire to the high grounds, at North-Castle. On the 16th of November, general Howe took fort Washington, and put the garrison to the sword. On the 22d, general Washington retired to Newark in New-Jersey; general Howe pursued. On the 13th of December, general Lee was taken by the British, at the head of the American rear guard; general Washington could muster only 2200 men at this time. On the night of the 25th, general Washington, having been reinforced, surprised the British in their camp at Trenton, and gained a signal victory. General Howe retreated, and general Washington pursued. General Howe retired to New-York.

In the spring of 1777, general Burgoyne succeeded general Carlton in Canada, and at the head of 10,000 men, commenced operations against the state of New York. On the 2d of

What armaments invaded Charleston in 1776, and what was the result?

When did the Americans retreat out of Canada, and under whose command?

When did congress declare the United States independent of Great Britain?

When was fought the battle of Long-Island, and with what success?

When the battle of White Plains?

When was fort Washington taken by the British, and in what manner?

When and how did general Washington commence his retreat through the Jerseys?

When and with what success was fought the battle of Trenton?

When and with what force did general Burgoyne invade the state of New-York?

July, he took Ticonderoga, and on the first of August, he had penetrated to Saratoga, only 36 miles from Albany.

At the same time that general Burgoyne took Ticonderoga, general Howe embarked his army at New York, and sailed for Philadelphia; landed his army at the head of the Chesapeake bay; fought the battle of Brandywine, September 11th, and entered the city of Philadelphia the 26th. In the action of Brandywine, the marquis La Fayette distinguished himself in the cause of liberty, and was wounded in the leg.

On the 16th of August, general Stark fought and gained the memorable battle of Bennington. On the 16th of October, general Washington fought the battle of Germantown, near Philadelphia. On the 7th, general Gates gained the memorable battle of Saratoga, and general Burgoyne attempted to effect his retreat, but failed. On the 17th, general Burgoyne surrendered the whole British army, under his command, to general Gates.

On the 12th of July, congress adopted a general system of confederation for the Union, which was approved by all the states, and became the palladium of their liberties down to March, 1789, when the new constitution commenced its operation.

On the 1st of December, a ship arrived from France, laden with ordnance, arms, and military stores, for the American army.

On the 16th, a treaty of amity, between France and the United States, was signed at Paris.

On the 13th of April, 1778, the Toulon fleet of 12 ships of the line, and four frigates, sailed from France for America, bearing the French minister to the United States. In May another ship arrived in America from France, laden with military stores and dry goods, for the army.

On the 16th of May, sir Henry Clinton arrived at Philadelphia to succeed general Howe, in the command of the British army. On the 18th of June, sir Henry evacuated Philadelphia, and retired towards New York; general Washington pursued; and on the morning of the 28th, he came up with

What expedition was undertaken from New York by general Howe at the same time, and what were the issue of both?

When did congress form and adopt the articles of confederation?

When did France enter into alliance with the United States?

When did the Toulon fleet sail for and arrive in America?

When, and under whose command did the British evacuate Philadelphia?

the British army, and fought the memorable battle of Monmouth. The following night sir Henry re-commenced his retreat, and retired by forced marches to New York, where he was closely invested by general Washington.

On the 8th of July, the Toulon fleet arrived within the capes of the Delaware; sailed soon after for Newport, R. I.; fought the English off that port, and repaired to Boston, and from thence to the West-Indies.

On the 27th of July, a naval action was fought between the French admiral, the count De Orvilliers, and the British admiral Keppel, off the coast of Europe; both claimed the victory.

On the 4th of December, general Lincoln took the command in Georgia, and that state became a theatre of distressing war.

On the 6th of January, 1779, Savannah, the capital of Georgia, was taken by the British. About the same time the marquis La Fayette, by permission from congress, retired to France, on a visit.

In May, sir Henry Clinton took the fortress of Stony Point, near New-York, and commenced a general system of predatory war, particularly in Connecticut and Virginia; distressing ravages ensued. On the morning of the 16th of July, general Wayne re-took the fortress of Stony Point, with screwed bayonets, without firing a gun.

Near the close of July, commodore John Paul Jones, with three ships, a brig and a cutter, on a cruise off the coast of Scotland, fell in with a British armed force, and after a most desperate action, captured two ships, and carried them into the Texel, (Holland.)

On the 4th of October, general Lincoln, with the assistance of a French fleet and armament, under the command of count De Estaing, commenced an assault upon the town of Savannah, which failed, and the allies suffered severely. Count De Estaing withdrew to the West-Indies.

When was fought the battle of Monmouth?

When was the naval action fought off Rhode-Island?

When was fought the great naval action off the coast of Europe?

When was Savannah, in Georgia, taken by the British?

When did the British take Stony Point, and commence a general system of predatory war in Virginia and Connecticut?

When did general Wayne retake Stony Point, and how?

When and where, and with what success did commodore J. P. Jones fight a memorable naval action?

When did general Lincoln, with the aid of the French fleet, attempt the capture of Savannah, and with what success?

On the 26th of December, sir Henry Clinton embarked at New-York, with an armament destined against Charleston; (S. C.) On the 11th of February, 1780, sir Henry Clinton landed his troops before Charleston. On the 12th of May, Charleston, after a brave and desperate resistance, fell into the hands of the British. Sir Henry left the command to lord Cornwallis, and embarked for New-York. About this time the marquis La Fayette returned from France, and announced that a strong naval armament would soon follow him. On the 10th of July, this armament arrived at Newport; (R. I.)

In the month of September, a conference was proposed by general Washington, to the French commanders at Newport, and they met at Hartford, in Connecticut. General Washington was accompanied by the young marquis La Fayette, and general Knox. The avowed object of conference was, to concert measures for an attack upon the city of New-York.

In the midst of this conference, an express arrived from the fortress at West Point, on the Hudson, announcing the traitorous designs of general Arnold. The council was closed—the parties retired to their posts, and general Washington flew to the relief of West Point. On his arrival, he found the cannon dismounted, and the fortress dismantled; Arnold had fled, and taken refuge on board a British sloop-of-war, posted for the occasion.

While his excellency was employed in repairing the fortress, a prisoner was announced, who proved to be the unfortunate major Andre, who had volunteered his services to sir Henry Clinton, to negotiate this treacherous operation with general Arnold. His character was that of a spy, his fate was death! The righteous sacrifice greatly interested the feelings, and touched the sympathy of every American breast.

Lord Cornwallis marched into the country, and defeated general Gates, at the battle of Camden, August 16th, 1780. General Greene succeeded general Gates, in the southern department, soon after, and general Morgan defeated colonel Parleton, at the memorable battle of Cowpens, January, 1781. General Greene fought lord Cornwallis at the battle of Guil-

When did the British commence operations against Charleston, and with what success?

Who succeeded in the British command?

When did the French armament arrive at Newport?

What were the general operations of the southern war?

ford, March 16th. Sir Henry Clinton sent a strong force into Virginia to support lord Cornwallis, and general Greene made a retrograde movement into South Carolina, and fought lord Rawdon, near Camden. In April, he advanced to Ninety-Six, and there fought another memorable battle.

General Washington detached the marquis La Fayette to oppose lord Cornwallis in Virginia, early in April, 1781, where he acquitted himself in a most masterly manner. In May, general Washington and suite, met the French officers from Newport, at Wethersfield, to concert measures for future operations. The French troops at Newport, being joined by a reinforcement, then arrived at Boston, marched down to White Plains soon after, and joined general Washington, to act against New-York. At this eventful moment count De Grasse announced by letter to general Washington, his arrival with his fleet in the Chesapeake bay. On the 5th of September, he defeated a naval Graves, who retired to New York to re-fit, and count De Grasse returned into the bay, where he was joined by the fleet from Newport, the next day. The marquis La Fayette pressed lord Cornwallis so closely as to oblige him to retire to York-Town. General Washington, with the French troops, by forced marches, joined the marquis on the 27th of September. The French fleet moved up the bay, and his lordship was completely invested in York-Town. On the 19th of October, he surrendered to the allied arms of America and France, with his whole army, prisoners of war.

The arm of Britain was now broken in America. The marquis La Fayette again returned to France. Negotiations for a general peace commenced immediately in Paris, and the preliminaries were signed on the 20th of January, 1783. On the 24th of March, the marquis La Fayette announced the tidings to general Washington, by letter, dated Paris, February 5th. On the 10th of April, the treaty was published in

---

Who took the command in Virginia against lord Cornwallis, and with what success?

When did the French troops at Newport join general Washington at White Plains?

What naval action was fought at the mouth of Chesapeake bay at this time, and what was the result?

What were the movements of the allied armies, and what was the result, and when?

When and where were the preliminaries of peace signed?

By whom was this event announced to general Washington?

When was the treaty published in America?



America, and on the 19th, general Washington announced it to the army, in general orders. This day completed the 3th year of the war.

On the 25th of November, 1783, the British evacuated New-York.

On the 20th of December, general Washington resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the American armies.

On the 2d of May, 1787, a convention of delegates from all the states, assembled at Philadelphia, to revise the confederation, and chose George Washington, president. They framed the federal constitution; the states adopted it, and chose George Washington, president, and John Adams, vice-president; and the constitution went into operation, on the 4th of March, 1789.

In 1790, the United States became involved in a destructive Indian war with the Miamies, and other powerful tribes, and general Harmer was defeated, with the loss of nearly all his army.

In 1791, general St. Clair succeeded general Harmer to prosecute the war, and was defeated by the Indians, with a loss as severe as that of general Harmer. General Wayne was appointed to succeed general St. Clair. In 1794, general Wayne defeated the Indians at the rapids of the Maumee, August 15th, which produced the treaty of Greenville, in 1795, and settled a lasting peace with the north-western Indians.

On the 19th of November, 1794, Mr. Jay negotiated a treaty of amity, commerce and navigation, with Great Britain. The president ratified this treaty on the 12th of August, 1795, and the western posts were delivered to the Americans, which confirmed the Indian peace.

On the 5th of September, 1795, a treaty of amity was concluded with the Dey of Algiers. On the 20th of October, a treaty of amity was concluded with Spain. The president next attempted to liberate his beloved friend, the marquis La

Of how long continuance was the revolutionary war?

When did the British evacuate New York?

When did general Washington resign his commission?

When and where was the federal constitution framed?

Who was the first president of the United States?

With whom were the United States involved in war in 1790?

When was peace restored?

What treaty was negotiated by Mr. Jay in 1794?

What other treaties were concluded the next year?

Mayette, from the prison of Olmutz; by a negotiation with the king of England, and the emperor of Germany, but failed. He next announced his intention to retire from office, and in December, 1796, Mr. Adams was elected president, and Mr. Jefferson vice-president; their terms commenced March 4th, 1797.

In 1797, collisions arose between the United States and France, and a war ensued; in 1799, peace was restored.

In 1801, Mr. Jefferson succeeded Mr. Adams in the presidency. Mr. Burr was elected vice-president.

In 1805, collisions arose between the United States, and France, and England.

In March, 1809, Mr. Madison succeeded Mr. Jefferson in the presidency. Mr. Clinton was elected vice-president.

In 1812, congress declared war against England. The general operations of this war were directed against Canada, but without success, though the American troops fought with great bravery in several close actions.

In August, 1814, a British squadron entered the Potomac, proceeded up to the city of Washington, landed a body of British troops, took the city, burnt the capitol, president's house, &c. and retired, and plundered Alexandria; from thence they proceeded to Baltimore, and after an unsuccessful attack, were compelled to retire.

The naval operations on the ocean were peculiarly glorious to the American navy, in the capture of several ships of war; and on lake Erie, in the capture of the whole British squadron, by commodore Perry, on the 10th of September, 1813; also, in the capture of the British fleet on lake Champlain, by commodore Macdonough, in an assault upon the town of Plattsburgh, in connection with a strong land force, on the 11th of September, 1814; the land force was obliged

Who did the president of the United States attempt to deliver from the prison of Olmutz, and by what means?

When did president Washington retire from office, and who was his successor?

Who succeeded Mr. Adams in the presidency?

Who succeeded Mr. Jefferson in the presidency?

When did the United States declare war against England?

Where were the general operations of this war directed?

What were the proceedings of the British troops that entered the Potomac, in August, 1814?

Were the naval operations of this war on the ocean, glorious to the American navy?

What naval actions were fought on the lakes?

to retire in great disorder. The names of the American naval heroes will stand recorded in the temple of immortal fame.

In December, 1814, Louisiana was invaded by a British armament of sixty sail, besides transports and barges, under the command of sir Edward Pakenham, with 12,000 troops.

General Andrew Jackson, upon the first notice of the appearance of the enemy, hastened with his brave companions in arms, to the defence of New Orleans. On the 2d of Dec. he arrived and commenced his preparations to receive the enemy. On the 12th, the British armament appeared in the bay of St. Louis; on the 14th, they captured and destroyed the American gunboats. On the 22d, sir Edward Pakenham landed at the head of a part of his army. On the 28th, general Jackson assembled his whole force, 6000, and marched down to meet the enemy, but did not reach them before dark: after reconnoitering, he commenced an attack, which surprised the British, and threw them into disorder; they soon rallied to the combat, and a sharp rencounter ensued. A thick fog arose, which rendered it necessary to withdraw the troops; general Jackson retired up the river to his fortified station; his lines extended about 1000 yards in front, defended by 12 pieces of artillery, and about 6000 men; supported by a battery of 15 guns on the opposite side of the river. General Jackson had posted his men ten deep in his lines, under the following orders, viz. 1st, to receive the enemy at his approach with a discharge of grape shot: 2d, to reserve the fire of the musketry until special orders, and then for the front rank only to fire, and pass their rifles to the rear to be loaded; and the centre and rear ranks to pass their rifles to the front in quick succession, and the front to keep up as quick a fire; the rear ranks only were to load.

At the dawn of day on the 8th of January, the British army, 12,000 strong, advanced to the combat, until they approached the lines. General Jackson opened a destructive fire from his artillery, which mowed down their ranks; but they were successively closed, as the enemy advanced. When he approached within musket shot, the whole lines vomitted forth one incessant sheet of flame, from the deadly rille, that strewed the plain with indiscriminate slaughter, and threatened the whole columns with universal ruin. The enemy broke and

---

When and by what amount of force was Louisiana invaded?  
Who commanded the American troops, and what was their number

fled in confusion, except a small body, that bravely advanced to the lines ; but they all fell to a man. Stung with indignation at the disgrace, the British officers rallied their troops, and advanced again to the charge ; again they were overwhelmed with the fire of the deadly rifle, and fled in disorder, leaving their commander, with several other generals, and more than 2000 men, killed and wounded, upon the field. The loss of general Jackson in killed and wounded, did not exceed 20 men. A defence so well concerted, and so successfully executed, with such disproportionate numbers : a defeat so decisive and so bloody, with such disproportionate losses, is not to be found recorded on the whole page of history ; and well deserves the appellation of *Jackson's victory*.

The British who survived retired on board their fleet, and proceeded to attack fort Bowyer, at the head of Mobile bay, which they carried ; but it was restored to the Americans by the treaty of peace signed at Ghent, December 24th, 1814, and ratified by the president and senate, February 18th, 1815.

On the 2d of March, 1815, congress declared war against Algiers, and sent commodores Bainbridge and Decatur, with 11 frigates, and other armed vessels, to humble that power ; and in four months, Algiers, with all the Barbary powers, were united in treaties of peace with the United States ; a just tribute to the American flag.

In 1817, Mr. Monroe succeeded Mr. Madison. Mr. Tompkins was chosen vice-president.

In 1818, general Jackson humbled the Seminole Indians, in a successful war.

In 1821, Spain ceded the Floridas to the United States.— General Jackson was made governor of the Territory of Florida.

In August, 1824, the marquis La Fayette arrived in New-York, and commenced his tour through the country, and was hailed by the nation as the friend of liberty, and the hero and benefactor of America.

When was fought the famous battle of New-Orleans, and what was the loss on each side ?

When and where was the treaty of peace signed, and when ratified by the president and senate ?

When did congress declare war against Algiers, and what was the result ?

When and by whom was Mr. Madison succeeded in the presidency ?

When and by whom were the Seminole Indians humbled ?

When were the Floridas ceded to the United States ?

In 1825, John Q. Adams was elected president, as successor to Mr. Monroe, and Mr. Calhoun was elected vice-president.

---

Who succeeded Mr. Monroe in the presidency, and who became vice-president?

## INDIVIDUAL STATES.

Q. Which are the Individual States that compose the confederacy of the United States, and what is their geographical situation and characters?

A. They are twenty-four in number, and their geographical situation will be best explained upon the map of the United States; but their characters are fully explained under each state.

Q. What are the governments of the several states?

A. The governments of the several states are all purely republican, upon the elective, or representative plan. Their legislative bodies all consist of a governor, lieut. governor, a senate, and house of representatives, chosen by the people; and their judiciaries are all appointed by the legislative bodies, with permanent salaries.

## GRAND DIVISIONS.

Q. How may the United States be geographically divided?

A. They are generally classed under the four following divisions, viz. the Eastern, Middle, Southern and Western States.

### Eastern States.

#### MAINE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Maine?

A. Maine is bounded on the N. by Lower Canada; E. by the river St. Croix, that divides it from N. Brunswick; S. by the Atlantic ocean; and W. by N. Hampshire. It is about 200 miles long, and the same broad; and contains about 40,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into the following counties, viz. York, Cumberland, Kennebeck, Somerset, Lincoln, Hancock, Washing-

ton, Oxford and Penobscot; and these are divided into 243 towns. Its population is about 300,000.

Q. What is the climate?

A. The climate is severe in winter, but mild in summer.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. The face of the country is rough and hilly, but not mountainous; covered in many parts with extensive forests of maple, beech, and pine, and with numerous lakes and swamps. It is rough near the coast, which extends about 300 miles; and is indented with numerous harbors and bays.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil is generally favourable to all the productions common to New England, excepting Indian corn, which is but partially cultivated; hops are indigenous, and pasturage is good.

Q. What are its minerals?

A. Bog-iron, copperas, and sulphur. Slate is found near the river Kennebeck, where it is obtained in tables ten feet square.

Q. Which are the principal islands?

A. Mount Desert, Long Island, Deer Island, and Sequin Island: on Sequin Island is an intermitting light-house, to distinguish it from Portland light.

Q. Which are the principal bays?

A. Saco, Casco, Frenchman's, Penobscot, Machias, and Passamaquoddy.

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. Sebacock and Umbagog.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. St. Croix, Penobscot, Kennebeck, &c.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Portland, York, Hallowell, Augusta, Bath, Buckstown, Wiscasset, and Machias, are all flourishing towns in Maine.

PORTLAND, post-town and port of entry, Cumberland county, Maine, 54 NNE. Portsmouth, 115 NNE. Boston, W. 554.† Lon. 70. 20. W. Lat. 43. 39. N. Pop. in 1800, 3,677; in 1810, 7,169; in 1820, 8,581. It is a very pleasant town, delightfully situated on a peninsula in Casco bay. It is the shire town of the county, the seat of the state government, and in point of population, wealth and commerce, the most considerable town in Maine. It contains a handsome house for the meeting of the legislature, a very elegant brick court house, an alms house, a market house, a town house, two banks, an insurance office, an academy, four boarding schools for young ladies, various schools, public and private, a town library of 1,300 volumes, an apprentices library of 900 volumes, and 10 houses for public worship, 3 for Congregationalists, 2 for Baptists, 1 for Episcopalians, 2 for Methodists, 1

† From Washington.

for Friends, and 1 for Universalists. Five of the meeting-houses are furnished with bells. The town is generally very well built, a large proportion of the public and private buildings are of brick, and many of them are elegant.

The harbor of Portland is one of the best on the continent ; it is safe and capacious, easy of access, and is never frozen over, except for a few days during the severity of winter. On a headland, in Cape Elizabeth, near the entrance of the harbor, there is a stone light house 70 feet high, erected in 1790. The town is defended by forts Preble and Seaminel, two fine forts on opposite sides of the ship channel, one and a half miles from the light-house, both mounting 35 pieces of cannon. At the east end of the town is fort Burrows, in the rear of which are some other military works. On the highest eminence of Mount Joy's neck, on the NE. side of the town stands an observatory, about 70 feet high, which affords an extensive, variegated, and beautiful view of the town, the harbor, the islands, and the interior country.

The situation of Portland, with regard to an extensive and growing back country, is such as to insure to it extensive business, and high commercial importance. The exports consist chiefly of timber, beef, fish, butter, &c. The shipping is principally employed in the fisheries, coasting business, and the trade to the West-Indies, Russia, and of late to the East Indies. The shipping belonging to this port, in 1821, amounted to 33,619 tons. A water communication between Portland and Sebago lake, is projected, which may be formed, by opening a canal about six miles long ; thence by a short canal from Sebago lake to Long pond ; by this means, a water conveyance of more than forty miles will be effected. Portland was formerly included in Falmouth, and in 1775, the principal part of the town was burnt by the British. It was incorporated by its present name in 1776.

Q. What are the commerce and manufactures of Maine ?

A. Lumber is the chief article of export ; and her manufactures are small, but her tonnage renders her the fourth commercial state.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. Bowdoin College, at Brunswick, a Baptist Theological Seminary at Waterville, and a Congregational Literary and Theological Seminary, at Bangor, all which are flourishing institutions ; there are several academies, and schools are established by law in all the towns.

Q. What Indians remain in this state ?

A. The Penobscot tribe, which amounts to about 250 families, who possess an island in the river Penobscot, that contains about 200 acres ; they are Roman Catholics ; support a priest and regular worship ; they have a church and bell, and are governed by their own laws.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Maine ?

A. Maine was settled soon after New-Hampshire, as a district of Massachusetts, and continued the connection until the

year 1820, when it was erected into a state ; and admitted into the Union in 1821.

QUESTIONS.—When was Maine settled, and as a district of what state ? When erected into a state, and when admitted into the Union ?

### NEW-HAMPSHIRE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of New-Hampshire ?

A. New-Hampshire is bounded on the N. by Lower Canada ; E. by Maine ; S. by the Atlantic and Massachusetts ; and W. by Vermont. It contains about 9,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. New-Hampshire is divided into the following counties, viz. Coos, Grafton, Cheshire, Hillsborough, Rockingham, and Stafford ; these contain 200 towns. Population 250,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. It is level near the sea, about 20 or 30 miles ; it then rises into hills and mountains, which terminate in the White mountains, near the confines of Canada.

Q. What is worthy of notice in these mountains ?

A. They are the highest land in New-England ; are covered with snow about 11 months in a year, and are seen at sea, 80 or 100 miles from the coast.

Q. What is their elevation ?

A. About 7000 feet above the level of the sea.

Q. What are the climate, soil, and productions ?

A. The climate is cold, but salubrious ; the soil is generally rough, but fertile ; and the productions such as are common to New-England.

Q. What are the mines and minerals ?

A. Iron is the principal ; and the mines of Franconia are said to surpass all others in the United States. Silver has been discovered near Portsmouth.

Q. Which are the principal lakes ?

A. Winnipiseogee, Umbagog, Squam, Sunnapee, Great Ossapee, and Messabesia.

Q. What large rivers rise under the White mountains ?

A. The Connecticut, Saco, Andriscoggin, Merrimac, and Piscataqua ; the five largest rivers in New-England.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Portsmouth, Exeter, Concord, Dover, Keene, Amherst, Charlestown, Haverhill, and Plymouth.

PORTSMOUTH, post-town and port of entry, Rockingham county, on south side of Piscataqua, 3 miles from the sea ; 14 ENE. Exeter, 24 N. Newburyport, 45 ESE. Concord, 54 SSW. Portland, 56 N. by E.



Boston, W. 500. Lon. 70. 45. W. Lat. 43. 5. N. Population in 1810, 6,934; in 1820, 7,327. It is the most considerable town, and the only sea-port in New-Hampshire, It has a healthy and pleasant situation, and is handsomely built. Some of the houses are elegant, and but a small proportion of them are mean. It has 32 streets, 40 lanes, 12 alleys, and contains a court-house, a jail, an alms house, an academy, an atheaenum, 2 market-houses, a town-hall, a custom house, an insurance office, 5 banks, including a branch of the United States bank, and 7 houses for public worship, 3 for Congregationalists, 1 for Episcopalians, 1 for Baptists, 1 for Methodists, and 1 for Universalists. The Episcopal church is a spacious and elegant brick edifice, from the cupola of which there is a handsome view of the town, the river, the islands, and the surrounding country.

Portsmouth is well situated for trade, and has considerable commerce. The shipping belonging to this port, in 1821, amounted to 23,335 tons. The harbor is one of the best in the United States, having through its whole passage up to the town, 42 feet of water at low tide, and owing to the rapidity of the current, which is equal to five miles an hour, it is never frozen. It is so defended against storms by the adjacent land, that ships may securely ride here in any season of the year; and it is almost impregnable by its natural situation. The entrance is defended by two forts, fort Constitution, on Great Island, and fort McClary, opposite to it, in Kittery. There are three other forts built for the defence of the harbor, but not garrisoned at present. There is also a light-house on Great Island.

On the 26th of December, 1802, 126 buildings, in 1806, 20 buildings, including the Episcopal church, and in 1813, 173 buildings were destroyed in this town by fire; the parts which were burnt by these fires have been mostly rebuilt with brick. An elegant bridge was erected in 1822, across the Piscataqua, connecting Portsmouth with Kittery, in Maine.

In the Piscataqua, opposite to the town, is Navy Island, on which there is a United States navy yard. The island belongs to the general government, and is convenient for building ships of war; it contains a large ship house, a hospital, barracks, store houses, 3 wet docks, &c. The Washington, a 74 gun ship, was launched here in 1814; and another 74 has been lately built here.

Q. What are the commerce and manufactures?

A. The exports of New-Hampshire are lumber, fish, oil, and the productions of the soil generally, to suit the West India markets. Domestic manufactures are very general; also brick, pottery, and some iron.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. Dartmouth College, at Hanover, and Exeter Academy, are flourishing institutions; there are also several other academies, handsomely endowed by the legislature. Schools are established by law in all the towns.

Q. What are the public improvements?

A. The Middlesex canal connects the river Merrimac with Boston; a distance of 31 miles, and greatly facilitates the trade of the upper country.

Q. What are the natural curiosities of this state ?

A. The passage of the river Saco through the White Hills, is as great a curiosity as the passage of the Shenandoah, or Potomac, through the Blue ridge, in Virginia ; the mountain is cleft from its summit to its base, that opens a passage for the river and a road, and offers to the traveller a sublime view.

A cold, dreary cavern, on the declivity of a circular eminence, called Rattlesnake hill, in the town of Chester, which is 150 feet square, in the solid rock, and about four feet high. The top, or roof, is thick set with spar, in the form and size of a pear.

A solid rock in the town of Durham, of 60 or 70 tons weight, that is so exactly balanced as to be moved with one finger.

An island in Atkinson, that rises and falls five or six feet with the water that embosoms it.

Also, upon the plain of Hanover, near Dartmouth college, fogs have been found 30 or 40 feet below the surface of the earth, and 100 feet above the level of Connecticut river.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of New Hampshire ?

A. The first settlements commenced upon the Piscataqua, in the year 1633, under John Wheelright, and others, who extinguished the Indian claims ; but their efforts to settle it were feeble, and they sold their claims to two adventurers in England, Mason and Gorges, who attempted to divide New-England into 12 lordships, under a viceroy, or governor-general, for which purpose they obtained a patent that embraced the province of Maine, under the sanction of king Charles I. and Gorges was vested with the supreme authority ; but Mason and Gorges died soon after, and the plan failed, and the settlements in New Hampshire were placed under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts.

In 1679, king Charles II. inhibited the jurisdiction of Massachusetts, by a special commission, which appointed John Cutts president of New Hampshire, with a council of nine to preside over the colony. This commission settled the government of New Hampshire upon the same liberal principles

QUESTIONS.—When and where were the first settlements of New-Hampshire commenced, and by whom ?

To whom did the first settlers relinquish their claims ?

How did these adventurers attempt to divide New England ?

What caused the failure of this plan ?

Under whose jurisdiction were these settlements then placed ?

What special commission was granted by Charles II. in 1679 ?

as those of the other colonies of New-England ; but the heirs of Mason came from England and distracted the government with their claims, down to the year 1715, before they were finally extinguished. These claims, and the bloody Indian wars which raged from time to time, greatly retarded the settlements ; and the subsequent Indian wars continued to retard the settlements down to the conquest of Canada, in 1759—60, and the peace of Paris, in 1763. From that time the settlements of New Hampshire began to flourish, and have continued to improve down to the present time.

New-Hampshire warmly co-operated with Massachusetts, and the other colonies, in resisting the aggressions of Britain, from their commencement in 1764, down to the peace of 1783. She also entered cordially into the measures of the federal government.

---

What retarded the settlements ?

When did they begin to flourish ?

## VERMONT.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Vermont ?

A. Vermont is bounded on the N. by Lower Canada ; E. by Connecticut river, or New Hampshire ; S. by Massachusetts ; and W. by New York. It is about 157 miles long, and from 40 to 80 wide. It contains 10,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. Vermont is divided into 13 counties, viz. Bennington, Windham, Rutland, Windsor, Addison, Orange, Chittenden, Caledonia, Washington, Franklin, Orleans, Essex and Grand Isle ; these contain 246 towns. Its population is 235,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The Green mountain gives name to the state, and extends from its southern line through the centre of the state, as far north as Onion river : above this it is lost in the undulating face of the country.

Q. What influence has this mountain upon the commerce of the state ?

A. It divides the western commerce to New-York and Canada, and the eastern to New-England.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil is generally fertile, yielding in abundance, all the various productions that are common to New England. Her forests abound with pine, oak, maple, ash, butternut, and hemlock.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Iron, lead, pipe-clay, white, grey, and variegated marble.

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. Lake Champlain on the west, and Memfremagog on the north.

Q. Which are its principal rivers?

A. Otter, Onion, Lamoil, and Misiscoui, that empty into lake Champlain; and West, White, and Pasoumsic, that fall into Connecticut river.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. The chief towns of Vermont are, Bennington, Rutland, Middlebury, Vergennes, Burlington, and St. Albans, on the west side of the mountain. Brattleborough, Windsor, Woodstock, Chelsea, Danville, Guildhall, and Craftsbury, on the east. Montpelier, the seat of government, is near the centre of the state.

WINDSOR, post-town, Windsor county, on the west bank of the Connecticut; 18 S. Dartmouth college, 61 S. Montpelier, 112 NW. Boston, 126 N. Hartford, W. 463. Lon. 72. 30. W. Lat. 43. 29. N. Population in 1810, 2,757; in 1820, 2,956. It is a very pleasant, handsome, and flourishing town, one of the largest in the state, and has considerable trade. It contains a court house, a state prison, a bank, an academy for young ladies, two handsome houses of public worship, one for Congregationalists, and one for Baptists, and two printing offices, from each of which is issued a weekly newspaper.

Q. What is the commerce of Vermont?

A. Vermont carries on an extensive trade with Boston, Portland, Hartford, New York, Albany, Montreal, and Quebec.

Q. What are the exports?

A. Such as are common to New-England; wheat, rye, flour, beef, pork, butter, cheese, lard, iron, nails, glass, pot and pearl ashes; live stock, &c.

Q. What are the manufactures?

A. Iron and steel, glass, and distilled spirits; pot and pearl ashes, and maple sugar extensively. Domestic manufactures are common throughout the state.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. Burlington college, endowed by the state, and Middlebury college, are flourishing institutions in Vermont; there are many academies in the state; and schools are established by law in all the towns, and well supported. At Castleton there is a medical school, under the superintendance of Dr. Tully.

Q. What are the natural curiosities?

A. A curious cave in the side of a hill, in Clarendon; the

entrance of which is about four feet in circumference, with a descent of 104 feet into a spacious room 100 feet long, and 20 broad ; this room is thick set with spar, upon the sides and bottom, and hung above with a vast variety of stalactites. The sides are furnished with chairs, tables, &c. apparently the work of art : all which reflect a brilliant lustre from the torches of the guides. Fifteen feet beneath this hall is a boiling spring, hitherto unfathomable ; it is accessible through a conical hole at one end of the hall.

A changeable sulphurous spring has been found, near the Great Oxbow, which dries and breaks out in a new place, every two or three years.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Vermont ?

A. Vermont was formerly claimed by New Hampshire, and known by the name of New Hampshire grants. In 1741, New Hampshire settled her boundary line with Massachusetts, and the then governor, Benning Wentworth, made a grant of a township six miles square, upon the south-western corner of the claims, and called it after his own name, Bennington. The same governor continued his grants until the year 1754, when the old French and Indian war commenced. In 1761, when the war closed in America, about 60 townships had been located, and at the peace of 1763, about 130 townships had been located. These grants alarmed the state of New York, and produced a controversy that continued through the revolutionary war, and was finally adjusted amicably between the parties, in the year 1790 ; Vermont paid to New York 30,000 dollars, and took her quit-claim. In 1791, Vermont was admitted into the Federal Union.

---

QUESTIONS.—What state originally claimed Vermont, and by what name was it known ?

What township was granted in 1741, and by whom ?

How many townships had been located at the close of the old French and Indian war ?

How many at the peace of 1763 ?

Did these grants alarm the state of New-York ?

When and how was the controversy settled ?

When was Vermont admitted into the Union ?

## MASSACHUSETTS.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Massachusetts?

A. Massachusetts is bounded on the N. by Vermont and New Hampshire; E. by Massachusetts bay and the Atlantic ocean; S. by the Atlantic ocean, Rhode-Island and Connecticut; W. by the state of New York. It is about 190 miles long and 90 broad. It contains about 7000 square miles.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into 14 counties, viz. Suffolk, Norfolk, Essex, Middlesex, Franklin, Hampshire, Hampden, Plymouth, Bristol, Barnstable, Dukes county, Nantucket, Worcester, and Berkshire; these are divided into 300 towns. Its population is about 523,287.

Q. What is the climate?

A. The winters are cold, but the summers are mild; and the air is salubrious. The sea-coast is rendered unpleasant, by frequent north-east winds.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. It is pleasantly undulated with hill and dale.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. Taghonnuc range, Wachuset, Tom, and Holyoke, are the only mountains of any note.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil near the coast is generally rough and barren; but in the interior it is fertile, especially upon the rivers and streams.

Q. Which are the minerals?

A. Gold, silver, copper, iron, black-lead, pipe-clay, red and yellow ocre, marble in variety, asbestos, (or uninflam-  
ble cotton,) pyrites of sulphur, vitriol and alum.

Q. Which are the principal islands?

A. Nantucket, Martha's Vineyard, Plumb, Elizabeth, and Castle Island.

Q. What is peculiar to Nantucket?

A. Nantucket has but one tree upon it of natural growth. It feeds 500 cows in one drove, and the inhabitants subsist principally by the whale and cod fishery.

Q. Which are the principal capes?

A. Cape Cod, Cape Ann, Cape Malabar, and Cape Poge.

Q. Which are the principal bays?

A. Massachusetts, Ipswich, Boston, Plymouth, Barnstable, and Buzzards.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Connecticut, with its branches; Housatonic, Merrimac, with its tributary streams; Concord, Mystic, Charles and Taunton

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Boston, Salem, Marblehead, Newburyport, Ipswich, Charlestown, Worcester, Springfield, Northampton, and many others, too numerous to mention.

Boston, city, sea-port, and capital of Massachusetts, in Suffolk county; 14 SSW. Salem, 40 NNE. Providence, 56 S. by W. Portsmouth, 63 SSE. Concord, N. H. 100 ENE. Hartford, 115 SSW. Portland, 210 NE. New York, 300 SSE. Montreal, 300 NE. Philadelphia, W. 436. Lon. 71. 4. W. Lat. 42. 22. N. Pop. in 1765, 15,520; in 1790, 18,038; in 1800, 24,937; in 1810, 33,250; in 1820, 43,293; white males 20,108; white females 21,450; coloured persons 1,690; other persons 50.

It is situated at the head of Massachusetts bay, built, with the exception of the part called South Boston, on a peninsula of uneven surface, and is nearly three miles in length, and one mile and twenty-five rods, where widest, in breadth; and is connected with the main land at the south end by a narrow isthmus, called the Neck, leading to Roxbury. The outer harbour is formed by Nahant Point on the north, and Point Alderton on the south, and is studded by about forty small islands, fifteen of which afford excellent pasture; and are frequented in summer by numerous parties of pleasure. The inner harbour is so capacious, that 500 vessels may ride at anchor in a good depth of water; while the entrance is so narrow as scarcely to admit two ships abreast. It is one of the best harbours in the United States, accessible at every season, and protected from all winds. The entrance is defended by two strong forts, Fort Independence on Castle Island, and Fort Warren on Governor's Island. The city is admirably situated for commerce, and is a place of great trade and opulence. The quantity of shipping belonging to this port exceeds that of any other port in the United States, with the exception of New York; and in 1816, amounted to 143,420 tons; in 1821, 126,323 tons. In 1821, the number of foreign arrivals was 584; clearances 613; arrivals coastwise 1,831; clearances 2,082. The duties on imports, in 1821, amounted to nearly \$4,000,000. The city pays one third of the state tax. Among the manufacturing establishments are brass and iron founderies, a type foundery, and two large glass manufactories, in which window glass and fancy and ornamental work are made of a very superior quality. The other manufactories are cordage, cards for wool and cotton, paper hangings, hats, plate, soap, candles, rum, sugar, &c.

Boston contains 155 streets, 27 lanes, exclusive of courts and squares, and about 80 wharves and quays; eleven banks, including a branch of the United States bank, twelve insurance offices, a state house, a court house, a theatre, two jails, an alms house, a work house, an asylum for female orphans, and one for indigent boys, four market houses, four museums, a circus, and a riding school; a Medical college, and twenty-nine places of public worship; eleven for Congregationalists, five for Episcopalians, three for Baptists, three for Universalists, two for Methodists, one for Roman Catholics, one for Friends, one for Africans, a New Jerusalem church, and the seamen's chapel. Many of the churches are elegant, and most of them are ornamented with steeples or cupolas. To the public buildings may be added the old state house, the Massachusetts general hospital, the Custom house

Faneuil hall, Concert hall, Barristers hall, and Merchants hall. The last is in the same building with the post-office, and has an extensive public reading room, which is a grand focus of political and commercial intelligence. Among the public objects may be enumerated the Gallery of Fine Arts, and the Washington Gardens.

In 1817, there was erected on both sides of Market street a block of stores, 485 feet in length on one side, and 442 on the other, and four stories high ; and on Central wharf another immense pile of buildings was completed the same year, 1,240 feet in length, containing 54 stores four stories high, and having a spacious hall in the centre, over which is erected a convenient observatory. These buildings, for extent, convenience, and elegance, are said not to be exceeded in the commercial world. The general hospital is a very spacious and elegant edifice, and the new court house is large and commodious, both built of Chelmsford granite. The state house is built on ground elevated about 100 feet above the level of the harbor, and is a noble edifice. It is 173 feet in front, and 61 deep, and its situation and size render it a very conspicuous object. The dome is 50 feet in diameter, terminated by a circular lantern, at an elevation of 100 feet from the foundation. The prospect from the top is exceedingly magnificent and beautiful, surpassing every thing of the kind in this country, and will bear a comparison with the Castle hill of Edinburgh, the famous bay of Naples, or any other of the most picturesque scenes in Europe. Here may be seen at a view, the town with its shipping and buildings, the harbor and its islands, Charles river, a fine country, ornamented with elegant country seats, and more than twenty flourishing towns. In front of the state house is the common, containing 44 acres, surrounded by the mall, an extensive and most delightful public walk. In the north part of the city the streets are narrow, irregular and crooked ; many of the houses of wood, more than a century old, and built with little regard to convenience or taste ; but in the parts recently built, the streets are wider, the houses mostly of brick, and the private buildings display more elegance and splendour, than in any other city in the United States. The city exhibits a very picturesque and beautiful view when approached from the sea ; and its general appearance is much admired by strangers. The surrounding country is well cultivated, populous, and remarkably pleasant, having numerous elegant country seats, and many handsome villages ; and surpasses in natural scenery and artificial improvement the vicinity of any city in the Union.

Boston is the literary as well as commercial metropolis of New-England. It is well supplied with schools, both public and private ; and has several valuable libraries, and numerous literary and humane societies. The Boston Atheaenum is a noble establishment, commenced in 1806, and has a large brick building appropriated to its accommodation. It contains a library of 21,000 volumes, is well furnished with domestic and foreign periodical publications, and open every day in the week, except Sunday. The Boston library contains 8,000 volumes ; the Theological library 2,000 ; the Social Law library 1,000 ; the Mercantile library 1,200 ; the Mechanic Apprentices library about 2,500. The Massachusetts Historical Society has a library of upwards of 2,000 volumes, and the American Academy of Arts and Sciences one of about 1,500. These, together with the other principal societies in the state, hold their meetings here. There are published in Boston,



nineteen newspapers; three daily, one three times a week, five twice a week, and ten once a week; and eleven other periodical works are published or republished. The citizens are distinguished for their enterprise, intelligence, hospitality, and public spirit; and for the liberality with which they support humane and charitable objects.

The bridges, which are five in number, are objects of particular interest. Charles river bridge, connecting Boston with Charlestown was first opened for passengers in 1736. It is 1,503 feet long, 42 broad, and stands on seventy-five piers. West Boston bridge, connecting Boston with Cambridgeport was opened in 1793. It is 3,483 feet long, 40 broad, and stands upon 180 piers. South Boston bridge, connecting the main part of the town with South Boston, was constructed in 1805, and is 1,628 feet long, and 42 broad. Craigie's or Canal bridge, connecting Boston with Lechmere's point, was opened in 1809. It is 2,740 feet long, and 56 broad, floored with earth. This bridge, on the Cambridge side, is connected with Charlestown by Prison point bridge, 1,831 feet long. The Mill Dam bridge, forming a grand avenue into Boston from Brookline and Brighton, was begun in 1818, and finished in 1821, and cost about \$600,000. It is constructed of stone and earth, one and a half miles long, about thirteen feet high, and so broad that five carriages may be driven over it abreast. It encloses two basins; a full basin consisting of 200 acres, and a receiving basin containing 500 acres. These basins are separated by a cross dam, on which it is contemplated to erect various mills. A large corn mill has been recently finished, and is in successful operation. A water power is created sufficient to put in operation very extensive water works.

The Indian name of Boston was *Shawmut*. It was settled by the English in 1630, and at first called *Tremont* or *Trimountain*, from three hills. It was greatly distinguished for the part it took in the revolution, which originated here. It was styled and governed as a town till 1822, when it was erected into a city, and a representative government was instituted. It is divided into twelve wards, and the elections are now held by wards. It has suffered much by fires; some of the principal of which have happened in 1676, 1679, 1683, 1711, 1760, 1767, 1775, 1787, and 1794. In 1760, happened what was called the *great fire*, which consumed 174 dwelling houses, and 175 other buildings. In 1818, November 3d, the exchange, a magnificent brick edifice of seven stories, 127 feet long, containing 202 rooms, was burnt.—Benjamin Franklin was born here, January 17, 1706.

Q. What is the commerce of Massachusetts?

A. Massachusetts employs 38,000 tons of shipping in her fisheries, 5000 in her coasting trade, and 100,420 in her foreign trade, which includes about one third of the tonnage of the United States. Total 143,420.

Q. What is the state of manufactures?

A. Duck, cotton, iron, nails, paper, cards, distilled spirits, glass, shoes, wire, snuff, oil, chocolate, and powder, are all extensively manufactured in Massachusetts.

Q. What are the improvements in inland navigation?

A. The Middlesex canal stands first, and next the locks and canals, at the falls upon Connecticut river.

Q. What further improvements are contemplated ?

A. Two canals, the one across the isthmus of Cape Cod, the other from Boston harbor to Taunton river, about 28 miles. Both will connect Boston bay with Narraganset bay.

Q. Which are the principal bridges ?

A. There are about 30 bridges in Massachusetts, under toll, viz. Charles river bridge, from Boston to Charlestown, 1500 feet long ; two others, from Boston to Cambridge, 3500 feet long each ; and a causeway to one of them 3600 feet more. Another from Boston to Dorchester ; two from Charlestown to Malden and Chelsea. Essex bridge, between Salem and Beverly. All these have draws. Also, several valuable bridges over the Merrimac and the Connecticut.

Q. What is the state of the roads ?

A. More than 20 turnpike companies are incorporated, and their improvements on turnpike roads, are very extensive and valuable.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. In Massachusetts, schools are established by law in every town, and those in Boston are numerous. There are more than 20 flourishing academies. The University of Cambridge is the oldest, and one of the most respectable in the nation. The museum, and philosophical apparatus are very extensive ; and the library contains more than 12,000 volumes.

Andover Theological Seminary is very liberally endowed, and is a most valuable and flourishing institution.

Williamstown college, and Amherst college, are both flourishing institutions.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Massachusetts ?

A. In the year 1620, the Puritan colony from England, landed at Plymouth, and commenced the settlements of New-England. The rock on which they landed, is still preserved at Plymouth, as a lasting monument of that memorable event.

Mr. John Carver was the first governor of Plymouth colony.

In the year 1627, king Charles I. granted the charter of Massachusetts Bay, to Henry Roswell, and others ; and the same year the first settlement commenced at Salem, under captain John Indicott.

In 1629, John Winthrop was appointed governor, and arrived at Charlestown.

In 1630, the first christian church was formed at Boston, and the first general court was held at Charlestown.

In 1639, Cambridge college was founded.

In 1643, Massachusetts stood at the head of the New-England confederacy.

In 1675, Philip's war commenced, that laid in ruins the finest settlements in Massachusetts.

In 1685, king Charles II. removed the charter of Massachusetts, and placed the colony under the government of Sir Edmund Andros, as governor-general of New England.

In 1688, Andros was removed, upon the accession of William and Mary to the throne of England; and in 1692, king William granted a new charter, in which Plymouth colony was united to Massachusetts. Sir William Phipps was the first governor.

In 1690, the second Indian war commenced, called king William's war, that raged throughout the frontiers of New-England, and was closed at the peace of Ryswick, 1697.

In 1703, the third Indian war commenced, called Queen Ann's war, which raged ten years, and was closed by the peace of Utrecht, 1713.

In 1739, Great Britain declared war against Spain; and such had now become the prosperity of Massachusetts, that she was able to furnish 500 men, in the service of England, against Carthagena, a city of Spanish South America.

In 1741, France took part in the war with Spain, which

QUESTIONS.—When and where was the first settlement made in New England?

Who was the first governor of Plymouth colony?

When and to whom was granted the charter of Massachusetts Bay, and where was the first settlement commenced?

Who was appointed governor?

When and where was the first christian church formed, and the first general court held?

What college was founded in 1639?

What war commenced in 1675?

When was the first charter of Massachusetts removed, and how was the colony then governed?

When and by whom was Sir Edmund Andros removed?

When did Massachusetts receive a new charter, what colony was united to her, and who became the first governor?

When did the second Indian war commence, and what was it called?

When the third, and what called?

What number of men did Massachusetts furnish in the service of England against Carthagena in 1739?

What caused the Indian war in 1741?

commenced a new Indian war in Massachusetts and New England.

In 1746, Massachusetts, in connection with New-Hampshire, and the other New-England colonies, fitted out an armament, and took the strong city of Louisburg, on the island of Cape Breton, then owned by the French. This war was closed with France, by the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748 ; but the Indian war raged until the next year.

In 1754, a war commenced in America, called the French and Indian war, that continued seven years, and was finally closed in Europe and America, by the peace of Paris, 1763. Massachusetts bore a very conspicuous part in this war.

In 1764, Great Britain commenced a system of taxation upon her American colonies ; and Massachusetts put herself at the head of an opposition, that led to the revolutionary war, which commenced at Lexington, (in Massachusetts,) April 19, 1775.

The firmness of Massachusetts not only brought upon her the first shock of the revolution, and rendered her the theatre of war for the first year ; but she gave the first president to the first general congress, (John Hancock,) and bore a conspicuous part in the revolution, to the peace of 1783. Massachusetts entered with zeal into the measures pursued for framing the Federal Constitution, and gave the first vice-president, (John Adams,) who became the second president to the new government. In December, 1824, John Q. Adams, son of the former John Adams, was elected president. In fine, the civil, literary, agricultural, commercial, and manufacturing improvements of Massachusetts, are not surpassed by any one of the states in the Federal Union.

---

What city was taken by the New-England colonies in 1746 ?

When did the French and Indian war commence, and how long did it continue ?

Did the revolutionary war first commence in Massachusetts ?

## RHODE ISLAND.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Rhode-Island ?

A. Rhode-Island is bounded on the N. and E. by Massachusetts ; S. by the Atlantic ocean ; and W. by Connecticut. It is 49 miles long and 29 broad ; and contains 1,421 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. It is divided into five counties, viz. Newport, Provi-

dence, Washington, Bristol and Kent ; these contain about 31 towns. Its population is about 83,000.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, and productions?

A. The country is hilly, but not mountainous ; the soil in the southern parts is sandy and barren, except in the Narraganset country, which is very fertile, and produces the finest dairies in New-England. The islands are remarkably fertile. In the northern parts it is rough and stony.

Q. What is the climate?

A. It is very salubrious, and more temperate than that of any other of the New-England states, particularly about Narraganset bay, and upon Rhode-Island.

Q. What are its minerals?

A. Copper, iron, coal,† and limestone ; the latter in abundance, and is extensively manufactured.

Q. Which are the most noted mineral springs?

A. There are several ; but the one near Providence is the most frequented.

Q. Which are the principal Islands?

A. Rhode Island, so called from its resemblance to the island of Rhodes ; Block Island, Prudence, Dyer's, Hogg Island, and Canonicut.

Q. Which are its principal bays?

A. Narraganset, and Mount Hope bays.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. Providence, Taunton, Pawtuxet, and Pawtucket.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Providence, Newport, Bristol, Warren, East Greenwich, and Warwick, are all flourishing towns.

PROVIDENCE, post-town, and port of entry, and semi-metropolis of Rhode-Island, in a county of the same name ; 15 NNW. Bristol ; 30 N. Newport, 40 SSW. Boston, 58 NE. New-London, 70 E. Hartford, W. 416. Lon. 71. 16 W. Lat. 41. 51. N. Pop. in 1800, 7,614 ; in 1810, 10,071 ; in 1820, 11,767. It is situated at the head of Providence river, or Narraganset bay, on the west side of the Seekhonk, or Pawtucket, and 35 miles from the ocean. It is a pleasant, well built, and very thriving town, well situated for trade, and has a flourishing commerce, and extensive manufactories. The shipping belonging to this port in 1821, amounted to 20,575 tons. The river is navigable as far as the town for vessels of 900 tons.

Providence is built on both sides of the river, and the two parts are connected by a very elegant bridge, 90 feet in breadth. In point of population, it is the first town in Rhode Island, and the third in New-England. It contains a court house, a jail a market house, a custom house, a university, a public library of about 2000 volumes, a Friends boarding school, an academy, five public schools, seven banks, includ-

†An extensive bed of anthacite coal has been discovered on the north end of Rhode-Island, and is now in full operation.

ing a branch of the United States bank, four insurance offices, and twelve houses of public worship; 4 for Baptists, 3 for Congregationalists, 1 for Episcopalians, 1 for Friends, 1 for Methodists, 1 for Universalists, and 1 for Africans. Two of the Congregational, and one of the Baptist meeting-houses, and the Episcopal church, are among the handsomest edifices of the kind in the United States. Many of the private houses are elegant, and some of them are very finely situated. Among the manufacturing establishments are 3 cotton manufactories, a large woollen manufactory, 2 paper mills, 2 bleaching, dying, and calandring companies, and an air furnace. These manufactories are aided by three steam engines. Five newspapers are published here; 3 twice, and 2 once a week. A little to the east are two handsome bridges across the river, connecting Providence with Seekonk. This town was originally settled, in 1636, by Mr. Roger Williams, to whom is ascribed the honor of establishing the first political community, in which perfect religious toleration was admitted.

Brown University was originally founded at Warren, in 1764, and was removed to Providence, in 1770. It received its present name in 1804, from Nicholas Brown, Esq. one of its principal benefactors. It is a respectable and flourishing seminary. Its funds are not large, having arisen solely from individual liberality. There are two college edifices, both of brick, and four stories high; one 150 feet long, and 46 wide, with a projection of 10 feet on each side, containing 51 rooms occupied by students, together with rooms for public purposes. The other building, erected in 1822, is 120 feet by 40, and contains 48 rooms. These edifices are delightfully situated in a line, on an eminence, on east side of the town, commanding a fine prospect. The college library contains about 5000 volumes, and there are two libraries belonging to two literary societies, each containing about 1,200 volumes; the philosophical apparatus is respectable.

The board of trustees is composed of 36 members; of whom 22 must be Baptists, 5 Friends, 5 Episcopalians, and 4 Congregationalists. The number of Fellows, or Learned Faculty, is 12; of these, eight, including the president, must be Baptists; the other four may be of any denomination; as also may the professors and tutors. The executive government consists of the president and eight professors; 1 of law, 1 of moral philosophy and metaphysics, 1 of mathematics and natural philosophy, 1 of anatomy and surgery, 1 of materia medica and botany, 1 of oratory and belles lettres, 1 of the theory and practice of physic, and one of chemistry; and 2 tutors. The number of students in 1822, was 156. Whole number educated to 1820, 876; ministers 152. The commencement is on the 1st Wednesday of September. There are three vacations; the first from commencement, three weeks; the second from the last Wednesday in December, eight weeks; the third from the third Wednesday in May, two weeks. There is connected with the university a grammar school, containing usually about 30 students.

The Friends boarding school, belonging to the yearly meeting for New-England, is three quarters of a mile NE. of the university, on an elevated situation, commanding an extensive prospect. The building is a very spacious and elegant edifice of stone and brick. The body of the building is 54 feet by 56, three stories high, with two wings, each 40 feet by 42, of two stories, with a basement story under the whole. It has a superintendent, two male, and two female teachers, and about 70 pupils, and a small library.

NEWPORT, post-town, sea-port, and semi-metropolis Rhode-Island, in Newport county, on SW. end of the island of Rhode-Island, 5 miles from the sea, 15 S. Bristol, 30 S. Providence, 55 E. by N. New-London, 71 S. by W. Boston, W. 419. Lon. 71. 14. W. Lat. 41. 25. N. Pop. in 1800, 6,644; in 1810, 7,907; in 1820, 7,319. It contains a state house, a jail, an academy, 5 banks, 2 insurance offices, a public library of 1,600 volumes, 2 circulating libraries, and eleven houses of public worship, 2 for Congregationalists, 3 for Baptists, 1 for Sabbatarians, or Seven-day Baptists, 1 for Episcopalians, 1 for Friends, 1 for Methodists, 1 for Moravians, and a Jews' Synagogue. The library has a very elegant building appropriated to its accommodation. The town lies N. and S. upon a gradual ascent east from the water, and exhibits a beautiful view from the harbor and the neighboring hills. It is celebrated for the salubrity of its climate, as well as for the beauty of its situation, and is a place of fashionable resort from the middle and southern states during the hot months. It is more noted than any other town in the United States for the variety and excellence of the fresh fish which its market affords. No fish market in the world, is perhaps, better supplied.

Newport was first settled in 1633, by William Coddington and his associates. It was formerly more populous, commercial and flourishing, than at present. Before the American revolution, it was the fourth commercial town in the colonies, and contained at one time more than 9000 inhabitants. It suffered severely during the revolutionary war, and was for a long time occupied by the enemy. The principal street is more than a mile long. The houses have an antique appearance. The harbor which spreads westward before the town, is one of the finest in the world, having a safe and easy entrance, and so spacious that a large fleet may anchor in it and ride in perfect security. It is defended by three forts; fort Green on north side of the town; fort Adams on Brenton's Point, 2 miles SW. of the town; and fort Wolcott on Goat Island, which lies in front of the town. On this island there is also a military hospital belonging to the United States. The shipping owned here in 1821, amounted to 10,701 tons. A large stone mill is still standing here, which was erected before the date of the earliest records.

Q. What is the state of manufactures in Rhode-Island?

A. These are flourishing; linen and tow cloths are manufactured largely, for exportation; also, bar and sheet iron, steel, nails, nailrods, stoves, bells, and hollow ware, generally. Near Providence are 76 cotton manufactories that are very flourishing.

Q. What is the commerce of this state?

A. Rhode-Island carries on commerce with Boston, New-York, the southern states, Europe, and the East and West-Indies. Her exports in 1816, amounted to about 700,000 dollars.

Q. What are its internal improvements?

A. These are not very extensive; they consist of one turnpike road, from Providence to Connecticut, and one from Providence to Boston; and several valuable bridges.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. Brown University at Providence, is a respectable institution, and there is a flourishing academy at Newport, and seven others in the state ; but public and private schools are not supported by law in the several towns, as in the other New-England states. There are more than 250 in the state.

Q. What are the natural curiosities ?

A. Pawtucket falls, of about 50 feet perpendicular, which support a bridge directly upon their summit, that affords a romantic view.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Rhode-Island ?

A. This state was settled in 1636, by the Rev. Roger Williams, and his followers, who fled from the persecutions of Massachusetts. Mr. Williams settled at Providence, and gave it a name expressive of his escape and deliverance. Mr. Williams commenced a free toleration in religion, which still continues.

Rhode-Island is famous for its Mount Hope, the residence of the great Sachem Philip, who headed the Indian confederacy against New-England, in 1675.

In 1644, Rhode Island obtained her first charter from parliament ; and in 1647, the freemen chose their first president.

In 1652, parliament dissolved the assembly, on account of their free toleration ; but they resumed their sittings soon after, and continued to enjoy their privileges. In 1663, king Charles II. granted them a new charter, that placed Rhode-Island upon an equal footing with the other New-England colonies.

The first assembly under this charter, commenced a system of persecution against the Catholics, which continued to the accession of king James II. in 1685. He attempted to check this persecution, by removing their charter, and placing Rhode-Island under the government of Sir Edmund Andros, governor of New-England. Upon the accession of William and Mary to the throne of England, 1688, Andros was

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Rhode-Island settled ?  
 What were the causes that led to this settlement ?  
 What general war originated in Rhode-Island, and when ?  
 When did Rhode-Island obtain her first charter ?  
 When was this charter revoked, and a second charter granted ?  
 What consequences followed the second charter ?



removed, and they resumed their charter, and continued to enjoy it down to the American revolution.

The harbor of Newport had the honor to receive the French fleet, under the command of admiral Terney; and the French troops, under the command of count Rochambeau, were put in possession of the Island, July 10th, 1780. Rhode Island furnished for the support of the revolution, a major-general Greene; the hero of the southern war, whose brilliant military achievements rendered him the pride and ornament of his country.

Rhode-Island, being one of the smallest states, entered cautiously into the Federal Union; but she has been uniform in her support of the government.

What memorable event took place at Newport in 1780?

What distinguished hero of the revolution sprang from this state?

What is the character of this state as a member of the Union?

## CONNECTICUT.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Connecticut?

A. Connecticut is bounded on the N. by Massachusetts; E. by Rhode-Island; S. by Long-Island sound; and W. by New York. It is 90 miles long, and 70 broad. It contains 4,674 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. Connecticut is divided into eight counties, viz Hartford, New Haven, New London, Fairfield, Windham, Litchfield, Middlesex, and Tolland; these contain 122 towns. Its population is 275,248.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. Generally undulating and rough, excepting upon the large rivers; but it is not mountainous. (See mountains, page 15.)

Q. What is the climate?

A. The climate is such as is common to New-England, severe and cold in winter, but mild and warm in summer.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil is generally good, and well cultivated; and the productions are such as are common to the northern states, wheat, rye, barley, Indian corn, oats, flax, hemp, peas, beans, potatoes, onions, and some tobacco.

Q. What are its minerals?

A. Silver, iron, lead, zinc, cobalt, coal, and chrystals.

Q. Which are their mineral springs?

A. At Stafford there is a chalybeate spring of some repute, others have been found at Suffield, Litchfield, Guilford, &c.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. Connecticut, Housatonic, Thames, &c.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Hartford and New-Haven are the capitals; these, with Middletown, New London, and Norwich, are the five cities of Connecticut. Fairfield, Litchfield, and Tolland, are county towns; Farmington, Wethersfield, Windsor, Suffield, Windham, and others, are handsome towns.

HARTFORD, city, Hartford county, Connecticut, and semi-capital of the state, on W. bank of Connecticut river, 30 miles above its mouth, 15 N. Middletown, 34 NNE. New-Haven, 42 NW. New London, 70 W. Providence, 78 ESE. Hudson, 94 SE. Albany, 100 WSW. Boston, W. 339. Lon 7. O. W. Lat. 41. 46. N. Pop. of the township in 1800, 5,34; in 1810, 6,053; in 1820, 6,908; of the city in 1810, 3,55; in 1820, 4,726. It has a pleasant and advantageous situation at the head of sloop navigation, and is surrounded by a fertile and beautiful country; and it is very extensively connected with large towns in various directions, by means of good roads. It contains a handsome state house of stone and brick, 2 markets, 3 banks, including a branch of the United States bank, an arsenal, an academy, 2 insurance offices, a library of 2,600 volumes, a museum, an asylum for the deaf and dumb, and nine houses for public worship, seven of them within the city, viz. 3 for Congregationalists, 1 for Episcopalians, 1 for Baptist, 1 for Methodist, and 1 for Universalists. The principal street is about one and a half miles long, extending through the city, parallel with the river. This and other streets in a similar direction, are intersected by streets extending back from the river, but not uniformly at right angles. The city is generally well built, particularly the main-street, on which many of the houses are elegant brick edifices. The new Congregational meeting house is one of the most elegant structures in the state. An elegant bridge, with six arches, 974 feet long, is erected over the Connecticut, connecting the city with East-Hartford.

Hartford has a flourishing commerce. The shipping owned here in 1818, amounted to 9,377 tons. It has an extensive inland trade, and a variety of manufactures; as leather, shoes, coaches, cotton and woolen goods, saddlery, brass work, &c. It has 10 printing offices, from 4 of which newspapers are issued, 7 bookstores, and 22 practicing lawyers. The General Assembly has one session annually, and meets alternately at Hartford and New Haven. The Indian name of Hartford was Suckiang. It was first settled by the English in 1635. The Asylum for educating the deaf and dumb was opened here in 1817; and is the first institution of the kind in America. The instructors consist of a principal and 4 assistants; the number of pupils about 50. Candidates for admission must not be under 9, nor over 30 years of age. The whole annual charge to each is 200 dollars. The success of this interesting and benevolent institution, and the improvement of the pupils have been highly gratifying. It has received a donation from the congress of the United States of upwards of 23,000 acres of land.

The building of the Asylum is a handsome brick edifice, delightfully situated on an elevation one half mile west of the city.

The Retreat for the Insane, is a splendid edifice, 50 feet by 50, of 4 stories, with two wings 50 feet by 30, of 3 stories, the whole built of stone, and covered with plaister, and white washed, or painted, which gives it a neat and elegant appearance. The public have high expectations of the utility of this institution.

A stone edifice for the accommodation of Washington College, 149 feet long, 33 wide, and 4 stories high, was erected upon a conspicuous elevation in the western part of the city, in 1824.

NEW-HAVEN, city, sea-port, and semi metropolis of Connecticut, in New-Haven county, 34 SSW. Hartford, 52 W. New-London, 76 NE. New York, 134 WSW. Boston, W. 304. Lon. 72 56. W. Lat. 41 18. N. Pop. of the township in 1790, 1,484; in 1800, 5,175; in 1810, 6,974; in 1820, 8,327; of the city in 1810, 5,772; in 1820, 7,147. The city lies round the head of the bay which sets up about 4 miles N. from Long-Island Sound, and is situated on a large and beautiful plain which is bordered on the north partly by eminences called East and West Rock, presenting bold and almost perpendicular columns of naked rocks, from 350 to 370 feet high. Two small rivers bound the city, one on the east, the other on the west.

It was incorporated as a city in 1784, and is three miles long from east to west, and two broad. It is regularly laid out, and consists of two parts, old and new towns. The old town was laid out in a large square, divided into 9 smaller squares, each 52 rods on a side, separated by streets 4 rods in width. The central square is open, appropriated to public uses, and is one of the most beautiful in the United States. On and around this square, are erected the public buildings, consisting of a state house, an indifferent building of brick, the college edifices, and 4 houses of public worship, 2 for Congregationalists, very elegant brickbuildings, 1 for Episcopalians, a very beautiful Gothic edifice of stone, and 1 for Methodists. Besides these the city contains a jail, an alms house, a custom house, an academy, a library of 1,500 volumes, a museum, 2 banks, 3 insurance offices, 6 printing offices, from 4 of which weekly newspapers are issued, and two other periodical publications.

New Haven is one of the most agreeable towns in the United States. The streets are sandy, but are kept clean. The houses are mostly of wood, two stories high, not expensive or very elegant, yet having an appearance of neatness and comfort. Among the houses recently erected are several handsome edifices of brick and stone. The public square and the principal streets are finely ornamented with trees, and a great part of the houses have gardens in the rear filled with fruit trees, giving the city a rural and delightful appearance. The burying ground in the north west part of the town is an object of particular interest. It is laid out in parallelograms, subdivided into family burying places, the whole ornamented with rows of trees. The monuments are almost wholly of marble. Exquisite taste is manifested in the whole design, and the appearance is solemn and impressive.

The harbor is well defended from winds, but is shallow, and gradually filling up with mud. It has about 7 feet on the bar at low water, and the common tides rise 6, and the spring tides 7 or 8 feet. The long wharf is 3,943 feet in length, the longest in the United States. In 1765, it was only 29 rods long, yet there is less water at its termi-

nation now, than there was in 1765. The maritime commerce of New Haven is greater than that of any other town in Connecticut. The shipping belonging to this port in 1821, amounted to 10,255 tons. Both the foreign and coasting trade are considerable, and packets ply regularly between New-Haven and New-York. The Indian name of New-Haven was Quinipiack. It was first settled by the English in 1638, and was the capital of the colony of New-Haven, which continued distinct from the colony of Connecticut till 1665. The legislature of the state meets alternately here and at Hartford.

Yale College, founded in 1700, incorporated in 1701, was originally placed at Killingworth; 1707, removed to Saybrook, and in 1717, to New-Haven. It is a distinguished and flourishing institution, and ranks with the first literary seminaries in the United States. There are eight collegiate buildings, 4 halls, 100 feet by 40, of 4 stories, each containing 32 rooms for students; a chapel 50 feet by 40, containing also a philosophical chamber; a lyceum, containing lecture rooms, library, &c.; all of brick; a dining hall of stone, with a room for the mineralogical cabinet, lecture rooms, &c. and a chemical laboratory; and the medical college, a large edifice of stone. The college library contains about 7,000 volumes, and three libraries belonging to societies, contain together 2,500 volumes. The philosophical and the chemical apparatus are very excellent. A cabinet of minerals was deposited here in 1811, by George Gibbs, esq. the original cost of which was £4,000 sterling; the number of specimens 10,000.† The college has another cabinet containing about 4,000 specimens.

The board of trustees consists of the president of the college, 10 clergymen, the governor of the state, lieutenant governor, and the 6 senior members of the council. The executive government is entrusted to a president, 9 professors, including 4 medical professors, 1 of mathematics and natural philosophy, 1 of chemistry, mineralogy, and geology, 1 of the Hebrew, Greek, and Latin languages, 1 of divinity, 1 of rhetoric and oratory, 1 of materia medica and botany, 1 of the theory and practice of physic, surgery, and obstetrics, 1 of chemistry and pharmacy, and 1 of anatomy and physiology, and 5 tutors. The number of undergraduates in 1821, was 325; medical students 78; total 403. Total number educated to 1820, 3,478; number living 1,884.—The lectures in the medical department commence on the 1st of November. Commencement is held on the 2d Wednesday in September. There are 3 vacations; the 1st from commencement, 6 weeks; the 2d from the 2d Wednesday in January, 3 weeks; the 3d, from the Wednesday immediately preceding the 2d Tuesday in May, 3 weeks.

Q. What is the commerce of Connecticut?

A. It is principally confined to the West-Indies, the southern states, New York, and Boston. Connecticut has some European trade.

Q. What are the manufactures?

A. Cotton and woollen cloths, snuff, powder, glass, pottery, iron, steel, anchors, bells, hollow ware, paper, leather, shoes and boots, clocks, stoves, tin ware, (extensively); carriages of all descriptions, and fire-arms.

† The cabinet of Mr. Gibbs was purchased by the trustees in 1825, for 20,000 dollars.

Q. What are the internal improvements ?

A. Turnpike companies are extensively incorporated, and these have placed the roads and bridges in a highly improved situation, throughout the state. The turnpike from Hartford to New Haven is one of the straightest and best in the United States.

A canal has been commenced from the interior of Massachusetts, through Farmington to New-Haven, which is nearly completed.

The citizens of Hartford, and others, are making spirited exertions to remove the obstructions in Connecticut river, above the city, in order to facilitate the boat navigation into the northern country, by the aid of steam tow-boats.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. The literary institution at New-Haven, is one of the first in the United States. Academies are numerous, and primary or district schools are established by law in every town. Each county town is obliged by law to support a grammar school. For support of the primary or district schools, the state pays about 70,000 dollars annually, it being the interest on the fund arising from the sale of their western reserve land, (called the school fund.) Also, 12,000 dollars annually from the civil list, all which reduces the price of schooling to about three cents per week, for each child.

In the year 1823, the legislature granted a charter for the incorporation of Washington College. The friends of the institution obtained a handsome sum by subscription, to defray the expenses of the necessary buildings, &c. In 1824, the college was located at Hartford, and an elegant stone building erected upon an elevated situation, in the south-western part of the city. An elegant chapel of stone is now erected for the accommodation of the institution. A number of students were convened, (in 1824,) which formed a class, under a regular course of studies; and the institution commenced with flattering prospects. The first anniversary commencement was held at Hartford, on the first Thursday in August, 1827, and ten young gentlemen received the first public honors of the college.

An elegant stone edifice has been erected in the city of Middletown, for the accommodation of the Norwich, (Ver.) Military Academy, under the superintendance of captain Partridge; and in August, 1825, he removed the same to Middletown, where it continues to flourish with increased respectability.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Connecticut?

A. In the year 1631, the Plymouth council in England, granted to the earl of Warwick, the district of country, lying south of Massachusetts, and west of Plymouth. The next year king Charles I. confirmed this patent, and the earl of Warwick conveyed his grant to lords Say and Seal, and Brook.

In 1633, a party of adventurers from Plymouth, explored the Connecticut river, and erected a trading house at Windsor. On their passage they were annoyed by a Dutch fort, which stood upon Dutch Point, (so called) at the confluence of Hartford Mill river.

In 1633, John Winthrop, son of governor Winthrop, of Massachusetts, arrived from England, with a commission as governor of the colony of Connecticut, and under his direction a Mr. Fenwick, with a small party, came out from Boston and erected a fort, and commenced a settlement, at the mouth of Connecticut river, and called it Saybrook. The Dutch sent out a party from New Netherlands, and attempted to dispossess Mr. Fenwick, but were driven off. In 1634, Mr. Fenwick made a treaty with the Pequot Indians, and purchased the right of soil whereon his fort stood, and the right of navigating the Connecticut river.

In 1635, a colony of about 100 persons, from Dorchester, Newtown, and Cambridge, in Massachusetts crossed the wilderness with their flocks and herds; and in fourteen days they arrived at Windsor, and commenced settlements upon both sides of the river. Their sufferings the next winter were inexpressible.

In 1636, another colony from Watertown, Massachusetts, crossed the desert in like manner, and commenced the settlements of Wethersfield and Hartford, under the guidance of the Rev. Mr. Hooker.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and to whom was granted the first charter of Connecticut?

When was this charter confirmed by king Charles I. and to whom was it conveyed?

When and by whom was Connecticut river explored, and where did they erect a trading house?

When, where and by whom was the next settlement made by the English?

When and by whom was the first treaty made with the Pequots?

When and where did the first colony from Massachusetts commence a settlement, and under what circumstances?

In 1637, the three settlements united and commenced war upon the Pequots, to revenge the murders they had committed at Wethersfield, and elsewhere, and they exterminated and dispersed the whole tribe, with the aid of Massachusetts.

In 1638, a colony came out from Boston, under the guidance of the Rev. John Davenport, and commenced the settlement of New Haven.

The same year, the settlements at Hartford, Windsor and Wethersfield, formed a civil compact for the colony of Connecticut.

In 1661, the colony of Connecticut extinguished the Indian claims by purchase.

In 1652, king Charles II. granted a new charter, which incorporated the two colonies of Connecticut and New-Haven, but they did not unite until 1665.

In 1640, more than 4000 families had emigrated from England, to the wilderness of New England, at an expense of more than £200,000.

In 1643, Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New-Haven, entered into the New England confederacy.

In 1614, the title of lords Say and Seal and Brook, was conveyed to the Pilgrims by purchase, for £1000.

In 1650, commissioners of the united colonies of Massachusetts and Connecticut, settled their boundary line with the colony of New York.

In 1675, commenced the noted Indian war, called Philip's war, as noticed under Massachusetts.

In 1685, king James II. caused Writs of *Quo Warranto*, to be issued against the charter of Connecticut. In 1687, Sir Edmund Andros, governor-general of New England, arrived at Hartford from Boston, and demanded the charter of Connecticut, but it was privately removed by a captain Wadsworth,

When and by whom was Wethersfield and Hartford settled?

When and for what cause was the Pequot war, and what was the result?

When did Connecticut form her civil compact?

When and by whom was the colony of New Haven settled?

When did Connecticut extinguish the Indian claims by purchase?

When and by what charter were the colonies of New Haven and Connecticut incorporated, and when did they unite?

What number of families had emigrated to New England in 1640, and at what expense?

Which of the colonies of New-England confederated in 1643?

When did Philip's war commence?

When did king James II. attempt to annul the charter of Connecticut, and what were the consequences?

and hid in an aged oak, in front of Secretary Wyllys' house, where it remained until the abdication of king James, and the accession of William and Mary, in 1689, when the charter was restored.

In 1701, the General Assembly began to hold their sessions alternately, at Hartford and New-Haven, (spring and autumn) which continued until the charter of king Charles was superceded by the constitution of 1818. Since that time, the spring sessions are held at Hartford and New Haven alternately.

Connecticut co-operated with New England and New-York in the numerous Indian wars, and particularly in the old French and Indian war of 1754, that ended with the conquest of Canada, in 1760, and the peace of 1763. This closed the Indian wars of New-England.

Connecticut entered with zeal into the revolutionary war of 1775, and suffered severely upon her seaboard. She was among the first of the states to form and adopt the Federal Constitution, and has continued a firm friend to the government.

Connecticut early formed her civil, religious, and literary institutions, and has been uniformly celebrated for her men of talents, learning and integrity, as well as for her industry, good order, and steady habits.

When did the General Assembly of Connecticut commence their semi-annual sessions at Hartford and New Haven, and when were they changed?

What war did Connecticut engage in, in 1754, and when was it closed?

What part did Connecticut take in the Revolutionary war, and what is her general character?

## United States.

### NEW-YORK.

Q. What is the situation and extent of New-York?

A. New-York is bounded on the N. by Canada line; E. by Vermont, Massachusetts and Connecticut; S. by the Atlantic, New-Jersey and Pennsylvania; and W. by New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, lake Erie, and the river Niagara. It is about 316 miles long from E. to W. and 304 broad. It contains 46,085 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. New-York is divided into 53 counties, viz. Albany, Al-



legny, Broome, Cataraugus, Cayuga, Chataouque, Chenango, Clinton, Columbia, Courtlandt, Delaware, Dutchess, Erie, Essex, Franklin, Genesee, Greene, Hamilton, Herkimer, Jefferson, King's, Lewis, Livingston, Madison, Monroe, Montgomery, New-York, Niagara, Oneida, Onondaga, Ontario, Orange, Otsego, Oswego, Putnam, Queens, Rensselaer, Richmond, Rockland, Saratoga, Schenectady, Schoharie, Seneca, Steuben, St. Lawrence, Suffolk, Sullivan, Tioga, Tompkins, Ulster, Warren, Washington, and West Chester; these contain 616 towns. Its population is 1,372,312.

Q. What is the climate?

A. The climate is severe and cold in winter, but mild and temperate in summer.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, and productions?

A. The face of the country is extensively level, with gentle undulations; the soil is remarkably fertile; and the productions such as are common to all the northern states.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The range of the Allegany, that terminates at Cat-kill bluff, and the range of the Blue ridge, that terminates at West Point, are the only mountains of note in New-York.

Q. Which are the principal islands?

A. Long Island, York Island, and Staten Island.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Long Island?

A. Long Island lies east of New-York city; is 140 miles long, and upon an average 10 broad. It contains 3 counties, 19 towns, and a population of about 50,000. The north side is hilly, and the south side is flat and sandy. It produces all the various kinds of grain of the southern and middle states.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Staten Island?

A. Staten Island lies 9 miles south-west New-York city; is 14 miles long and 8 broad, and forms one county. Population 5,347. It is pleasantly situated; but the soil is generally rough and hilly, except upon the south side, where it is level and fertile. The quarantine ground, for the port of N. York, is upon this island.

Q. What are the minerals of New York?

A. Silver, copper, iron, lead, asbestos, isinglass, and crystals.

Q. Which are the mineral springs?

A. Ballston, Saratoga, and New Lebanon; all of which have become places of great resort, from all parts of the United States.

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. Lakes Ontario and George, and the eastern section of

lake Erie ; also Seneca, Cayuga, Onondaga, Oneida, and four or five others in the interior.

Q. Which are the harbors and straits ?

A. New-York and Sackets harbors ; the strait of Hurler's gate.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Hudson, Mohawk, Genesee, Oswegatchie, Grass, Serenac, and Black. (See the atlas.)

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. New-York, the capital, Albany, the seat of government, and Troy, Hudson, and Schenectady, are all incorporated cities. Utica, Cayuga, Batavia, Canandaigua, Geneva, Auburn, Rochester, Buffalo, and New-Amsterdam, in the western counties ; and Lansingburgh, Waterford, Livingston, Kingston, Newburgh, Poughkeepsie, and Brooklyn, in the eastern section, are all handsome towns.

New-York, city, and sea-port town, N. Y. on S. end Manhattan or New-York island, at the confluence of Hudson and East rivers ; 90 NE. Philadelphia, 160 S. Albany, 210 SW. Boston, W. 227. Lon. 74. 1. W. Lat. 40. 43. N. Pop. in 1617, 4,302 ; in 1731, 3,023 ; in 1756, 10,381 ; in 1771, 21,363 ; in 1786, 23,614 ; in 1790, 33,131 ; in 1800, 60,489 ; in 1810, 96,373 ; in 1820, 123,706.†

The city and county of New-York are of the same extent, and comprise the whole of New-York island, which is 14 1-2 miles long, and from half to 2 miles broad. The compact part extends along the Hudson, about 2 miles, and from the SW. corner of the Battery along East river, nearly 4 miles ; the breadth varies from half to nearly 2 miles, and the circuit is about 3. The city is divided into 10 wards, one of which comprises all the northern part of the island, with a population in 1820, of 11,162.

New York harbor is a large bay, which spreads 9 miles to the S. of the city, and is from 1 1-2 to 5 1 2 miles broad. It receives the Hudson in the N., East river in the NE, and has Long-Island E., Staten Island and New-Jersey W. and communicates with Newark bay, on the N. side by the Killis, and with the Atlantic S. by the Narrows. This bay embosoms several small islands, as Governor's island, Bedlow's island, and Ellis's island, which are near the city, and on each of which are fortifications. The currents here are very rapid and strong, and the harbor is seldom obstructed by ice, and has not been frozen over since 1780. It has every where sufficient depth of water for the largest vessels, where they may lie well secured from wind and storms. New-York is the first commercial city in America, and one of the first in the world ; it is admirably situated for trade, being at the mouth of a noble river, with an excellent harbor, and having an extensive, populous, and fertile back country. It imports most of the goods consumed between the Connecticut and the Raritan, and between the ocean and the lakes. The shipping owned here in 1816, amounted to 299,617

† The number of houses now annually erected in New-York, exceeds 3,000.

tons ; in 1821, 231,215 tons. The duties on imports in 1821, amounted to 7,233,682 dollars.

Among the public buildings and institutions of this city, are the city hall, a custom house, a hospital, an alms-house, a penitentiary, an orphan asylum, a jail, a bridewell, a state prison, an arsenal, a theatre, a museum, a circus, a university, an Episcopal theological seminary, an institution for the education of the deaf and dumb, the American bible society, 10 market houses, 11 banks, with a capital of 13,900,000 dollars, 21 insurance offices, with a capital of 10,800,000 dollars ; a number of humane and benevolent societies, and seventy-seven houses of public worship ; 15 for Episcopalians, 11 for Presbyterians, 11 for Methodists, 9 for Dutch Reformed, 6 for Baptists, 5 for Associate Reformed, 4 for Independent, 3 for Quakers, 2 for Roman Catholics, 1 for Lutherans, 1 for Unitarians, 1 for Moravians, 1 for Swedenborgians, 1 for Universalists, 1 for Welsh, 1 for Mariners, 1 State Prison chapel, 1 for St. Matthew's, 1 British consul's church, and 1 Jews' Synagogue.

The public buildings of New-York are superior in splendor and magnificence, to those of any other city in the United States ; among these, the city hall is pre-eminent, and is a most magnificent edifice. It is situated at the head of the Park, near Broadway, and is built of white marble, 216 feet in length, 102 in breadth, 51 high, and including the attic story, 65 ; and cost upwards of 500,000 dollars. St. John's, St. Paul's, Trinity church, Grace church, the Roman Catholic cathedral, and several other churches, are very spacious and elegant ; a number of the churches are ornamented with steeples. The New-York Hospital includes the Hospital for the reception of the sick and disabled, the Lunatic Asylum, and the Lying-in Hospital. It is a well regulated establishment, and has a valuable library of about 3 or 4,000 volumes. The state prison is situated on E. bank of the Hudson, one and a half miles from the city hall ; it is built of free stone, having the principal front on Washington street ; 204 feet in length, on its principal front, and 200 in depth on the wings. It is inclosed by a wall of stone from 14 to 23 feet high. Within the yard there is a brick building of 200 feet by 20, of two stories, containing the work shops. The alms house is situated at Bellevue, on the E. river, two miles from the city hall. The principal building is of stone, 320 feet by 50, of three stories. In the rear of this, is the work house, which is 200 feet by 25. The penitentiary is in the same inclosure, and is a stone building, 150 feet by 50, of three stories. The city hotel is a magnificent brick edifice, of five stories, containing 78 rooms. The New-York Society library contains about 15,000 volumes. In 1817, there were published 7 daily newspapers ; 5 twice a week. (these are issued from the same offices as the daily papers ; ) and 5 once a week. The number of lawyers in the city, in 1818, was 323 ; and in the state, 1,271.

Many of the streets near the harbor are crooked and narrow, but those which have been recently formed, are straight and spacious. The principal one is Broadway, which runs in a straight line, through the centre of the city, over the most elevated ground, and nearly equidistant from the two rivers ; it is 3 miles long, and 30 feet wide, generally well built, and a part of it is very splendid. The other most important streets are Wall street, Pearl street, Greenwich street, Water street, and the Bowery. Wall street is an elegant street running from Broadway to east river. On this street are situated the custom

house, banks, and insurance offices, and it is a place of immense business. Pearl street is the principal mercantile mart of the city. The Battery is a beautiful public walk, on the southern extremity of the island, and contains several acres. The Park is a handsome common, in front of the city hall, containing 6 acres. The houses were formerly built of wood, and a great part of them made but a mean appearance, but the modern houses are all of brick, mostly 3 stories high, generally well built, and many of them elegant. New-York, together with the surrounding objects, presents a magnificent and beautiful view, on approaching it through the Narrows. It is in a flourishing state, and is fast increasing in population and improvements.

The New-York Institution is a large brick edifice, 260 feet by 44, with two projections in front, 15 feet by 20. This building stands in the rear of the City Hall, and was formerly used for the alms-house, but its name has been changed to that of the New York Institution; and it is now occupied by the Literary and Philosophical Society; the Historical Society, which has a library of about 4,000 volumes; the American Academy of Fine Arts, which has a valuable collection of paintings, &c.; the New York Lyceum of Natural History, which has valuable scientific collections; and the American Museum, an extensive collection of curiosities.

The University of New-York comprises all the colleges in the state: it is under the control of regents who fill their own vacancies, and have the appointment of the presidents and professors, except those of Columbia college. Columbia college was founded in 1754, and was called King's college till 1787; when it received its present name. It is situated in the central part of the city, on a square comprising several acres, enclosed by an iron railing. The building is of stone, three stories high above a basement, and 280 feet in length, containing a chapel, library, and lecture rooms; and dwelling houses for the president and professors. The students board and lodge with their parents, or in families in the city. The legislative government is invested in 24 trustees; the executive, in a president and 5 professors, 1 of mathematics, 1 of moral philosophy, rhetoric and belles lettres, 1 of Greek and Latin languages, also an adjunct professor of the same, and 1 of natural philosophy and chemistry. The college has a valuable philosophical apparatus, and a library of 4 or 5,000 volumes. The number of students, in 1822, was 133. Commencement is held on the 1st Tuesday in August. After which, there is a vacation till the first Monday in October.

The College of Physicians and Surgeons, is a respectable and flourishing institution. The Medical college is a large and handsome brick edifice, and contains an anatomical museum, a chemical laboratory, a mineralogical cabinet, and a museum of natural history; all well furnished; and connected with the institution there is a large botanic garden. In the medical department, there are 9 professors, 1 of anatomy, 1 of surgery, 1 of the theory and practice of physic, 1 of materia medica, 1 of chemistry, 1 of obstetrics, 1 of natural history, comprehending botany and mineralogy; 1 of medical jurisprudence, and a chemical lecturer. The number of medical students, in 1821, was upwards of 200. The lectures commence early in November, and close the last of February.

ALBANY, city, Albany co. N. Y. on W. bank of the Hudson; 6 S. Troy, 15 SE. Schenectady, 30 N. Hudson, 160 N. New-York, 164 W.

by N. Boston, 230 S. Montreal, W. 356. Lon. 73. 32. W. Lat. 42. 39. N. Pop. in 1797, 6,021; in 1810, 9,356; in 1800, 12,620. It extends about two miles from N. to S. on the river, and in the widest part above a mile from E. to W.

Albany is the seat of the state government, and in point of population, wealth, and trade, the second city in New York. It contains a stone state house, a city hall, a jail, an alms-house, a state arsenal, 2 market houses, 4 banks, a museum, an academy, a public library containing about 4,000 volumes, and eleven houses for public worship, 3 for Presbyterians, 2 for Dutch Reformed, 1 for Episcopalians, 1 for Lutherans, 1 for Roman Catholics, 1 for Seceders, 1 for Baptists, and 1 for Methodists. The Albany Academy has a principal, two assistants, and about 150 pupils. The building is a very spacious and elegant edifice, built of red free stone. The state house, several of the churches, some of the other public buildings, and many of the private houses, display much elegance and taste. A large proportion of the houses are of brick. The appearance of the city, with regard to buildings, both public and private, and various accommodations, has been greatly improved within the last fifteen years.

Albany has a pleasant and healthy situation, near the head of the tide waters, on one of the finest rivers in the world, which is navigable as far as the city, for sloops of 80 tons. The great western canal, which unites the Hudson with lake Erie, commences here. The surrounding country is fertile and populous. The exports consist of wheat, other kinds of grain and various articles of produce. The manufactories are considerable, consisting of iron, tobacco, hats, candles, beer, rum, &c. In 1818, four newspapers were published here, one daily and three twice a week.

Q. What is the commerce of New-York?

A. The foreign and internal commerce of this state claims the first rank in the Union. New-York is the first commercial city in America. The exports of the state of New-York in 1820, amounted to 13,163,244 dollars.

Q. What is the state of manufactures?

A. Domestic manufactures are very general, and the manufactures of glass, iron, paper, &c. are very extensive.

Q. What was their estimated amount in 1810?

A. More than 12,000,000 of dollars, and rapidly increasing.

Q. What are the internal improvements?

A. The northern canal, that connects the Hudson with lake Champlain, extends from Whitehall to fort Edward, 22 miles; a canal upon the western bank of the Hudson, commences near fort Edward, and extends to Waterford, 40 miles, total extent 62 miles. The great western canal that extends from Albany to Buffalo, on lake Erie, more than 300 miles; (see inland navigation, page 18.) The great western turnpike road, that extends from Albany to Niagara, about 300 miles; also, numerous other turnpike roads, throughout the interior of the state.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. Columbia, Union, and Hamilton colleges, are respectable institutions ; to Columbia college is attached a flourishing medical institution. They have a theological institution at Auburn, and several flourishing academies. Literature is rising and improving under the patronage of their first characters.

Q. What are the natural curiosities ?

A. The cataract of Niagara is esteemed the grandest object of the kind in the world. The distance of the falls above lake Ontario is 14 miles, and below lake Erie 23 miles on the American side, 21 on the Canada side. At the distance of  $1\frac{3}{4}$  of a mile above the falls, the river begins to descend with a rapid and powerful current. At the falls it turns with a right angle to the north-east, and is suddenly contracted in width, from 3 to  $3\frac{1}{4}$  of a mile. Below the falls the river is only about one half mile wide, but its depth is said to exceed 300 feet. The precipice over which the cataract descends, is formed by the brow of a vast bed of lime-stone ; and the perpendicular descent, according to major Prescott's survey, is 151 feet. The descent is perpendicular, except that the rocks are hollowed underneath the surface, particularly on the western side. The cataract is divided into two parts by Goat or Iris island, which occupies one fifth or sixth of the whole breadth. The principal channel is on the western side, and is called the Horse-Shoe fall, from its shape. The eastern channel is divided by another little island. The descent on the eastern side is greater by a few feet than on the other, but the water is more shallow. The noise of these falls is frequently heard at York, 50 miles distant ; and the cloud of vapour thrown, is seen 70 miles. The descent within ten miles is about 300 feet, and from lake Erie to lake Ontario, 329 feet. The quantity of water discharged in an hour, is computed by Dr. Dwight, at 192,93,750 tons. The spray which rises from the water, serves as a medium for forming by the sun's rays the most brilliant rainbows.

Q. What are the other natural curiosities of this state ?

A. The Cohoes falls, near the mouth of the Mohawk river, 50 feet perpendicular. Trenton falls, near Utica, that descend over several pitches, more than 300 feet, and pass through a dark and intricate glen, more than two miles in length, and more than 100 feet deep. A boiling spring, in the waters of lake Erie, 20 rods from the shore, which is inflammable, and termed either spring. A subterraneous rapid, that

passes under the base of a hill, about 70 yards. And a split rock upon the western shore of lake Champlain, in extent about half an acre, that has been divided from the original promontory, to the distance of about 50 feet.

Q. What are the antiquities of this state?

A. The ruins of several ancient fortifications, regularly built, and now overgrown with heavy timber. One of which contains a well 14 feet deep, regularly stoned.

Q. What Indians reside in this state?

A. The remains of the Iroquois or Six Nations, about 6,000, who dwell upon the borders of Oneida lake.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of New-York?

A. New-York was discovered by captain Henry Hudson, in the year 1608; and in 1614, the states-general of Holland granted a patent to a company of Low Dutch, for an exclusive trade upon Hudson's river, and they built a fort upon Manhattan, or York Island, and another at Albany, to protect their trade, which commenced the settlement of what was then called New Netherlands.

In August, 1664, the English took possession of New-Netherlands, and king Charles II. included it in his patent to his brother, the Duke of York, who affixed his name to the city and colony of New-York. In 1667, this colony was confirmed to the English by the peace of Breda.

In 1673, the Dutch again took possession of the colony; but it was restored to the English the next year, by the peace of Westminster.

At this peace, the English exchanged Surinam, in South America, for the Dutch colony of New-Netherlands, which removed all further controversy about New-York.

In 1674, Sir Edmund Andros, who had been noticed under Massachusetts, became governor of New-York.

The colony of New-York began early to suffer from the Indian wars, which led her to secure the friendship and alliance of the Five Nations, or Iroquois, by a treaty at Albany, in

QUESTION.—When and by whom was the colony of New-York discovered and settled, and by what name?

When was N. Netherlands taken by the English, why was the name changed, and when was it confirmed to the English?

When did the Dutch again possess themselves of New-York; when was it restored, and by what exchange?

When and by what treaty did New-York settle a peace with the Iroquois Indians?

1684, that relieved her from many of the distresses which awaited the eastern colonies in New England.

New-York became the theatre of military operations through the seven years war, known by the name of the old French and Indian war, until the French were dispossessed of Canada, in 1760.

New-York took an active part in resisting the oppressive measures of British taxation, that led to the Revolutionary war. She entered with spirit and firmness into the Revolution in 1775, and in 1776 became the theatre of war, until the peace of 1783. She was among the first in framing and adopting the Federal Constitution, and New-York city became the seat of the Federal government, during the first year of its operation.

New-York has ever continued a firm supporter of the liberties of the nation, and has pursued a wise and dignified policy, in improving her civil, religious, literary, commercial and agricultural interests. The rapid increase of the settlement and population of New-York, together with her foreign and internal trade, surpass those of any other state in the Union.

The canals of New-York do honor to herself and the nation.

When and in what war was New-York the theatre of military operations?

What part did New-York take in resisting the oppressive measures of Great Britain, and what part did she act in the Revolutionary war?

What part did she take in regard to the Federal Constitution and government, and what is now her general character?

## NEW JERSEY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of New-Jersey?

A. New-Jersey is bounded on the N. by New-York; E. by Hudson river and the Atlantic ocean; S. by Delaware bay; and W. by Pennsylvania. It is about 160 miles long, and 50 broad. It contains about 8,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into thirteen counties, viz. Sussex, Bergen, Morris, Essex, Somerset, Hunterdon, Middlesex, Monmouth, Burlington, Gloucester, Salem, Cumberland, and Cape May; these contain 116 towns. Population is 277,575.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. The southern section is level, sandy, and barren; the interior is undulating and mountainous, as far as it is connected with the Allegany range.



Q. What is the climate ?

A. The climate is considerably milder than in New-York and New-England.

Q. What are the productions ?

A. The same as New-York. The cider produced in this state, particularly at Newark, is the best in the world.

Q. What are its minerals ?

A. Copper, iron, lead, coal, plaster of Paris, with valuable slate and stone mines.

Q. Which are the mineral springs ?

A. There is one cold spring in Morris county, and another in Hunterdon county ; both are in repute.

Q. Which are the principal bays ?

A. There are several in New-Jersey, the chief of which is Arthur Kill, or Newark bay, that embosoms Staten Island.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The rivers are Delaware, Raritan, Hackensack, and Passaic, noted for its falls of 72 feet.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The chief towns of New-Jersey, are Trenton, at the head of sloop navigation, on the Delaware ; Burlington, Perth Amboy, and Brunswick, are all incorporated cities. Princeton and Elizabethtown, are very flourishing towns.

TRENTON, the metropolis of N. J. in Hunterdon co. on E. bank of the Delaware, opposite to the falls ; 10 SW. Princeton, 26 SW. New-Brunswick, 30 NE. Philadelphia, 60 SW. New-York, W. 167. Lon. 75. 43. W. Lat. 40. 13. N. Pop. in 1810, 3,003 ; in 1820, 3,942. It is a handsome and flourishing town, pleasantly situated, and incorporated with city privileges. It contains a handsome state house, a state prison, a market house, a court house, 2 banks, an academy, 2 large cotton manufactories, and four houses of public worship ; 1 for Episcopalians, 1 for Presbyterians, 1 for Methodists, and 1 for Friends ; and between the city and Lambertton, which joins it on the south, there are two other houses of worship, 1 for Roman Catholics, and 1 for Baptists. The river is navigable as far as this place for sloops ; but above the falls it is not navigable, except for boats, which carry from 500 to 1000 bushels of wheat. At the foot of the falls there is an elegant covered bridge across the river.

Q. What is the commerce of New-Jersey ?

A. New-Jersey has no seaport, and of course her foreign commerce is conducted through the cities of New-York and Philadelphia.

Q. What are the manufactures ?

A. The manufactures of New-Jersey are numerous and important ; cotton, duck, pig iron, bar and sheet iron, nails, nail rods, hollow ware, shoes, paper, powder, flour, &c. in great quantities. Trenton, Newark and Patterson, are the principal manufacturing towns. Domestic manufactures are general through the state.

Q. What are the natural curiosities ?

A. A remarkable cave in a rock of sandstone, 30 feet by 15, containing three arched rooms, elevated about five feet, and supported upon a sandy base. Also, several wells on a ridge of hills, 40 miles from the sea, that ebb and flow regularly with the tide about six feet. Also, the falls of the Passaic, at Patterson, 72 feet perpendicular, which are much admired.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. The College and Theological Seminary, at Princeton, are flourishing and respectable institutions.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of New-Jersey ?

A. New-Jersey was settled by a company from New-England and Long-Island, under a grant from the Duke of York, to lord Berkeley and sir George Carteret, in 1664.† Also, an emigration from Scotland, came into New-Jersey about the same time. The first settlements commenced at Elizabethtown, Newark, Middletown and Shrewsbury. In 1665, Philip Carteret, brother to Sir George, was appointed governor, and resided at Elizabethtown. The government was established upon the free-representative plan of New-England, and flourished, until the conquest of the Dutch, in 1673. This gave a check to the prosperity of New-Jersey, for a long time. In 1676, the proprietors disagreed about their claims, and finally divided the state into two equal parts, called East and West Jersey ; this rather increased than diminished the controversy, and they finally resigned their government to the crown of England, (under queen Ann,) 1702.

The government of New-Jersey continued under the crown down to the American revolution, when she commenced an independent government,

New-Jersey became the theatre of war, in 1776, and was overrun by the enemy. The battle of Trenton, December

QUESTIONS.— When, by whom, and under what grant was the colony of New-Jersey settled ?

Where were the first settlements made, and who was the first governor ?

When was this colony taken by the Dutch ? when divided into two colonies ? when and under what reign was it restored to the crown ?

When did New Jersey commence an independent government ?

† It was called New-Jersey, in allusion to the Isle of Jersey, (England) from whence the Carteret family sprang.

25th, so signal for the defeat of the British, will ever be memorable in the annals of New-Jersey.

In the summer of 1778, Sir Henry Clinton retreated with the British army, from Philadelphia, through New-Jersey, on his way to New-York. The battle of Monmouth will ever signalize this retreat, (June 28.)

This state united cordially in framing and adopting the Federal Constitution, and has continued a firm friend to the government.

When did she become the theatre of war, and by what memorable battle was she relieved from the ravages of the enemy?

When did the British army retreat through New Jersey, and what battle was then fought?

What is the general character of New-Jersey in relation to the Union?

## PENNSYLVANIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Pennsylvania?

A. Pennsylvania is bounded on the N. by New-York and lake Erie; E. by Delaware river; S. by Virginia, Maryland and Delaware; and W. by Virginia and Ohio. It is 307 miles long, and 180 broad. It contains 44,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. Pennsylvania is divided into 51 counties, viz. Adams, Alleghany, Armstrong, Beaver, Bedford, Berks, Bradford, Bucks, Butler, Cambria, Centre, Chester, Clearfield, Columbia, Crawford, Cumberland, Dauphin, Delaware, Erie, Fayette, Franklin, Greene, Huntingdon, Indiana, Jefferson, Lancaster, Lebanon, Lehigh, Luzerne, Lycoming, M'Kean, Mercer, Mifflin, Montgomery, Northampton, Northumberland, Perry, Philadelphia, Potter, Pike, Schuylkill, Somerset, Susquehannah, Tioga, Union, Venango, Warren, Washington, Wayne, Westmoreland and York; these contain 740 townships. Population about 1,049,398.

Q. What is the climate?

A. It is mild and salubrious; but subject to sudden changes.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, &c.?

A. The eastern part is level, and the western part is broken by the ridges of the Alleghany. The soil is generally good and well cultivated.

Q. What is the state of agriculture?

A. The best in the Union.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Copper, lead, iron, alum, marble, limestone, and coal.

in great abundance. An extensive vein of coal runs in a north-eastern and south-western direction, across the state.

Q. What are the mineral springs?

A. The most noted are at Bedford and York.

Q. Which are its principal rivers?

A. The principal rivers of Pennsylvania, are Delaware, Schuylkill, Susquehannah, Allegany and Lehigh.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Philadelphia is the capital: Harrisburg is the seat of government; Lancaster and Pittsburg,† are large manufacturing towns. Easton, Wilkesbarre, Carlisle, Bedford and Erie, are handsome towns, and placès of very considerable trade.

PHILADELPHIA, city, and port of entry, Pennsylvania, in a county of the same name, on W. bank of the Delaware, 90 SW. New-York, 100 NE. Baltimore, 300 SW. Boston, W. 137. Lon. 75. 10. W. Lat. 39. 57. N. Pop. of the city and liberties, in 1790, 43,525; in 1802, 62,000; in 1810, 92,247; in 1820, 108,116. In 1810, there were within the city and suburbs, 22,764 buildings of all kinds, for residence, business, worship, &c.

It is 126 miles from the Atlantic, by the course of the river and bay, and is situated on the narrowest part of an isthmus between the Delaware and the Schuylkill rivers, about six miles above their confluence. The situation is very pleasant and healthy. It was originally laid out by William Penn, in 1683. The ground plat of the city, distinct from the liberties, is an oblong, about one mile from N. to S. and two from E. to W. But the buildings now occupy a space upwards of three miles long from N. to S. and extend from the Delaware to the Schuylkill. There were originally nine streets extending from one river to the other, intersected at right angles by 23 running north and south. The number of squares in the original plan, was 184, but as several of these have been intersected by new streets, their number now amounts to 304; and several of these are again intersected by lanes and alleys. Broad street is 113 feet wide; High or Market street, 100; Mulberry street, 60; and the other streets, in the original plan, 50 feet wide. The greatest part of the city is well paved with stones in the middle, with neat side walks of brick; furnished with common sewers and gutters, so that the streets are in general kept very clean.

The public buildings are the state house and offices, two city court houses, a county house, a state penitentiary, a bridewell or jail, a university, the Philosophical Society's hall, the hall for the Academy of Natural Sciences, the Washington hall, a public library, a hospital, the Friends alms house, three dispensaries, an alms-house, two dramatic theatres, a medical theatre, a laboratory, an amphitheatre, a masonic hall, a large custom house, a new banking house for the U. S. bank, 10 incorporated banks, and fifty eight houses of public worship; 9 for General Assembly Presbyterians, 2 for Associate Reformed Presbyterians, 2 for Dutch Reformed Presbyterians, 2 for Reformed Presbyte-

† Philadelphia, Pittsburg and Lancaster, are incorporated cities; Pittsburg is at the head of the river Ohio, and possesses the highest commercial advantages of any inland town in America.

rians, 1 for Associate Presbyterians, 1 for German Presbyterians, 11 for Methodists, 6 for Episcopalians, 6 for Friends; 5 for Baptists, 4 for Roman Catholics, 2 for German Lutherans, 1 for English Lutherans, 1 for Swedes, 1 for Moravians, 1 for Universalists, 1 for Unitarians, 1 for Dunkers, a New Jerusalem church, and a Jews' synagogue.

Several of the churches are very spacious and elegant edifices. Each of the Episcopal, the German, and two of the Roman Catholic churches, are furnished with organs. The state house was erected in 1753, and its architecture is much admired. The declaration of the American Independence was adopted and signed in this building. The apartments in the lower story are appropriated to the holding of the courts, the upper story is used as a museum, and contains the largest collection of curiosities in America. Adjoining to it is an enclosed square, which is ornamented with rows of trees, and forms a pleasant public walk. In the plat of the city, are four squares, reserved by the founder for the recreation of the inhabitants; the two easternmost are very elegant. The Bank of Pennsylvania is a remarkably elegant edifice of marble. The houses of the city are generally constructed of brick, without much ornament, but have a striking appearance of convenience, comfort, neatness and opulence.

The city contains seven different markets, the principal of which is in Market or High-street, and extends from the Delaware through eight squares. The market houses are well supplied with various provisions, which are exposed to sale daily, and most abundantly every Wednesday and Saturday. The United States bank is in this city; and here is the mint of the United States, in which the national money is coined.

Philadelphia exceeds all other towns in the United States, in the variety, extent, and excellence of its manufactures. In 1810, the city and county contained eight cotton manufactories, twenty nail manufactories; eighteen distilleries, seventeen breweries, fifty-nine tanneries, seven paper mills, fifteen rope walks, three glass works, fourteen marble yards, fifty-four printing offices, and numerous other manufacturing establishments. The total amount of the manufactures of the city and county, in 1810, was valued at 16,103,869 dollars. Printing is carried on here more extensively than in any other place in America. There are nine daily newspapers, two semi-weekly, and four weekly. This city is celebrated for its excellent porter brewery.

Philadelphia is a place of great opulence, and its trade is extensive and flourishing. Turnpike roads, of the best construction, diverge from it in various directions. Over the Delaware, Schuylkill, and Susquehannah, in the approaches to the city, there are ten excellent bridges. The Delaware is navigable to this place for a 74 gun ship, and for sloops to Trenton. The shipping belonging to this port, in 1816, amounted to 101,830 tons; in 1821, to 83,225 tons. The environs of the city are pleasant and well cultivated.

The literary and benevolent institutions are numerous, and highly honorable to the inhabitants. The Philadelphia library originated with Dr. Franklin, and was incorporated in 1742. The building belonging to the library company, is an elegant edifice, and in its front is a statue of Dr. Franklin, of white marble. It contains a museum, a philosophical apparatus, the Philadelphia library, and the Loganian library, which together, have about 22,000 volumes. The American

Philosophical Society was established here in 1769, and has a library of 4,000 volumes. The Philadelphia Society for promoting agriculture, was instituted in 1785, and has a small library, a cabinet of minerals, and a repository of agricultural implements. The Athenaeum of Philadelphia was incorporated in 1815, and has a library of 2,000 volumes, a cabinet of minerals and medals, and upon its tables are to be found the principal newspapers published in the United States; and a numerous collection of the American and European magazines. The Academy of Natural Sciences was founded in 1812, and incorporated in 1817, and has a library of 2,000 volumes, and handsome collections on natural history. The library of the society of Friends, contains about 2,000 volumes. The oldest seminary of learning in Pennsylvania, is that incorporated by William Penn, by the title of Friends Public School. This incorporation has considerable funds, and supports a number of schools; and under its direction the Latin and Greek languages, the mathematics, and natural and experimental philosophy are taught. The astronomical observatory in the city belongs to this institution, and it likewise possesses an extensive philosophical apparatus. Here are thirteen Lancasterian schools, containing nearly 5,000 children; also the Pennsylvania institution for the deaf and dumb.

The Pennsylvania Hospital was established in 1752, and is the most respectable institution of the kind in the Union. The whole extent of the building from E. to W. is 278 feet, and detached from the hospital is another building of three stories, calculated to accommodate 40 or 50 patients. The number of patients is usually from 10 to 220, including 90 lunatics. There are belonging to the hospital a valuable anatomical museum, and a library of about 4,500 volumes. In 1817, a handsome building was erected for the accommodation of the celebrated painting of Mr. West, representing Christ healing the sick. This painting is a source of a handsome income to the hospital.

The University of Pennsylvania was erected into a university, upon the foundation of what was denominated the Academy and Charity School, and it is chartered as a complete university. The board of trustees, who are 24 in number, have the power of appointing professors in all the branches of science. The establishment consists at present of four departments, of arts, medicine, natural science, and law, in each of which lectures are given, and a system of instruction is established. Connected with the university are the academy, in which youth are instructed in the learned languages, preparatory to college, and a charity school for the education of poor children.

A large edifice, built for the accommodation of the president of the United States, is occupied by the university. The building devoted to the faculty of arts has excellent lecture rooms, and a large hall for public exercises. The apparatus belonging to the college, is said not to be surpassed by any other of the kind in the country. The library contains 3 or 4,000 volumes. The officers in the department of arts are, a provost, who is also a professor of moral philosophy and belles lettres, a vice-provost, who is also a professor of mathematics and natural philosophy, and a professor of languages. The number of undergraduates is about 40. The course of collegiate education is completed in three years.

In the department of natural science there are six professors; 1 of

natural history, 1 of comparative anatomy, 1 of chemistry, as applied to the arts, geology, and mineralogy, 1 of natural philosophy, 1 of botany, and 1 of general literature. In the department of law there is one professor.

The Medical department is the most distinguished and flourishing institution of the kind in America. It has seven professors, 1 of the theory and practice of medicine, 1 of surgery, 1 of materia medica, 1 of anatomy, 1 of obstetrics, and 1 of chemistry; and in 1821, about 400 students. The lectures commence in the first week in October, and end the last week in March, or the first in April. Every student pays to each professor 20 dollars for a course of lectures. It is necessary to attend two full courses in order to be admitted to a degree.

Q. What is the commerce of Pennsylvania?

A. Philadelphia, which is the only port in the state, carries on an extensive foreign commerce; and her inland commerce with the neighboring and western states, exceeds that of any other city in the Union, except New York.

Q. What are the manufactures?

A. There are very extensive manufactures in Pennsylvania, which consist of iron, in all its variety, copper, lead, pewter, leather, shoes and boots, hats, wood, brick, earthen ware, gunpowder, cotton, sugar, snuff, tobacco, &c. The amount of manufactures in Pennsylvania, is supposed to exceed that of all the New-England states.

Q. What are her internal improvements?

A. Turnpike roads are common throughout the state; but the great western turnpike from Philadelphia, across the Allegany, to Pittsburg, is the greatest of her internal improvements.

Q. Which are the principal canals?

A. The canal to improve the navigation of the Schuylkill, at Norristown and Reading, is the most important. A canal is completed to connect the Susquehannah with the Delaware at Philadelphia; another is completed to connect the Delaware bay and Chesapeake bay, near Baltimore.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. The University of Pennsylvania, at Philadelphia, Dickinson college at Carlisle, Franklin college at Lancaster, Jefferson college at Canonsburg, and Washington college, are their first literary institutions. The Bethlehem and Nazareth Moravian schools, are in high repute. Private schools abound in the state; and schools for the education of the poor are supported by a liberal legislative grant.

Q. What are the antiquities and curiosities?

A. Among the antiquities, are the remains of ancient fortifications, near Tioga river, and near Unadilla. Sea shells

abound in all parts of the Allegany mountain, and are incorporated with rocks and stones.

Q. What forest trees are peculiar to this state?

A. The umbrella and cucumber trees are peculiar to Pennsylvania.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Pennsylvania?

A. In 1681, king Charles II. granted a charter of the province of Pennsylvania, to William Penn. A company was formed in London the same year, styled "The Free Society of Traders in Pennsylvania;" twenty thousand acres of land were bought; articles of trade were drawn up, and the company embarked for America in several divisions, and commenced the settlement of their lands. In 1682, William Penn obtained from the Duke of York a release of all right, title, and claim, which he had or might be supposed to have, to the province of Pennsylvania, together with another conveyance of all claims to the territory lying upon the river Delaware, called by the Dutch, "*the three lower counties,*" and annexed them to Pennsylvania.

William Penn, having thus arranged his claims, set sail for Pennsylvania, August, 1682, and arrived in the Delaware, October 24th. The same year he called a general assembly of the people, and guaranteed to them a free system of government, to their mutual satisfaction. The same year he entered into a treaty with the Indians, that procured the peace of the colony for 70 years; and founded the city of Philadelphia, about the same time.

The government of Pennsylvania was a Quaker government, founded upon the principles of peace on earth and good will to men, which secured the colony against all those distressing Indian wars and ravages, that were so frequent and murderous in the northern colonies, down to the commencement of the revolution in 1775, nearly one whole century. At that time, Pennsylvania entered with zeal and spirit into the general measures of defence, and became a warm partizan in the war.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Pennsylvania settled? When did William Penn arrive in the colony, and what government did he establish? What was the duration of the treaty he concluded with the Indians, and when did he found Philadelphia? What part did Pennsylvania take in the revolution, and where did congress hold their sessions?



In September, 1774, the first continental congress held their sessions at Philadelphia. In May, 1775, the second congress convened at the same place, and continued their sessions from time to time, through the war, except when interrupted by invasion from the enemy.

In September, 1777, Philadelphia was taken by general Howe, who held possession until the next summer, when the British army retired to New-York; congress returned again to Philadelphia.

When peace was restored in 1783, congress continued their sessions at Philadelphia, until the organization of the Federal government, in 1789. The new Federal congress sat one year at New-York, and then removed to Philadelphia, where they continued until the year 1800, when they removed to Washington city.

It is worthy of notice, that the general convention that framed the Federal constitution, in 1787, held their sessions at Philadelphia.

The mint of the United States continues at Philadelphia.

Pennsylvania has uniformly held a distinguished rank in the United States.

- When was Philadelphia taken by the British, and when evacuated?  
 Where was the Federal constitution framed, and when?  
 Where did congress hold their sessions under the new government?  
 What is the general character of Pennsylvania?

## DELAWARE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Delaware?

A. Delaware is bounded on the N. by Pennsylvania; on the E. by Delaware river and bay; on the S. and W. by Maryland. It is 92 miles long and 32 broad. It contains about 2000 square miles.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into three counties, viz. Newcastle, Kent, and Sussex; and into 25 towns. Population about 72,749.

Q. What is the climate?

A. It is milder than that of Pennsylvania.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, and productions?

A. The face of the country is generally level; the soil is fertile; and the productions the same as Pennsylvania, but wheat is of a superior quality.

Q. Which are the principal bays and rivers?

A. Delaware bay is the only bay; it washes the whole

eastern shore of the state. Delaware river is the principal; Brandywine creek is noted for its mills and manufacturing establishments; the others are small streams.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Dover, Wilmington, Newcastle, Milford, Lewistown and Georgetown.

WILMINGTON, borough, and port of entry, Newcastle co. and in the hundred of Christiana, Delaware, between the Brandywine and Christiana creeks, 1 mile above their confluence, and 2 W. of the Delaware, 5 NNE: Newcastle, 48 SW. Philadelphia, 70 NE. Baltimore, W. 110. Lon. 77. 34. W. Lat. 39. 43. N. Pop. 5,300. It is built on gently rising ground, the most elevated part of which is 112 feet above tide water, and its situation is pleasant and healthy. It is regularly laid out, the streets intersecting each other at right angles, and the houses are mostly of brick. It contains a town house, a spacious almshouse, 2 market houses, 3 banks, a United States arsenal, a Friends boarding school for young ladies, a public library of about 1,500 volumes, and ten houses of public worship; 2 for Presbyterians, 2 for Episcopalians, 1 for Friends, 1 for Baptists, 1 for Roman Catholics, 1 for Methodists, and 2 for Africans. A stone building was erected here for a college, before the revolution, and a college was incorporated in 1803, but it has never gone into operation, and the building is appropriated for schools. Two semi-weekly newspapers are published here.

The Christiana is navigable as far as Wilmington, for vessels drawing 14 feet of water. The shipping owned here in 1821, amounted to 10,043 tons. The trade of the town is considerable; its exports consist chiefly of flour. It manufactures considerable quantities of leather. There is a bridge over the Brandywine, at the north entrance of the town, and another at the south entrance, over the Christiana. The country around Wilmington is pleasant and finely situated. On the Brandywine, separated at a little distance from the body of the town, there is a village of about 100 houses, nearly one half of which are included within the borough; and fourteen flour mills, the finest collection in the United States. The Brandywine and the Christiana, with their branches, afford a great number of excellent seats for mills and manufactories. In 1815, there were included, within a space of nine miles around Wilmington, 44 flour mills, 13 cotton manufactories, 15 saw mills, 2 woollen manufactories, 6 gunpowder mills, 2 paper mills, 2 snuff mills, and several other mills and manufactories.

Q. What is the commerce of Delaware?

A. There is considerable coasting trade; but the foreign trade is carried on principally through Philadelphia.

Q. What are the manufactures?

A. The Brandywine establishments are very respectable, and those mills produce more than 200,000 barrels of flour annually.

At Lewistown are salt works by which sea-water is converted into salt, by evaporation from the heat of the sun, as in the West Indies.

Q. What are the internal improvements?

A. The light-house, and the canals, particularly the canal to connect Delaware bay with the Chesapeake bay, through the river Elk.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. They have several flourishing academies and schools, which are extensively provided for by law.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Delaware?

A. Delaware derives its name from lord Dē La War, or Delaware who was the first governor of Virginia, in 1610. In 1611, he returned to England, and in 1618, on his return from England to his government in Virginia, died, at the entrance of the bay that bears his name.

In 1629, the Swedes and Fins commenced settlements in Delaware, at Cape Henlopen; and in 1631, they built a fort at Christiana, near Wilmington. In the year 1654, the Dutch from New-Netherlands dispossessed the Swedes and Fins, and annexed the country to New-Netherlands. At the peace of Westminster in 1674, Delaware, as a part of New-Netherlands, was exchanged for the colony of Surinam, a province of Guyana, in South America, and annexed to the British colonies. It continued under the government of New-York. In 1680, when the grant of Pennsylvania was made to William Penn, a question arose upon this subject, and it was determined by the lords commissioners of trade and plantations in England, that the Duke of York's claims extended no further west than the east side of Delaware bay, and that the land in controversy belonged to the crown. William Penn next claimed it as a part of his grant, and exercised jurisdiction over it. Lord Baltimore claimed it at the same time as lying within the Maryland grant. It continued in controversy, until the year 1685, when the country lying between the Chesapeake and Delaware bays, was divided between lord Baltimore and Wm. Penn, as it now stands, and annexed to Maryland on the west, and Pennsylvania on the east. In 1691, a controversy commenced between the colony, and the three lower counties, then so called, (now Delaware) and they withdrew and com-

---

QUESTIONS.—From whom does this state derive its name?

When and by whom was Delaware settled?

When was Delaware taken by the Dutch and annexed to New York?

When and how were the claims to this colony settled between William Penn and lord Baltimore?

menced an independent government. In 1703, the counties of Delaware held their first assembly at Newcastle. In 1775, all controversy between Delaware and the proprietors of Pennsylvania and Maryland was closed, and the boundaries were established as they now stand.

Delaware entered warmly into the measures of the revolution, and sent her riflemen to join the army before Boston, in 1775.

Delaware was invaded by general Howe in September, 1777, when he invaded Pennsylvania and took Philadelphia; and Delaware bay became a station for the British fleet through the winter following, and until the British army returned to New-York, in June, 1778. During this time, Delaware suffered severely from the ravages of the enemy.

Delaware zealously co-operated in framing and adopting the Federal constitution, and has uniformly continued a warm friend to the government.

When did Delaware become independent of Penn ?

What part did Delaware take in the revolution ?

When was this state invaded by the British ?

What is the general character of Delaware in relation to the Union ?

## Southern States.

### MARYLAND.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Maryland ?

A. Maryland is bounded N. on Pennsylvania; E. by Delaware and the Atlantic ocean; S. and W. by Virginia. It is 134 miles long, and 110 broad. It contains about 14,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. Maryland is divided into 19 counties, viz. Allegany, Ann Arundel, Baltimore, Calvert, Charles, Frederick, Hartford, Montgomery, Prince George, St. Mary's, Washington, Caroline, Cœcil, Dorchester, Kent, Queen Ann, Somerset, Talbot, and Worcester. Its population is about 400,000; about one third of which are slaves.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. In the eastern region it is often moist and unhealthy, but in the interior it is mild and salubrious.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil and productions ?

A. The face of the country on the east is level, and often

marshy ; but on the west it extends into the Apalachian range, and is rough and broken. The soil is generally rich, and produces wheat, tobacco, and some cotton, corn, &c.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Iron and coal ; also beds of a beautiful variegated marble. The columns of the capitol at Washington were taken from this quarry.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The principal rivers are, the Potomac, which washes the whole southern and western boundary of Maryland, the Patapsco, Severn, and Patuxent, from the west, the Susquehannah from the north, and Pokomoke, Nanticoke, Choptank, Chester and Elk, from the east, all fall into the Chesapeake bay.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Annapolis, the seat of government ; Baltimore, the seat of commerce ; Frederickstown, Hagerstown, Elkton and Havre de Grasse.

BALTIMORE, city and port of entry, Baltimore co. Md., on N. side of the Patapsco, 14 miles above its entrance into Chesapeake bay ; 37 N. E. Washington, 70 S. S. E. Lancaster, 100 S. W. Philadelphia, 160 N. E. Richmond, 190 S. W. N. York, 230 E. S. E. Pittsburg, 580 N. N. E. Charleston. Lon. 76. 36. W. Lat. 39 17 N. Pop. in 1790, 13,758 ; in 1800, 23,971 ; in 1810, 46,556, of whom 10,348 were blacks ; in 1820, 62,738.

Baltimore has had a remarkably rapid growth. In 1765 it contained only about 50 houses. It was erected into a city in 1797, and is now the third in size in the United States. It is admirably situated for commerce, and is a place of great wealth and trade. It possesses most of the trade of Maryland, a great part of that of the back country of Pennsylvania, and a portion of that of the western states. The shipping, owned here in 1790, amounted to only 13,564 tons ; in 1816, to 101,960 tons ; in 1820, to 68,674 tons. The number of vessels which arrived here, in 1816, from foreign ports, was 533 ; the number coastwise 401.

Baltimore, as laid out, is four miles square, and it is divided into twelve wards. It is built around a basin, which affords a spacious, secure, and commodious harbour, having at common tides, eight or nine feet of water. The principal part of the city is divided from the portions styled Old Town and Fell's Point, by a small river, called Jones' Falls, over which are erected three elegant stone bridges, and 4 wooden ones. Vessels of 500 or 600 tons can lie at the wharves at this Point, in perfect safety ; but those of only 200 tons can come up to the town. The mouth of the harbour is a narrow strait, and is effectually commanded by fort M'Henry, which secures the city against a naval force. The situation of a part of the town is low, and it was formerly accounted unhealthy ; but the various improvements which have been made, particularly the filling up of low and marshy grounds, have rendered it healthy. It is supplied with excellent water from four public fountains, which are fitted up in an ornamental style.

Baltimore contains a court-house, a penitentiary, a jail, an almshouse, a hospital, a theatre, a circus, an exchange, a museum and gallery of paintings, five market houses, ten banks, including a branch of the United States bank, a library of about 10,000 volumes, and 38 houses of public worship; five for Roman Catholics, five for Episcopalians, five for Methodists, four for Baptists, three for Presbyterians, three for Africans, two for Dutch Reformed, two for Seceders, two for Friends, one for Lutherans, one for Unitarians, one for Independents, one for Dunkers, and a New Jerusalem Church.

The exchange is an immense edifice, 360 feet by 140, somewhat resembling an H, having four wings; one for the United States branch bank, one for the custom house, and one for a coffee house. The Roman Catholic cathedral, and the Unitarian church are very conspicuous and magnificent edifices. St. Paul's church, the court-house, and the Union bank, are all spacious and elegant. Several of the other public buildings are large and handsome. The penitentiary is a large building, and contained in 1817, 242 prisoners. The institution is under excellent management. The hospital, on an elevated situation, has an extensive and valuable anatomical museum, and usually from 120 to 150 patients.

The Washington Monument, a superb structure of stone, is situated on an elevation, just above the compact part of the city. The base is 50 feet square, and 23 high, on which is placed another square of about half the extent and elevation. On this is a column 20 feet in diameter at the base, and 14 at the top. The statue of Washington is to be placed on the summit, 163 feet from the ground.

The city is generally well built, mostly of brick. Many of the houses, particularly those recently erected, display much elegance and taste. The streets are well paved, and many of them are spacious. The principal street, called Baltimore or Market street, is about a mile long, and about 80 feet wide, and runs nearly east and west, parallel with the water; and it is intersected at right angles, like those in Philadelphia. North and east of the city, the land rises to a considerable elevation, and affords a fine and variegated prospect. The town, the point, the shipping, both in the bay and at Fell's point, the bay as far the eye can reach, rising ground on the right and left of the harbour, a fine grove of trees on the declivity at the right, and a stream of water breaking over the rocks at the hill on the left, all conspire to complete the beauty and grandeur of the scene.

The literary institutions of Baltimore are a Medical College, St. Mary's College, and Baltimore College. There are several Lancasterian and Sunday schools; and numerous private schools are well supported.

The Medical College was founded in 1807. In 1812, the institution received a new charter, and was styled the University of Maryland, and was authorized to annex three other faculties, of languages, arts and sciences, of law and divinity. These are expected soon to go into operation. The medical department, the only one hitherto in operation, is highly respectable and flourishing, and has a valuable medical library, a good chemical and philosophical apparatus, and an anatomical museum. The building is spacious and elegant. The officers are a provost, and 6 professors, of anatomy, theory and practice of medi-

cine, chemistry, materia medica, obstetrics, and the institutes of medicine. The number of students in 1821, was 238.

St. Mary's College was incorporated as a university in 1806, and is well endowed. The buildings are neatly built of brick. It has a good library, a philosophical, and a chemical apparatus. Its officers are a president, a professor of divinity, one of moral and one of natural philosophy, one of belles lettres, four of the languages and mathematics, and eight assistant tutors. The students, about 140 in number, between the ages of 7 and 19, study in presence of their instructors. A seminary for students preparing for the priesthood is connected with the college.

The Baltimore College is an incorporated institution, but has no funds. The building is a neat edifice of brick, 60 feet by 40. It has two instructors, and about 60 students, from seven to fifteen years of age.

Six newspapers are published here : five daily, and one weekly. Among the manufacturing establishments are two steam flour mills, a glass house, a cotton manufactory, several establishments for the manufacture of Prussian blue, white lead, and vitriol ; also distilleries of gin and whiskey. The importance of Baltimore is increased by the advantages for mills and other water works in its vicinity. There were in 1805, within eighteen miles of the city, fifty merchant flour mills, two paper mills, one powder mill, two forges, and several furnaces. Twelve of the flour mills are on Jones' Falls, within four miles of the city. At these mills are manufactured great quantities of excellent flour.

A formidable attack was made on this city during the late war, on the 13th and 14th of Sept. 1814, by the British, under General Ross. On the 13th, the battle at North Point was fought ; and on the 14th fort M'Henry was bombarded. The enemy was repulsed, and General Ross was slain. An elegant structure of marble, about 35 feet high, called the Battle Monument, has been erected in a square in the city, commemorative of this event. On the column are inscribed the names of those who fell in the defence of the city.

Q. What is the commerce of Maryland ?

A. The commerce is so extensive that no one commercial city in the United States has flourished and increased equal to Baltimore. Their staples are flour and tobacco.

Q. What are the manufactures ?

A. Flour, iron, glass, paper, whiskey, &c. ; but flour is the principal ; more than 80 gristmills, in one county, are employed in the manufacture of this article.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. The literature of Maryland is improving. They have several colleges ; Washington college at Charlestown, and St. Johns' college at Annapolis, form the University of Maryland. They have a Methodist college at Harford, a Catholic college at Georgetown, and a French college at Baltimore ; also several academies. Common schools are increasing, and becoming general.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Maryland?

A. King Charles I. granted this colony to Cæcilius Calvert, baron of Baltimore, in the year 1632, and called it Maryland, in honor of his queen, Henrietta Maria. Lord Baltimore was a Catholic, and in order that he might enjoy his religion in peace, he collected a small colony of Roman Catholics, about 200, and sailed for America in the month of November, of the same year. Early in January, in 1633, he arrived in the colony, near the mouth of the Potomac, wintered, and entered into negotiations with the natives for the purchase of their lands. In March following, he commenced the settlement of the town of St. Mary's.

In 1634—5, the proprietary called an assembly of all the people to form a system of laws and regulations for the colony; and they granted to him a subsidy upon tobacco, to indemnify him for the £40,000 which he had expended in founding the colony.

Lord Baltimore pursued the same policy with regard to the Indians, that was afterwards so successfully followed by Wm. Penn, in Pennsylvania. He maintained the strictest principles of justice, in purchasing the Indian lands, and in all their intercourse with them; and the planters and Indians lived together as brethren of one family. In 1638—9, the colony had become so numerous as to render it necessary to establish the first House of Elective Assembly. All the inhabitants were required to take the oath of allegiance to the king of England. One of the first acts of this Assembly describes the people, as consisting of all christian inhabitants, *slaves only excepted*; which shows that slavery commenced in Maryland with its existence as a body politic.

This colony continued to prosper under the happy government of lord Baltimore, until it was disturbed by the intrigues of Wm. Clayborne, which led to an Indian war in 1642, that continued several years; and in 1643, Clayborne raised a rebellion, that drove the proprietary into Virginia, and continued to rage, until August, 1646, when it was suppressed, and peace restored.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Maryland settled?  
 What was the religious character of this colony?  
 When was the first assembly called, and what was their general policy?  
 When was the first house of Elective Assembly convened?  
 When did slavery commence in Maryland?  
 Who disturbed the tranquillity of the colony, and when and where was peace restored?



To secure more permanently the peace of this colony, the next Assembly, though Catholics, passed the following acts of toleration, viz. "No persons professing to believe in Jesus Christ shall be molested in regard to their religion, or the free exercise thereof, or be compelled to the exercise of any other religion, against their consent; so that they be not unfaithful to the proprietary, or conspire against the civil government." "Any person molesting another in regard to his religious tenets shall pay treble damages to the party aggrieved, and twenty shillings to the proprietary, &c."

In 1649, Maryland framed and adopted a constitution, that continued down to the year 1776. In 1651, during the reign of Oliver Cromwell in England, a contention arose in Maryland between the Puritans and Catholics, which issued in civil war; the Puritans prevailed and expelled the Catholics, and assumed the reins of government. This Puritan government acknowledged the authority of Cromwell, and passed an intolerant act, interdicting Popery in the province.

In 1660, when Charles II. was restored to the throne of England, the proprietary sent out Philip Calvert, *ésq.* as governor of Maryland. At this time the population of the colony amounted to about 12,000.

In 1662, Charles Calvert, son of the proprietary, by appointment of his father, assumed the reins of government; and in 1676, the proprietor, Cæcilius Calvert, died, and the then governor became proprietary.

The province at this time contained a population of 16,000.

In the year 1689, the Protestants conspired against the Papists, and under the mask of a Popish plot in concert with the Indians, effected a revolution, and assumed the government. William and Mary were then upon the throne of England, and approved the change. In 1692, the protestant religion was established by law in this colony.

In 1716, Charles, lord Baltimore, recovered the government of his province, and held it in his family down to the American revolution, when the freemen assumed the reins

What noted act of toleration was passed by the Assembly and when?

When did Maryland frame and adopt her first constitution?

When did civil war commence, and from what cause?

When was the proprietary government restored, and what was the population?

When did the Protestants effect a second revolution, and assume the reins of government?

When was the proprietary government again restored, and when was

of government, and confiscated the property, and framed the present constitution.

Maryland was a warm friend to the revolution, and furnished some of the best troops in support of the war. She was zealous in framing and adopting the federal constitution, and continues to be one of its firm supporters.

What part did Maryland take in the revolutionary war ?

What is her general character with regard to the Union ?

## DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the District of Columbia ?

A. The District of Columbia is situated upon both sides of the river Potomac, 120 miles from its mouth. It is ten miles square, and was ceded to the United States by Virginia and Maryland, in the year 1790. In 1800, it became the seat of the federal government. The jurisdiction is vested in the congress of the United States. Its population in 1820, was 32,039.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Washington city, Georgetown, and Alexandria.

WASHINGTON, city, and metropolis of the United States, in the District of Columbia. Lon. 1. 52. W. Philadelphia : 53. 52. W. Ferro ; 77. 2. W. Greenwich ; 79. 22. W. Paris. Lat. 38. 58. N. Pop. in 1800, 3,210 ; in 1810, 8,208 ; in 1820, 13,247. Houses 2,141 ; 994 of brick, 1,147 of wood. The city of Washington became the seat of the national government in 1806. It is situated on the Maryland side of the Potomac, 295 miles by the course of the river and bay, from the Atlantic, on a point of land upon the eastern branch of the Potomac ; and its site, as laid out, extends two or three miles up each of these rivers. It is separated from Georgetown by Rock creek, over which are two bridges, and there is a bridge over the Potomac, more than a mile in length, leading to Alexandria. A canal is constructed from the Potomac, passing up the Tiber, a small stream that flows through Washington, and then across the plain of the city to the eastern branch, forming a communication between the two rivers.

The natural situation of Washington is pleasant and salubrious ; and it is laid out on a plan, which, when completed, will render it one of the handsomest and most commodious cities in the world. It is divided into squares, by spacious streets or avenues, running N. and S. intersected by others at right angles ; these are crossed transversely by fifteen other spacious streets or avenues, named after the different states. The rectangular streets are designated by the letters of the alphabet and by numbers. The grand avenues, and such streets as lead immediately to public places, are from 130 to 160 feet wide ; the other streets are from 90 to 110 feet wide. A very small part of the plan only is as yet completed. The buildings, which cover but a small portion of the site as laid out, stand in four or five separate divisions.

and Washington at present, exhibits the appearance, not of one regular city, but of a collection of villages; in which the splendid public edifices appear of a disproportionate grandeur.

The principal public buildings and institutions in the city, are the capitol and the president's house, of stone; the building for the state, treasury, war and navy departments, and the general post-office, are all large brick edifices; the navy yard, extensive barracks for the marine corps, a jail, a theatre, a public library, four banks, including a branch of the United States bank, four market houses, a city hall, two masonic halls, a circus, an infirmary, an orphan asylum, a college, and 14 houses of public worship; 3 for Presbyterians, 3 for Catholics, 2 for Episcopalians, 2 for Baptists, 2 for Methodists, 1 for Friends, and 1 for Unitarians. There are five newspapers published in the city.

The Capitol is finely situated on an eminence, commanding a beautiful prospect of the Potomac, of every part of the city, and of a wide extent of the surrounding country. It is surrounded by an elegant iron railing, enclosing twenty acres of ground, planted with various kinds of trees and shrubs; and the ground immediately to the west of the capitol has been enclosed with a botanic garden. The two wings are 100 feet square each, connected with a well proportioned centre now building. It is built of white free-stone, and when completed, will be a most magnificent edifice, presenting a front of 362 feet.

The President's house is situated on a gentle elevation about a mile and a half west of the capitol, and is built of the same kind of stone, and covered with copper. It is a very elegant edifice, 170 feet by 85, of two stories, with a suitable basement story. The buildings, which contain the offices for the great departments of government, consist of four spacious brick edifices of two stories, covered with slate, situated at a small distance from the President's house. In these buildings are kept the papers, records, archives, and offices for the departments of State, of the Treasury, of War, and of the Navy. The General Post-Office is a large brick edifice, situated about a mile WNW. of the Capitol, and contains, besides the various offices belonging to the Post-Office establishment, the models of invention for which patents have been granted, forming a very extensive and curious collection; and a temporary library room for the national library, purchased in 1815, of the Hon. Thomas Jefferson, late president of the United States, and consisting of about 8,000 volumes. The navy yard is situated on the eastern branch, which forms a safe and commodious harbour, being sufficiently deep for large ships, about four miles from its mouth. The city hall, commenced in 1820, is 251 feet in length, 0 in breadth, two stories high at the wings, and one in the centre, and is covered with slate.

On the 24th of August, 1814, the city was taken by the British, who burnt the public edifices, not sparing even the national library. All these edifices are now rebuilt and repaired, except the Capitol, which is not yet finished. The foundation of the centre of the Capitol, was laid on the 24th of August, 1813, just four years after the conflagration; and it will be completed earlier, probably, than it would have been but for the visit of the British. This event has tended to increase the prosperity of the city; the national pride having been excited, not only to rebuild what was destroyed, but to complete what was unfinished. The amount expended by the United States on the public buildings in the city, previously to their destruction by the British,

was 1,214,291 dolls. The subsequent appropriations for rebuilding and repairing, to 1821, have amounted to 1,207,788 dollars.

Columbia College is finely situated on elevated ground, one and one fourth miles N. of the President's house, commanding a view of the city, of Georgetown, Alexandria, the Potomac, and a wide extent of the surrounding country. The college edifice begun in 1820, and finished in 1821, is 117 feet by 47, of five stories; calculated to accommodate about 100 students; containing also a chapel, a dining hall, library and lecture rooms. The college was first opened for instruction January 9, 1822, with 30 students, and incorporated by act of congress, February 9, 1821. The legislative government is entrusted to trustees, not exceeding 31; the executive government to a president, who is also professor of general history, belles lettres, rhetoric and moral philosophy; five professors, one of the learned languages, one of mathematics and natural philosophy, one of experimental philosophy, one of anatomy and physiology, and one of chemistry and geology; and two tutors. Connected with the college is a preparatory school, and also a Baptist theological seminary with three professors; one of divinity and pulpit eloquence, one of languages and biblical literature, and one of ecclesiastical history and Christian discipline. The college has been commenced with a favourable promise of becoming a useful and flourishing institution.

*Georgetown*, is situated upon the east side of the Potomac, at the confluence of Rock creek, which separates it from Washington city. It has five houses for public worship, and a Roman Catholic college, founded in 1739.

*Alexandria* is situated upon the W. bank of the Potomac, seven miles from Washington city. It has a commodious harbour for large ships, and possesses an extensive flour trade.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. Columbia College, in the city of Washington, is a flourishing institution, embracing a theological seminary, a medical department, and a preparatory school.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of the District of Columbia?

A. The District of Columbia was ceded by Virginia and Maryland to the United States in 1790, and became the permanent seat of government in 1800: during which time the public buildings were founded, and progressed towards their completion until the year 1814, when the District of Columbia was invaded by a British army, under the command of general Ross, who caused the public buildings to be destroyed by fire, together with the library of congress.

The public buildings have all been re-built.

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was the District granted to the United States?

When did it become the permanent seat of government?

When was it invaded by a British army, and what were the consequences?

What is the present state of the public buildings?

## VIRGINIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Virginia ?

A. Virginia is bounded on the N. by Pennsylvania and Maryland ; E. by the Atlantic ocean, Chesapeake bay, and Maryland ; S. by North Carolina ; and W. by Ohio and Kentucky. It is 450 miles long and 200 broad ; and contains about 64,000 square miles.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population ?

A. It is divided into 102 counties, viz. Brook, Cabel, Greenbriar, Giles, Grayson, Harrison, Kenhawa, Lewis, Lee, Monongalia, Mason, Monroe, Montgomery, Nicholas, Ohio, Preston, Russell, Randolph, Scott, Tazewell, Tyler, Wythe, Washington and Wood, west of the Allegany mountains ; Accomack, Albemarle, Amelia, Amherst, Augusta, Bath, Bedford, Berkeley, Botetourt, Brunswick, Buckingham, Campbell, Caroline, Charles city, Charlotte, Chesterfield, Cumberland, Culpepper, Dinwiddie, Elizabeth city, Essex, Fauquier, Fairfax, Fluvana, Frederick, Franklin, Gloucester, Goochland, Greensville, Halifax, Hampshire, Hanover, Hardy, Henrico, Henry, Isle of Wight, James city, Jefferson, King and Queen, King George, King William, Lancaster, Loudon, Louisa, Lunenburgh, Madison, Matthews, Mecklenburgh, Middlesex, Morgan, Nansemond, Nelson, New Kent, Norfolk, Northampton, Northumberland, Nottaway, Orange, Patrick, Pendleton, Pittsylvania, Powhatan, Prince Edward, Princess Anne, Prince William, Prince George, Richmond, Rockbridge, Rockingham, Shenandoah, Southampton, Spotsylvania, Stafford, Surry, Sussex, Warwick, Westmoreland and York, east of the mountains. Population in 1820, 1,065,366 ; three-fifths of which are slaves.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. The climate is very various : in the low country it is hot, moist, and unhealthy ; but its temperature is cool and salubrious in the middle and western parts.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. East of the Apalachian chain, Virginia is level, to the extent of about 100 miles ; the mountains then commence, and extend in lofty broken ridges, across the state ; they are about 50 miles wide.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil of Virginia is various, but generally good ; the flat country produces corn, oats, peas, cotton, tobacco, cider, &c. ; the hill country produces wheat, rye, barley, corn,

hemp, flax, &c. Many of the vallies of the mountains are fertile.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Apalachian or Allegany, and the Blue ridge, so termed by way of distinction. The summits of the Allegany are designated by the names of North mountain, Laurel mountain, or ridge, and Jackson's mountain. The summits of the Blue ridge, by the Peaks of Otter. The latter are the highest. These mountains have been described under North America—page 15.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Copper, iron, lead, black lead, coal, marblé, limestone, and crystals, all in great abundance. Twelve mines of iron are now open in Virginia.

Q. Which are their mineral springs ?

A. Hot spring, and warm spring, near the sources of James river, with others of less value upon the Potomac ; the hot springs will boil an egg. All are places of considerable resort.

Q. Which are the principal bays and capes ?

A. Chesapeake bay, and capes Henry and Charles.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Potomac, York, James, &c. east of the mountains. The Great and Little Kenhawa, &c. west of the mountains.

Q. How far is the Potomac navigable for ships ?

A. About 30 miles, from the capes up to Washington city.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Virginia is not located into townships, like the northern states ; but into farms and plantations, with a few large market towns, such as Richmond, Petersburg, Fredericksburgh, Williamsburg, Norfolk, &c. Richmond is the seat of government.

RICHMOND, city, port of entry, and metropolis of Virginia, in Henrico co. on N. side of James river, between 50 and 60 miles, by the course of the river, above City Point, and 150 miles from its mouth, immediately below the Falls, at the head of tide water, and opposite to Manchester, with which it is connected by two bridges ; 25 N. Petersburg, 123 S. by W. Washington. Lon 77. 31. W.—Lat. 37 30 N. Pop. in 1800, 5,537 ; in 1810, 9,735 ; in 1817, 11,338 ; in 1820, 12,046. The city was formerly divided into two sections, the upper or western part, called *Shockoe hill*, and the lower part *Richmond*, separated by Shockoe creek, a small rivulet ; but these distinctions are now going out of use, and the sections are united together. The situation is highly picturesque, beautiful and healthy ; and Richmond is a flourishing, wealthy, and commercial city.

It contains about 300 houses built of brick, many of them elegant, and about 600 built of wood ; a glass house, a sugar refinery, an iron foundery, a rolling and slitting mill, a cotton manufactory, eight tobacco ware houses, two insurance offices, three banks, including a

branch of the United States bank, a capitol or state house, a house for the governor, an armory, a penitentiary, a court house, a jail, an almshouse, two market houses, a public library, containing about 3,000 volumes, a museum, a lancasterian school, and 8 houses of public worship, 2 for Episcopalians, 1 for Presbyterians, 1 for Baptists, 2 for Methodists, 1 for Friends, and a Jews' synagogue.

The falls extend nearly six miles, in which distance the river descends 80 feet. A canal with three locks is cut on the north side of the river, terminating at the town in a bason of about two acres. Few cities situated so far from the sea, possess better commercial advantages than Richmond, being at the head of tide water, on a river navigable for batteaux, 20 miles above the city, and having an extensive and fertile back country, abundant in the productions of tobacco, wheat, corn, hemp, coal, &c. It has an extensive inland trade, and its foreign commerce is considerable. The shipping owned here in 1816, amounted to 9,943 tons. James river is navigable to Warwick, for vessels drawing fifteen or sixteen feet water, and to Rockets, just below Richmond, for vessels drawing ten feet. The exports of the city consist of tobacco flour, coal, and various articles of produce. There are five newspapers published in this city; two daily, one three times a week, and two twice a week.

The Virginia armory is an extensive establishment, and there are annually manufactured in it, upwards of 4,000 stands of arms, 300 rifles, and 1,000 cavalry swords and pistols. The penitentiary is under good regulations, and contained in 1818, 170 prisoners. The new court-house is a very spacious and elegant edifice. The capitol is built on a commanding situation on Shockoe hill, and is a very conspicuous object to the surrounding country. The design was taken from La Maison Quaree, at Nismes, and the model was obtained by Mr. Jefferson, while minister there. The edifice, however falls greatly short of the model.

In 1811, on the 26th of December, the theatre at Richmond took fire during an exhibition, and in the conflagration 72 persons lost their lives, among whom were George William Smith, Esqr. governor of the state, and other persons of respectability. An elegant Episcopal church of brick, styled the *Monumental Church*, has since been erected on the spot, with a monument in front, commemorative of the melancholy event.

Q. What are the commerce and manufactures of Virginia?

A. Flour and tobacco are their principal exports. They have some manufactures of iron and lead; and domestic manufactures are very general throughout the state.

Q. What are the internal improvements?

A. Large ships have free access to Jamestown, upon the James river, and sloops pass up to Richmond; canals are constructed at the falls for the internal improvement of navigation, so as to admit the passage of boats more than 200 miles above Richmond. Five canals are constructed at the five several falls upon the Potomac, above Washington, by which boats are enabled to pass to Cumberland, near the source of that river. From thence the great Cumberland road connects

the internal commerce with the Ohio, at Wheeling ; and through the Ohio with the Mississippi. This road has been constructed at great expense by the national government. Also, a canal from Elizabeth river, near Norfolk, that passes through Great Dismal Swamp, and connects Chesapeake bay with Albemarle sound.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. It is improving. The University of Virginia, at Charlottesville, is a splendid institution, founded by the legislature in 1817. The buildings were completed in 1822, at an expense of \$207,710. It is endowed by the state with a revenue of \$15,000 per annum, from their literary fund, which amounts to \$1,100,000. This institution, with Henrico, William and Mary colleges, Washington college, and Hampden Sidney college, are the principal literary institutions.

Q. What are the curiosities ?

A. An inflammable spring near the great Kenhawa, that emits vapour that kindles into a flame upon the approach of a torch, and burns like spirit, about twenty minutes. Another near the western line, termed burning spring, which, when kindled with a torch, continues to burn for many months, unless extinguished by smothering.

Q. What other curiosities are worthy of notice ?

A. A natural well, in Frederick county, in which the water rises to the height of common wells, near it ; but whose depth is unfathomable. Also, Madison cave, in the hill country, extending into the earth about 300 feet, and then terminates in a river, or current of water. Another also, in the same county, extending about 450 feet into the earth.

Q: Are the curiosities numerous ?

A. In Virginia there is a blowing cave, near the panther gap, (so called) that emits a strong current of air, which lays prostrate the herbage at the distance of 50 or 60 feet ; another in the Cumberland mountain, that blows irregularly, and emits a current of water ; and another that extends through the base of a hill, about two miles, and is passable.

Q. What other curiosities are worthy of notice ?

A. A natural bridge over Cedar creek, 90 feet long and 45 feet wide, that is elevated above the water 200 feet, with an arch 60 feet thick, covered with stately trees. Also a cascade on a branch of James river, 15 feet high. There are also many remains of ancient fortifications, which cover from two to ten acres of ground, similar to those mentioned in Pennsylvania.



Q. What may be considered the most sublime natural scene in this state?

A. The passage of the river Potomac, in conjunction with the Shenandoah, through the Blue ridge. Here a war of the elements forced an opening through the solid rock to the depth of several hundred feet, which gave vent for the waters of these two rivers, and united them in a broken torrent through the vast chasm of the mountain; from thence, in a bold and gentle stream, they flow off to the ocean.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Virginia?

A. King James I. granted a patent of Virginia to the London company, in 1606, that included all lands, &c. lying between 34 deg. and 41 deg. of north latitude. In May, 1607, a settlement commenced at Jamestown, under the direction of captain Newport. In June, captain Newport returned to England and left the colony under the government of captain John Smith. In the winter following Jamestown was burnt.

In 1609, captain Nelson arrived from England with two ships, and augmented the colony to the number of 200. The same year king James granted a new charter of Virginia to the London company, and they appointed lord De la War, or Delaware, as governor, and sent out a company of settlers.

In 1610, lord Delaware arrived in Virginia, and met the colony in the river, on their return to England. Their whole number then consisted of sixty only. The governor persuaded them to return with him to Jamestown, which commenced the first permanent settlement in the United States. The colony then amounted to 500.

In 1619, the first representative assembly was held in Virginia; but there were not more than six or seven towns, in which settlements had commenced. In 1620, the London company sent out a new recruit of settlers of about 1200, together with about 90 chaste, virtuous young women, who were settled at a village of their own, called *Maid's Town*. These were sold to the planters at 120 pounds of tobacco each. The next year the company sent out 60 more, and

---

QUESTIONS.—When was the first charter of Virginia granted? When and where did the first settlement commence, and under whose government? When was Jamestown burnt? When and under what circumstances did lord Delaware commence his administration, and what was the number of the settlers? When was the first representative assembly called?

the price was augmented to 150 pounds each. These were not the sales of slavery, but of hymenial enjoyments. The planters took to themselves wives, and the purchase price went to pay the expense of the London company for transporting them. Tobacco was then valued at three shillings per pound; but these debts claimed precedence of all others. From this time the company began to flourish.

At this time, the settlement of Virginia had cost the London company more than £150,000 sterling, besides the expense of private adventurers; and more than 4000 lives had been lost.

In 1624, king James I. caused writs of *quo warranto*, to be issued against the London company, and dissolved their charter; and the government devolved upon the crown.

The next year, king Charles I. succeeded to the throne of his father; and he granted a new charter to Virginia, and appointed sir John Harvey governor. This charter vested absolute powers in the governor and council, and destroyed the free elective government of 1619.

The Indians resented the rapacity of governor Harvey, entered the settlements upon James river, and murdered about 500 people, in 1639.

About the same time, governor Berkeley succeeded governor Harvey, and he restored the liberties of the first charter, by convening a free elective assembly. The colony began again to flourish under his administration. But this was soon checked by the spirit of the people, which excited them to war, in order to revenge the late massacre of their friends. A long and bloody Indian war ensued; but the savages were humbled, and peace was restored about the year 1649.

In 1653, Oliver Cromwell became Lord High Protector of England, under the Commonwealth. Virginia neglected to acknowledge his authority; but Cromwell, who knew how to

What particular measures did the London company adopt to people the colony?

What had been the expenses of the London company in 1620, in settling the colony, and how many lives had been lost?

When and in what manner did the government devolve upon the crown?

When and in what manner was the free elective government destroyed?

When was the great Indian massacre at Jamestown?

When and by whom were the liberties of the first charter restored?

When and why did an Indian war commence, and when was peace restored?

command, was determined to be obeyed ; he compelled the submission of Virginia, with a strong armament, and humbled her during his administration ; and rigidly enforced the observance of the navigation act.

In 1659, Cromwell died and was succeeded by his son, Richard Cromwell ; but in 1660, king Charles II. was restored to the throne of England. Virginia had high expectations from Charles, because she had rejected the government of Richard Cromwell in 1659, and acknowledged the government of Charles II. one year before he was restored ; but they were disappointed, for Charles treated them with more severity than Cromwell had done. An Indian war soon followed, and a rebellion under Bacon ; all which distressed the colony, and kept it low for more than 30 years.

Virginia took an active part in the old French and Indian war of 1754—5, and sent out major George Washington to reduce the fortress, (fort Du Quesne) at the confluence of the Monongahela ; but the enterprise failed. The next year, 1755, colonel Washington joined the British general Braddock, and advanced against fort Du Quesne ; and again the enterprise failed ; Braddock was killed and his army destroyed ; and colonel Washington conducted the retreat of the remnant of the army. In 1758, general Forbes, at the head of a respectable force, marched against fort Du Quesne, and the French abandoned the fortress. Virginia co operated with the other colonies through the war, to the peace of 1763.

In 1764, Great Britain commenced her system of taxation on her American colonies, and in 1765, she passed the noted stamp act, (so called.) Virginia, by her resolutions, took the lead of the colonies in resisting this act, which led to its repeal in 1766. She continued firmly to unite with the other colonies in resisting those oppressive measures of Britain, that led to the revolution ; and she not only entered with spirit into the measures of the first continental congress, at Philadelphia ; but she gave to the confederacy one of her citizens as commander-in-chief of the American army, in 1775 ; besides a train of heroes and statesmen, who greatly promoted the success of the revolution. In 1776, the British laid in ashes the city of Norfolk. In 1779, sir Henry

---

What measures did Oliver Cromwell pursue towards Virginia ?

What measures did King Charles II. pursue towards Virginia ?

What were the measures of Virginia in the old French war ?

What measures did Virginia pursue under the oppressive acts of Britain ?

Clinton sent a strong military force into Virginia, and ravaged the country. In 1780, sir Henry Clinton sent another strong force into Virginia, that ravaged and laid waste the country. This force fell under the command of lord Cornwallis the next year, and the distresses of Virginia continued until Cornwallis and his whole army, were taken at York-Town, October 19th, 1781. This put an end to the war.

Virginia took the lead in calling a convention at Philadelphia, to revise the old confederation, and frame the Federal constitution; and she gave a president to that body. She was one of the first states to adopt the new constitution, and gave the first president to the new government. Virginia has given four presidents out of the six that have administered the national government.

When was Norfolk burnt?

What were the other sufferings of Virginia in the revolutionary war?

What part did Virginia take in framing and adopting the Federal Constitution, and how many Presidents has she given to the new government?

## NORTH CAROLINA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of North Carolina?

A. North Carolina is bounded on the N. by Virginia; E. by the Atlantic ocean; S. by South Carolina; and W. by Tennessee. It is 430 miles long and 180 broad; and contains about 48,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into 62 counties, after the manner of Virginia, viz. Anson, Ashe, Beaufort, Bertie, Bladen, Brunswick, Buncombe, Burke, Cabarras, Camden, Carteret, Caswell, Chatham, Chowan, Columbus, Craven, Cumberland, Currituck, Duplin, Edgecomb, Franklin, Gates, Granville, Greene, Guilfork, Halifax, Haywood, Hertford, Hyde, Iredell, Johnson, Jones, Lenoir, Lincoln, Martin, Mecklinburgh, Montgomery, Moore, Nash, New Hanover, Northampton, Onslow, Orange, Pasquotank, Pitt, Perquimans, Person, Randolph, Richmond, Robeson, Rockingham, Rowan, Rutherford, Sampson, Stokes, Surry, Tyrell, Wake, Warren, Washington, Wayne, and Wilkes; these contain a population of about 633,829; two thirds of which are slaves.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. It is divided into three classes; the sand barrens on the

east, the hill country in the centre, and the Alleghanies on the west.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. In the eastern section, it is barren; in the middle, it is fertile: and in the western, rough and broken. Its productions are such as are common to the middle and southern states. Cotton, indigo, rice, and the sugar cane, all flourish in this State. Tar, pitch and turpentine, are produced in great quantities on the pine barrens.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Gold has been found in Cabarras county, and in Meadow Creek, and other small streams, in such quantities, that in ten years, a value of more than 19,000 dollars has been sent to the mint of the United States.

Q. What shrub is peculiar to this state?

A. The misleto is a shrub peculiar to itself, and grows only upon the tops of other trees, by fixing its roots within the bark, like an inoculation; and often exhausts and destroys the tree on which it grows.

Q. Which are the principal capes?

A. Cape Fear, Hatteras, and Cape Lookout; all dangerous shoals.

Q. Which are the principal sounds and inlets?

A. Albemarle, Pamlico, and Core sounds; Currituck, Roanoke, and Ocracoke inlets.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. Cape Fear, Chowan, Roanoke, Neuse, Yadkin, Tar, and Catawba.

Q. Which are the principal swamps?

A. Great and Little Dismal. (See the atlas.)

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Raleigh city, is the capital, and stands upon one of the head branches of the Neuse, near which is Chapel Hill, the seat of the North Carolina University. Newbern, upon the Neuse, is the largest commercial town. Fayetteville, at the head of boat navigation, on Cape Fear river, is the next in size to Newbern, and a very flourishing town. Edenton, Tarborough, Kingston, Wilmington, Hillsborough, Salisbury, Halifax, Washington, and Greenville, are handsome towns.

RALEIGH, city, and metropolis of N. Carolina, in Wake co. It is situated six miles W. of Neuse riv. r. two and a half S. of Crab-tree creek, 10 from Wake court house, 27 N. W. Smith rd, 57 S. Warrenton, 60 N. Fayetteville, 140 N. W. Newbern, 100 S. W. Richmond, W. 288. Lon. 78. 48. W. Lat. 35. 47, N. Pop. 2,674; w 1,177; slaves 1,320; free people of colour 177. It has a pleasant and elevated situation, in a healthy country. It contains a state house, a

House a jail, the governor's house, the secretary of States' office, a theatre a market house, two banks, two museums, two printing offices, two academies, one for males and one for females, and four houses of public worship, of which one is for Presbyterians, one for Methodists and one for Baptists. In the centre of the town is union square, containing ten acres, from which extend four streets, dividing the city into four quarters. The four large streets are 99 feet wide; the others 66. The state house stands in the centre of union square; it is a large and handsome brick edifice, and contains an elegant marble statue of Washington, by Canova, the celebrated Italian sculptor. The two academies are respectable and flourishing seminaries, usually containing together from 120 to 140 students. The trade of Raleigh is chiefly with Fayetteville, Newbern and Petersburg. Boats have sometimes ascended the Neuse to within eight miles of Raleigh. Near the town is a quarry of excellent granite, and twelve miles distant one of handsome soap stone.

Q. What are the internal improvements of N. Carolina?

A. One canal has been opened from Little Dismal Swamp, to the head of Skuppernong river, and another is now opening through Great Dismal, to unite Pasquetank, and Elizabeth rivers, which has been noticed under Virginia. These will greatly improve the internal commerce of North Carolina.

Q. What are the manufactures?

A. Tar, pitch and turpentine, are the principal; but iron, paper, whiskey and peach brandy, are among their manufactures.

Q. What is the commerce?

A. The exports of this State consist of tar, pitch, turpentine, rosin, lumber, tobacco, pork, tallow, bees-wax, myrtle-wax, maize or corn, furs, &c. Their imports consist of cheese, cider, apples, potatoes, iron, tin ware, furniture, hats, shoes and boots, carriages, &c. from the northern states.-- Their foreign merchandize is principally from New York.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. There is a college at Chapel Hill, styled the University of North Carolina, which begins to flourish; and academies are established in several towns.

Q. What are the curiosities?

A. Pilot mountain, (so called by the Indians,) rises upon a broad circular base, like a pyramid, to the height of about one mile, where it shoots up in one solid column of rock, about 300 feet, and terminates in a flat upon its summit.

Q. Is this elevated tower accessible?

A. A pass has been explored, through difficult and dangerous cavities and fissures in the rock, that leads to the top, from whence a prospect opens, both extensive and delightful.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of North Carolina ?

A. In the year 1566, Commodore Laudonniere, was sent out from France, with three ships, to settle a colony in Florida ; and in June, he built a fort on the river (May, or St. Mary,) where he planted a colony of one hundred men, and called the country Carolina, in honor of Charles IX. king of France. This is the first notice of N. Carolina.

In August, of the same year, Commodore Ribault arrived with a colony of French Huguenots, to strengthen a colony at Fort Royal, which he had planted in the year 1542 ; but they were lost, and they joined the colony of Laudonniere, and Ribault became their governor. In September of the same year, Pedro Melanges, a Spaniard, with six ships, by order of Philip II. king of Spain, pursued Ribault and his little colony up the river ; landed a strong force of 200 soldiers and 2600 planters, took his colony, and put them all to the sword, or hung them upon trees. When Melanges departed, he left this inscription for the dead :

*“They were hung as Lutherans not as Frenchmen.”*

To revenge this savage act, one Guerges, of Gascony, in France, fitted out three ships, as a private adventure, and sailed for Carolina, with one hundred and fifty soldiers and eighty seamen, where he found the Spaniards had erected three forts, and garrisoned them with from 60 to 100 men each.—Guerges landed his men, April 15th, 1567, and made known his object to the Indians, and requested their aid, which he readily obtained. Guerges commenced the attack and carried the forts in succession, and put the garrisons to the sword, or hung them on gibbets. When he departed he left this inscription :

*“They were hung as traitors, robbers, and murderers, not as Spaniards and mariners.”*

Guerges returned safe to France in June.

The same distresses, and calamities awaited this colony that befel Virginia, viz. Indian wars and massacres, sickness, famine and death.

In the year 1606, King James divided the colony of Virginia into two parts, north and south, and South Virginia extended to the 34 deg. of N. latitude, and included N. Caroli-

---

QUESTIONS.—What were the adventures that led to the settlement and gave name to Carolina ?

What acts of cruelty were committed by the Spaniards, and how were they revenged ?

na. In the year 1624, King James revoked this charter. In the year 1625, King Charles I. succeeded to the throne, and granted a new charter to Sir Robert Heath, and he conveyed this province to Lord Matrovers, afterwards earl of Arundel and Surry. Upon the accession of Charles II. in 1660, the patent of the earl of Arundel was declared void, "because the conditions had not been fulfilled." King Charles made a new grant to Edward, earl of Clarendon, George, duke of Albemarle, William, earl of Craven, John, lord Berkeley, Anthony, lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret, Sir John Calleton, and Sir William Berkeley, conveying in due form all the lands lying between the 31 deg. and 36 deg. of north latitude, and the Virginia seas on the east, and the Pacific ocean on the west, bearing date March, 1663. This charter was afterward extended to the 29th degree.

Under this charter Carolina began to flourish, and continued to improve until she became respectable among the colonies.

In 1669, a colony was planted at Port Royal, under the government of Capt. Sale. The same year Lord Ashley obtained of Mr. John Locke the constitution, so noted in Carolina; and the first Assembly passed a body of laws for the security of person and property.

In 1671, the colony of South Carolina was separated from the northern colony, but their history continued inseparably interwoven down to the time of the old French war, 1754.—The year 1675, is noted for Culpepper's rebellion. Peace was restored.

In 1679, persecutions recommenced, and the colony was again distracted with feuds, under the administration of Governor Sothel.

In 1680, fifty families of French Huguenots arrived in North Carolina, for the purpose of introducing the culture of silk, raisins, capers, wax, almonds, oil, olives, &c. but the whole plan failed, and there were no general staples in the colony.

Two circumstances brought these into notice. A ship from Madagascar bound to London, touched at the bar in 1722.

When and to whom was the first charter of Carolina granted?

When and to whom was a second charter of Carolina granted?

When and by whom was the first constitution of Carolina framed?

When were the two colonies divided?

When was Culpepper's rebellion?

When did the Huguenot colony arrive in Carolina, and what was their object?



and gave the governor a small quantity of rice ; from this, rice became one of the staples of Carolina.

In the reign of Queen Ann, the Swedes, (who had hitherto furnished tar for the English navy.) became extravagant in their demands, and the Queen offered a large bounty upon tar, which encouraged the manufacture of tar in Carolina, and this became the other staple.

During all this period there was not one clergyman in the county of Albemarle, and no regular mode of celebrating marriage.

In 1694, the first general court was held, and in 1722, the first court-house was built.

In the year 1690, a colony of French Huguenots arrived in Virginia from England, and in 1707, they removed into Carolina, and became useful and valuable inhabitants.

In 1709, a Protestant colony of Palatines, from Germany, arrived by the way of England, and became also useful and valuable citizens.

In 1711, the Tuscaroras, and other Indian tribes, commenced a general massacre upon Albemarle county, which opened a general Indian war. This war raged with great violence through the year, and was closed in 1712. The Tuscaroras were expelled their country, and they removed north, and joined the confederacy of the Five Nations, who since have been known by the name of the Six Nations.

In 1738, Virginia and North Carolina settled their boundary line.

Soon after this, a colony of Scotch Protestants arrived in Carolina from Ireland, where they settled, and became flourishing and respectable.

In 1736, such was the scarcity of money, that the several articles of traffic, (such as deer-skins, &c.) were substituted by law, in the place of money, and made payable for quit-rents and other debts, at certain fixed prices ; even judgments of courts were entered upon the dockets, as payable in those articles.

- What causes led to the staples of rice and tar in Carolina ?  
 When was the first general court held, and the first court-house built ?  
 When did the second Huguenot colony arrive ?  
 When did the German Protestant colony arrive ?  
 When did the Tuscarora war commence, when did it end, and what was the result ?  
 When did Virginia and Carolina settle their boundary line ?  
 What Protestant colony arrived in Carolina about this time ?  
 What were the current articles of traffic, instead of money ?

In the year 1753, a Moravian colony from Moravia, came into Carolina, and settled between the Dan and Yadkin rivers, where they built a village called Bethabara. In 1759, they built the village of Bethany, and in 1761, they commenced an extensive manufacturing establishment at Salem.

In 1754, another Scotch colony came into Carolina, and settled near where Fayetteville now stands. The same year another Highland colony emigrated to Carolina, which led many of their Protestant brethren to follow them, and thus the religion of the reformation was transplanted into North Carolina.

This year hostilities commenced in America, between England and France, called the old French war; and Carolina suffered severely down to the peace of 1763.

North Carolina co-operated with the other colonies in opposing those oppressive measures of Great Britain, that led to the revolution, in 1775. She then entered with zeal into the revolutionary war; and in 1777 adopted her present constitution. She was invaded and overrun by the British, under the command of Lord Cornwallis, in 1780, and became the theatre of the southern war until the capture of Cornwallis at Yorktown, (Virginia,) in 1781, which put a period to the war generally.

North Carolina co-operated with the other colonies in framing and adopting the Federal Constitution; and has uniformly continued a firm supporter of the national government.

North Carolina has now become a rich and flourishing State.

When and by whom were the villages of Bethabara, and Bethany built?

When and by whom was Fayetteville settled?

When did the last Highland colony arrive, and what were the consequences?

What were the effects of the old French war upon Carolina?

What part did North Carolina take in the Revolutionary war?

What is her character with regard to the Union?

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of South Carolina.

A. South Carolina is bounded on the N. by North Carolina; E. by the Atlantic ocean; S. W. by Georgia. It is about 200 miles long, and 125 broad; and contains about 28,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. South Carolina is divided into 28 districts, viz. Abbeville, Barnwell, Beaufort, Charleston, Chester, Chesterfield, Colleton, Darlington, Edgefield, Fairfield, Georgetown, Greenville, Horry, Kershaw, Lancaster, Laurens, Lexington, Marion, Marlborough, Newberry, Orangeburgh, Pendleton, Richland, Spartanburgh, Sumpter, Union, Williamsburgh, and York ; and these again into counties or parishes. Its population is 502,741.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. In the low country it is hot and unhealthy, but mild and salubrious in the upper or hill country.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. It is divided into what is termed upper and lower country. The latter is a dead level, and extends about 140 miles from the sea, then rises into ridges, which commence the upper country ; these ridges rise in succession until they terminate in the Apalachian chain.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil is generally good, especially upon the rivers, and in the upper country, and yields all the productions of N. Carolina ; but the principal are cotton and rice. Some of the tropical fruits are found here, such as oranges, lemons, limes, figs, pomegranates, &c. The grape is more spontaneous here than in any other part of the United States. Northern or Irish potatoes do not flourish at the south, and they cultivate the sweet potatoe.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Gold, silver, lead, iron, copper, and black-lead ; together with precious stones, variegated crystals, cornelian and beautiful marble. Also, red and yellow ochre, fine porcelain clay, fuller's earth, chalk, alum, sulphur, nitre, vitriol, marl, &c.

Q. Which are the principal islands ?

A. Bull, Sullivan, James', John's, St. Helena, and others.

Q. Which is the principal cape ?

A. Cape Roman.

Q. Which are its principal bays ?

A. Charleston, Beaufort, Georgetown and Winyaw.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. Savannah, Edisto, Santee, Congaree, Wateree, Pedee, Ashley and Cooper.

Q. Which are the principal towns ?

A. Charleston is a handsome commercial city ; Columbia, upon the Congaree, is the seat of government ; Beaufort, Georgetown, Granby, Camden, Purysburg, Jacksonsburg, Or-

angeburgh, Winnsborough, Statesburgh, and Cambridge, are flourishing towns.

CHARLESTON, city, and seaport town, S. C. in a district of the same name ; 120 S. S. E. Columbia, 118 N. E. Savannah, 590 S. S. W. Baltimore, 780 S. S. W. New-York, W. 553. Lon. 79. 54. W. Lat. 32. 47. N. Pop. in 1790, 16,359 ; in 1800, 18,712 ; in 1810, 24,711 ; 11,668 whites and 13,048 blacks ; in 1820, 24,780 ; 5,323 free white males, 5,330 free white females ; 12,552 slaves ; 1,475 free people of colour.

It is situated on a tongue of land formed by the confluence of the rivers Cooper and Ashley, which unite just below the city, and form a spacious and convenient harbour, communicating with the ocean below Sullivan's island, seven miles from Charleston. At the mouth of the harbour, there extends from shore to shore, a sand bank, which though dangerous to vessels, has openings by which they are navigated across it. The harbour is defended by fort Pinkney and fort Johnson, which are on islands, the former two, and the latter, four miles below the city ; and by fort Moultrie on Sullivan's island.

Charleston contains a state house, a city hall, a custom house, a guard house, a theatre, an orphan house, a hospital, an alms house, six banks, including a branch of the United States bank, a college edifice, now occupied by a classical school, and seventeen houses of public worship ; three for Episcopalians, three for Presbyterians, three for Methodists, two for Congregationalists, one for Lutherans, one for Roman Catholics, one for French Protestants, one for Baptists, one for Friends, and a Jew's synagogue. Public worship is also held in the orphan house. There are six newspapers published here, four daily, and two thrice a week. The Charleston library contains about 13,000 volumes, and the Franklin Library Society has about 2,000. The Orphan Asylum is a noble and well endowed institution, which supports and educates about 130 orphan children. Provision is made by the legislature for educating at the S. C. College, at the expense of the State, such boys as manifest extraordinary talents. There are several other charitable societies richly endowed, particularly the South Carolina Society, the St. Andrew's Society, and the Fellowship Society, instituted for the relief of widows and orphans.

The city is regularly laid out in parallel streets, which are intersected by others nearly at right angles. The tongue of land on which it is built, was originally indented with creeks and narrow marshes, which have been filled up, and it is drier and more elevated than most parts of the low country of S. Carolina. Many of the houses are elegant and furnished with piazzas. It is much the largest town in the state, and was formerly the seat of government. It has an extensive and flourishing commerce. The shipping owned here, in 1816, amounted to 36,473 tons ; in 1820, to 28,403 tons. The number of vessels which, in 1816, arrived here from foreign ports, was 337 ; coastwise 882.

The dreadful distemper, the yellow fever, has made frequent ravages in Charleston ; but its effects have been chiefly confined to persons from more northern situations ; and the climate of the city is accounted healthy to the native inhabitants, more so than that of other Atlantic towns in the southern states ; its superior salubrity attracts the planters from the surrounding country, and it is the favourite resort of

the wealthy from the West Indies. It affords much agreeable society, and is reckoned one of the gayest towns in the U. States.

Q. What are the commerce and manufactures of South Carolina?

A. Indigo was formerly an article of great export; but this has given place to cotton, which has become the staple. The exports of rice often amount to 140 or 150,000 barrels yearly. Domestic manufactures are general; but extensive manufactories are not yet established.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. This is rapidly improving. They have five colleges, and several of them begin to flourish. The State has appropriated \$30,000 annually, for the benefit of free schools.

Q. What are the internal improvements?

A. The canal connecting the Santee with Cooper's river, is 22 miles long, and admits boats of 20 tons to pass. Charleston bridge over Ashley and Cooper's river is 2,100 feet long, and 30 broad, with a causeway of nearly a mile in length.

Q. What Indians reside in this State?

A. The Catawba, at Catawba village, about 450 in number.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of South Carolina?

A. South Carolina was included in a grant to the Earl of Clarendon, and others, in 1663, and its history has been carried forward in the history of North Carolina generally, down to the commencement of the old French and Indian war.

Although the two governments were distinctly formed, so early as the latter part of the 17th century, yet the division line was never attempted to be run, until 1737, and then but partially. In 1764, it was again attempted, and failed in part; and in 1771, the king directed governor Martin to cause the line to be finished; but it again failed, and was not resumed until several years afterwards.

The two colonies united their efforts to suppress the ravages of the Cherokees, in 1758, when general Forbes expelled the French from fort Duquesne; and by the aid of New York and Virginia, they succeeded, and peace was restored in 1760.

---

QUESTIONS.—What connection is there in the early history of N. and S. Carolina?

When were the two governments distinctly formed, and when was the division line run?

When did they unite in humbling the Cherokees, and what memorable event took place at this time?

At this time serious disputes arose between South Carolina, and her crown governor, as was then common to all the other colonies that had governors appointed by the crown ; in the year 1764, they obtained his removal, and Governor Tryon was appointed his successor, and continued to the commencement of the revolution.

South Carolina co-operated with the other colonies in resisting the stamp act, and other oppressive measures of Great Britain, that led to the revolution. She entered with zeal and spirit also into the war.

In 1779, Charleston, her capital, was invaded by the British, and the State suffered severely ; but the enemy were repulsed with loss and disgrace, and driven out of the State.

In 1780, the British again invaded the State of South Carolina, under the command of Sir Henry Clinton, and Charleston was taken on the 12th of May. The State was overrun by Lord Cornwallis, and became a theatre of war from that time, until the cessation of hostilities, at the close of 1781.

In January 1782, governor Rutledge called an assembly at Jacksonborough, and they chose John Matthews their governor. On the 14th of December following, Charleston was evacuated by the British, and tranquillity was restored.

South Carolina took an active and zealous part in framing the Federal Constitution ; was one of the eleven States that promptly adopted it ; and has ever continued a firm and zealous supporter of the government of the Union.

When was their crown governor removed, and why ?

What part did S. Carolina act under the stamp act, and in the Revolutionary war ?

When did the British first invade S. Carolina. and with what success ?

When and with what success did they make the second invasion ?

When did the British evacuate Charleston ?

What part did S. Carolina take in framing and adopting the Federal Constitution, and what is her character as a member of the Union ?

## GEORGIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Georgia ?

A. Georgia is bounded on the N. by Tennessee ; N. E. by South Carolina ; S. by Florida ; and W. by Alabama. It is 270 miles long and 250 broad ; and contains about 60,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. It is divided into 4 districts, Eastern, Western, North-

era, and Southern, which include 47 counties, viz. Appling, Baldwin, Bryan, Bullock, Burke, Camden, Chatham, Clarke, Columbia, Earley, Elbert, Emanuel, Effingham, Franklin, Glynn, Greene, Gwinnet, Habersham, Hall, Hancock, Irwin, Jackson, Jasper, Jefferson, Jones, Laurens, Liberty, Lincoln, Madison, M'Intosh, Montgomery, Morgan, Oglethorpe, Pulaski, Putnam, Rabun, Richmond, Scriven, Tatnall, Telfair, Twiggs, Walton, Warren, Washington, Wayne, Wilkes and Wilkinson. Its population is 341,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. Like Virginia and Carolina, it is entirely level about 50 or 60 miles from the sea ; it then begins to rise into broken ridges, until it includes the Appalachian chain.

Q. What are the climate soil and productions ?

A. The same as South Carolina ; cotton and rice are the staples. The tea plant has been introduced from China, and promises some success. It is supposed that coffee will flourish in Georgia.

Q. Which are the mineral springs ?

A. Those known by the name of Cobb's springs, in Jefferson county ; are so much frequented, that the accommodations form a little village. Another spring rises from the trunk of a hollow tree, and forms a white crust upon the inner surface.

Q. Which are the principal islands ?

A. Saint Catherine's, Tybee, Wassaw, Sapelo, Frederica, St. Simons', Jekyll, and Cumberland, which are generally very fertile.

Q. Which are the principal lakes and swamps ?

A. Lake or swamp, Ouaquaginagaw, (pronounced Okefognoge.) 300 miles in circumference, which is the source of the rivers St. Mary's and Juan.

Q. Which are its principal rivers ?

A. The Savannah, Ogechee, Alatamaha, Chatahooche, and others.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Savannah, the commercial capital ; Augusta, a flourishing place of inland trade, at the falls of the Savannah ; Milledgeville, the seat of government ; and Athens.

SAVANNAH, city, and port of entry, Chatham, co. Georgia, on SW. bank of the Savannah, 17 miles from its mouth ; 118 SW. Charleston, 123 SE. Augusta, 160 ESE. Milledgeville, W. 65°. Lon. 81. 10. W. —Lat. 32. 8. N. Pop. in 1810, 5,195 ; in 1820, 7,523 ; slaves 3,175 ; free blacks 582. It is situated on a sandy plain, elevated about 40 feet above low tide, and contains a court house, a jail, an alms-house, a hospital, a theatre, a public library, an academy, an exchange, three banks, including a branch of the United States bank ; and seven houses of public worship, one for Presbyterians, one for Episcopalians,

one for Lutherans, one for Methodists, one for Baptists, one for Roman Catholics, and a Jewish Synagogue.

The academy is built of brick and stone, 180 feet by 60, of three stories. The exchange is a brick edifice of five stories. The new Presbyterian church, recently erected, is a very spacious and elegant edifice of stone. The city a few years since was almost wholly built of wood, with a few elegant houses, but a large proportion of the houses recently erected, are handsomely built of brick. Savannah has heretofore been accounted very unhealthy during the summer and autumn, but the salubrity of the place is now much improved by appropriating to a dry culture, those lands in its immediate vicinity, which were formerly appropriated to the culture of rice.

The city is regularly laid out, and contains ten public squares, each consisting of two acres, with a pump in the centre. The squares and public walks are planted with china trees, which contribute much to the ornament, comfort, and salubrity of the place. Savannah is the great emporium of the state, and is a place of much trade. In nine months, ending June 30, 1817, there were exported 107,320 bales of cotton, 3,605 hhds. of tobacco, 11,228 tierces of rice; total value 9,966,503 dollars: and in 6 months, ending the 31st of March, 1818, 61,797 bales of cotton, 13,680 tierces of rice, and 1,000 hhds. of tobacco. The shipping belonging to this port, in 1821, amounted to 10,826 tons. Vessels drawing fourteen feet of water come up to the wharves; larger vessels take in their cargoes at Five Fathom Hole, three miles below the town. On the east side of the city is Fort Wayne; at Five Fathom Hole is Fort Jackson; and on Tybee island, near the mouth of the river, there is a lighthouse. On the tenth of January, 1820, 463 buildings were destroyed in this city by fire. The damage was estimated at 4,000,000 dollars. The part burnt has been since mostly rebuilt with brick, in an improved style.

Q. What is the commerce of Georgia?

A. Cotton, rice, lumber, tobacco, deer skins, corn or maize, &c. are the principal exports.

Q. What is the state of education?

A. The legislature of Georgia have adopted a general system of education, by establishing a college at Athens, styled Franklin college; and by providing for the establishment of one academy in each county; all which are to be united under the name of the Georgia University. The education or school fund of Georgia, amounts to \$500,000.

Q. What are the curiosities?

A. A bed of oystershells, near Augusta, about 90 miles from the sea; this bed commences at Eutaw springs, in South Carolina, and extends west to the Chickasaw bluffs. "It is generally believed that all the flat country, in the southern states and Florida, was once covered with the ocean."

A cataract, called Tuscan Falls, 133 feet perpendicular, in the north-west section of the State. Also a stream of water issuing from Nickojack Cave, (so called,) which has been as-



cended in a canoe, through the subterraneous passages 3 miles.

Q. What Indian tribes dwell in this state ?

A. The Cherokees dwell in the northern part, and the Creeks in the south-western section.

Q. What military stations are in this State ?

A. Forts Hawkins, Early, Gaines, and Scott.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Georgia ?

A. Georgia was originally a part of Carolina, by the patent of Charles II. to the Earl of Clarendon, and others, until the year 1732, when king George II. granted a charter to a company in England, for the settlement of that part of Georgia, lying between the Savannah and Alatamaha rivers. The company appointed Lord Percival their president, and ordered a common seal, &c. Sir William Heathcote pursued the plan, and raised a very considerable sum, among the higher orders in England, by way of contribution, and parliament gave a further encouragement to the plan, by a grant of £10,000. In the month of December of the same year, a colony of about 116 labourers, accompanied by general Oglethorpe, embarked in England, and arrived in Carolina on the 18th of January, 1733. They were soon furnished with stock, tools, rice, &c. necessary to commence their labours, and proceeded on to Georgia, where they all arrived safe ; and on the 9th of February, commenced the settlement of the town of Savannah. Carolina was very liberal in forwarding and promoting the settlement of this colony.

The trustees considered the province as a frontier, and therefore framed and adopted a feudal, or military government.

This government in Georgia proved as ruinous as the constitution of Mr. Locke had done before to Carolina : the settlers fled the province. That part of the constitution that excluded negroes and rum, was wise in itself ; but when taken in connection with the general plan, greatly facilitated the ruin of the colony. To remedy these evils, parliament augmented their grants to £36,000, to assist the trustees in carrying forward their plan ; but the colony languished. The

---

QUESTIONS.—When and to whom was the first charter of Georgia granted ?

What measures were pursued for the settlement of Georgia ?

What system of government was first adopted, and with what success ?

trustees continued to exert themselves, and one colony from the highlands of Scotland, of about 30, was transported to Georgia, and built the town of Inverness, upon the Altamaha. About the same time a colony of about 70 from Germany, embarked for Georgia, under Mr. James Oglethorpe, and commenced a German settlement. Georgia now contained about 600 settlers. But such was the character of the government, and the settlers combined, that all was distress and confusion, down to the year 1752, when the trustees despaired of success, and resigned up their charter to the crown; and Georgia became a royal government.

The King ordered a regular colonial government for Georgia, upon the plan of the other royal governments in America, and appointed John Reynolds their first governor. With the change of government a general change commenced, and Georgia began to thrive and flourish, like the other colonies. She took no active part in resisting the stamp act, after the old-French and Indian war, and did not become the 13th State in the confederacy, until some time after the revolution commenced.

In the year 1778, the British forces invaded Georgia, overran the country, and took possession of Savannah. Notwithstanding great and powerful efforts were made to dislodge them, they held possession, and continued to ravage the country to the 11th of July, 1782, when Savannah was evacuated by the enemy, as one of his first expressions of peace.

In May, 1787, Georgia co-operated with the other states in framing and adopting the Federal Constitution, and has continued a firm friend to the National Government.

---

What were the successive efforts that were made from time to time to settle Georgia, and what was the result in 1752?

What change of government then took place, and what were the effects?

What part did she take under the stamp act, and when did she unite in the war of the revolution?

When was Georgia invaded and overrun by the British, and when was Savannah evacuated?

What part did Georgia take in the Federal Government, and what is her character in relation to the Union?

## ALABAMA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Alabama?

A. Alabama is bounded on the N. by Tennessee; E. by Georgia and Florida; S. by Florida and the Gulf of Mexico,

and W. by Louisiana and Mississippi states. It is 317 miles long and 174 broad ; and contains about 46,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. It is divided into 34 counties, viz. Autauga, Baldwin, Bibb, Blount, Butler, Catacho, Clark, Conecuh, Covington, Dallas, Decatur, Franklin, Greene, Henry, Jackson, Jefferson, Lauderdale, Limestone, Lawrence, Madison, Marengo, Mobile, Monroe, Montgomery, Marion, Morgan, Percey, Pirkins, Pike, St. Clair, Shelby, Tuscaloosa, Wilcox, and Washington. Its population is 140,000.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. It is hot and unhealthy in the south, excepting about Mobile bay ; but temperate and salubrious in the middle and northern parts.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. It is mountainous on the north, excepting the vale of the Tennessee, hilly in the middle, and level on the south.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil is in general remarkably fertile, producing corn, cotton, sugar, oranges &c.\*

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. The banks of the Black Warrior abound with stone coal.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. Alabama, Tombigbee, Black Warrior, Cocsa, Tallapoosa, Perdido, and a section of the Tennessee. Within this section of the Tennessee are the Muscle-shoals, which are about 280 miles from its mouth, and about the same from the great whirl or suck, where it passes through the Cumberland mountains.

Q. Which are the principal swamps ?

A. These are numerous in the rainy season ; but they become dry generally, in dry seasons.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Mobile and Blakely, upon Mobile bay, are flourishing commercial towns ; Cahawba is the seat of government ; Huntsville and Florence, are flourishing settlements upon the Tennessee river.

---

† A gentleman from Pennsylvania, who resided several years at St. Stephen's, near Mobile bay, thus remarks : " On the same plantation I have seen the apple, cherry, orange, fig, quince, Irish potatoe, wheat, rye, buck-wheat, flax, cotton, and sugar-cane grow well ; nearly all which excel." He also adds, " the groves of white oak on the margins of rivers ; and the groves of red cedar, pine, and cypress are extensive."

**MOBILE**, city, port of entry, and capital Mobile co. Alabama, on W. side of the river of the same name, at its entrance into Mobile bay, 30 N. Mobile point, which is on the E. side of the mouth of the bay, 55 W. by N. Pensacola, 10 W. by S. Blakely, 90 by land and 120 by water S. St. Stephen's, 150 S. by W. Cahawba, 160 ENE. New Orleans, W. 1,036. Lon. 88. 21. W.—Lat. 30. 40. N. Pop. in 1813, about 140 whites, exclusive of those connected with the garrison, and a somewhat larger number of people of colour; in 1818, 1,127; 604 whites; in 1822, estimated at 2,800. It contains a court house, a jail, a bank, 2 printing offices, 2 houses of public worship, one Protestant, the other Catholic; six wharves, one hundred and ten stores and ware houses, and two hundred and forty dwelling houses. The buildings are generally of wood, and those recently erected, are mostly of two stories. The site is on a beautiful and extensive plain, elevated about fifteen feet above the level of high tides, and open to refreshing breezes from the bay, of which it commands a handsome prospect. The streets are generally of good width, and most of them intersect each other at right angles. The approach to the harbour, for vessels drawing more than eight feet of water, is circuitous and difficult. Within a low grassy island, which lies opposite to the town, there is a good shelter for vessels.

Mobile was first settled about 1700. It was taken possession of by the United States, in 1813, at which time it contained about 100 houses, mostly mean, decaying wooden buildings, of one story. It was incorporated as a city in 1819, and has become a place of flourishing commerce. During the year ending September 30, 1821, 25,390 bales of cotton were shipped from this port. The number of clearances, in 1818, was 274, and of entranees, including barges and keel boats, 360. The value of importations was estimated at upwards of 3,000,000 dollars. The shipping belonging to this district, in 1818, amounted to 2,216 tons.

Q. What is the commerce of Alabama?

A. Cotton is the staple, and the great article of export.

Q. What military stations are in this State?

A. Forts Stoddard, Claiborne, and Jackson.

Q. What Indian tribes reside in this State?

A. The Creeks, who inhabit about 30 towns or villages, and have a population of about 20,000.

Q. What is the character of this tribe?

A. They have become so far civilized as to live under regular civil laws; cultivate the mechanical arts, &c. They have made very considerable progress in husbandry, and the general improvements of civilized life.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Alabama?

A. Alabama formerly belonged to Georgia, and was in part a theatre of the well known Georgia speculation. The lands

sold at that time, lay upon and between the rivers Tombigbee and Yazoo.

In 1817, Alabama was erected into a Territorial government, and in 1819, it became a State, and was admitted into the Union.

By the late treaty with the Cherokees, known by the name of Jackson's treaty, they ceded to the United States about 17,000 square miles, lying within the State of Alabama, equal to 10,880,000 acres.

It is so far believed that most of the tropical productions will flourish near the Gulf coast, that Congress have granted 29,160 acres of land, upon the Creek cession in this State, to a company of French emigrants, on condition that they shall introduce the culture of the vine and olive. It is also in contemplation to introduce the tea-plant.

---

QUESTIONS.—What State formerly possessed Alabama, and what lands were sold under their speculation?

When was Alabama admitted into the Union?

What treaty has lately been made with the Cherokees, and what was the result?

What grant of lands has Congress made in this State and for what purpose?

What further improvements are intended?

## FLORIDA\*

Q. What are the situation and extent of Florida?

A. Florida is bounded N. by Alabama and Georgia; E. by the Atlantic ocean; S. and W. by the Gulf of Mexico and Alabama. It is about 400 miles long, and from 40 to 400 broad; and contains 45,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. These remain as when under the government of Spain, and are unknown.

Q. What is the climate?

A. The climate in many parts near the coast is tempered by the sea breezes, and the interior is represented as very similar to Georgia.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. It is generally level, excepting the peninsula, which is

---

\*Although Florida is now a Territorial government, the Author has thought proper to consider it here, because it will doubtless soon become a State, and then will hold this relation to the other states.

intersected by a limestone ridge, that extends through the middle of it.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. " The flat and sandy shores of East Florida, apparently the most barren, produce two crops of Indian corn in a year ; and orange and lemon trees grow, without cultivation, to a larger size than in Spain and Portugal, and bear better fruit." Lands bordering upon the river St. John's, and in the interior, are represented as remarkably fertile, and well adapted for large plantations. All the numerous productions common to the southern states, and the south of Europe, are cultivated in Florida. The cochineal is found here. The forests abound with live-oak, and magnolia ; the former is remarkable for the durability of its timber, and the latter for its majestic height, and beautiful flowers, 8 or 9 inches in diameter.

Q. What island lies upon the coast of Florida ?

A. Amelia Island, which has become a military station, off the St. Mary's. Also the Island of Matanzas, off the harbour of St. Augustine, which is principally solid rock, from which the fort and houses in St. Augustine, are chiefly built.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Iron, copper, quick-silver, precious stones and coal.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. St. John's is the principal river of East Florida. Appalachicola divides East and West Florida, where it falls into the Gulf of Mexico. The others are, Nassau, St. Nicholas, Corelia, St. Pedro, St. Mark's, &c.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Pensacola, the capital of West Florida, is situated upon a safe and commodious bay, and is a place of considerable trade.

St. Augustine, the capital of East Florida, is situated upon the coast, and defended by a castle, called Fort St. Mark's, and is a place of some strength. It contains about 500 houses, neatly built of stone, and a population of about 5,000.

PENSACOLA, sea port, and chief town in West Florida, on the west side of Pensacola bay, 9 miles above fort Barancas, at the entrance of the bay ; 55 E. by S. Mobile, 30 SSE. Claiborne, 145 S. Cahawba. Lon. 87. 12. W.—Lat. 30. 28. N. Pop. 1822, about 1,600 ; 1,100 French and Spanish, 500 Americans. The population is said to have once amounted to 5 or 6,000 ; but the town declined after it was taken from the English by the Spaniards, in 1761 ; since it has come into the possession of the United States, it has begun to increase. It has a spacious Spanish church and some large houses of wood and brick, but they have generally an aspect of decay. It has a pleasant situation, on a dry, sandy plain, elevated eighteen or twenty feet above the level of the ocean, and has ever been remarkable for its sa-

lubrity. Its healthiness is attributed to the breeze from the bay, and the dryness of the air, there being no swamps in the vicinity. The harbour is very excellent, safe from all winds, having 21 feet water at the entrance, gradually deepening to 7 or 8 fathoms. The bay is 15 miles long, and from 3 to nearly 7 wide, and receives the waters of the Conecuh, Escambia, and Almirante rivers. It is completely landlocked, and safe from all winds. This is the only commodious harbour for large ships, belonging to the U. States in the gulf of Mexico.

Q. What is the commerce of Florida?

A. Florida enjoyed but few commercial advantages under the Spanish government; but her commerce will soon become respectable under the government of the United States.

Q. What are the internal improvements?

A. A canal is in contemplation through the river St. John's or St. Mary's, or both, to unite the Gulf of Mexico and the Atlantic; length of the canal from 12 to 18 miles.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Florida?

A. Florida was discovered by John Cabot in 1497. It was again visited in 1502, and the romantic circumstance that led to this adventure, as related by Doctor Williamson, may not be unworthy of notice.

“It had been reported a few years after the discovery of America,” says the Doctor, that in Bimini, one of the Bahama islands, there was a fountain that had the marvellous and happy power of restoring youth and vigor to aged persons, who should bathe in its waters. Juan Ponce de Leon, a wealthy, but aged inhabitant of Porto Rico, believed the story, and sailed in quest of the grand restorative. Stretching to the west he discovered land in March, the Sabbath before Easter, which the Spaniards call Pasqua de Flores, for which reason he called the country Florida. Ponce de Leon dipped himself in every stream or fountain that he saw; no Bramin or Mahomedan could match him in ablutions, but he returned an older man. Failing in his attempts to recover youth, he resolved to increase his wealth at the expense of the natives; and for this purpose Juan Ponce de Leon, a Spaniard, obtained a commission to explore and conquer; and in 1513, he entered upon the coast of Florida, and began a settlement, which laid the foundation of the claims of Spain.”

In 1563, commodore Laudonniere sailed from France with three ships, to plant a colony in Florida. He landed in June, and built a fort upon the river St. Mary's, and left a colony of 100 men, and called it Carolina, in honour of king Charles IX.

This commenced the claims of France to Florida. The next year the Spaniards dispossessed the French and held the country until the close of the seven years war, when it was ceded to the English, in exchange for the Havanna, on the island of Cuba, by the peace of 1763, and they divided it into East and West Florida. Spain again took possession of Florida in the year 1781, and Great Britain confirmed Florida to Spain by the treaty of Paris, 1783.

In 1818, General Jackson pursued the Seminole Indians into Florida, and took possession of St. Mark's. The next year the government of the United States restored it to Spain.

In 1821, Spain ceded the Floridas to the United States, and Congress erected Florida into a Territorial government, and appointed General Jackson governor.

QUESTIONS.—When, and by whom was Florida discovered?  
 What adventure originated the name of Florida?  
 When and how did the claims of France commence?  
 When and how did the claims of Spain and Great Britain commence?  
 When was Florida restored to Spain?  
 When was Florida ceded to the U. States, and who was the first governor?

## LOUISIANA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Louisiana?

A. Louisiana is bounded on the N. by Arkansaw territory and state of Mississippi; E. and S. by the state of Mississippi and the gulf of Mexico. The eastern boundary line is formed by the river Mississippi from latitude 33 deg. to 31 deg. north, thence by the parallel of 31 deg. to Pearl river, thence by that stream to its mouth. The Gulf of Mexico forms the southern boundary, and Sabine river the western from its mouth to latitude 32 north; thence the boundary line proceeds due north to latitude 33, thence due east to the Mississippi. It is 240 miles long, and 210 broad; and contains about 48,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into 25 parishes, or commandaries, (so termed by the French,) viz. Ascension, Assumption, Avoyelles, Baton Rouge, (West,) Concordia, Iberville, Interior of La Fource, Natchitoches, co. Ouachitta, Ocatahoola, New Orleans, Plaquemines, Point Coupee, co. Rapides, St. Bernard, St. Charles, St. James, St. John Baptiste, Opelousas, co. Attakapas, co. Baton Rouge, (East,) New Feliciana, St. Helena,



St. Tammany. Its population is 153,407. A very considerable proportion of this population is French and Spanish.

Q. What is the face of the country near the Gulf of Mexico?

A. It is a low, level tract, like the country of Holland, and the Delta of Egypt, and is intersected in numerous directions by the outlets and branches of the Mississippi. The land below New Orleans, to the mouth of the river, is lower than its banks, and the country adjoining is secured against freshets by levees or dikes, as in Holland. When these are overpowered and broken down by the floods, great damage is done by the inundations.

Q. How many mouths has the Mississippi?

A. The Mississippi has six mouths, called the West, South-west, South-main, or North-east, North, and Pass a la Loure; and these contain from eight to twelve feet of water on the bars; but the clay bottom promises that the channels may be deepened with success.

Q. How is the Island of Orleans situated?

A. It is bounded on the N. and E. by the river Iberville and lakes Maurepas, and Pontchartrain; and on the S. and SW. by the Mississippi river. It is about 160 miles long, and from 3 to 50 broad.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. New Orleans is the capital, and the only town of any note.

NEW-ORLEANS, city, port of entry, and cap. Louisiana, in a parish and on an island of the same name; 105 miles by the course of the river, above the bar at the mouth of the Mississippi, and about 90 in a direct line, W. 1,260. Lon. 90. 8. W.—Lat. 29. 57. N. Pop. in 1802. 10 or 11,000; in 1810, 17,242; in 1820, 27,176. The city is on the left bank of the Mississippi, but so situated on a bend that it faces to the east. It is regularly laid out; the streets are generally 40 feet wide, and intersect each other at right angles. On the streets near the river, the houses are principally of brick, but in the back parts of the town they are mostly of wood. The buildings have no cellars, except the space between the ground and the lower floors, which are raised five or six feet from the earth. Most of the houses in the suburbs have beautiful gardens, ornamented with orange groves.

The country here is lower than the surface of the river, which is confined within its channel by an artificial embankment, called the *Levee*, raised at great expense, and extending from Fort Plaquemine, 43 miles below the city, to 120 miles above it. It is about 4 feet high, and fifteen wide. It is directly in front of the town, and affords a very pleasant walk. The city contains a court house, a jail, a market house, an arsenal, a governor's palace, a custom house, a hospital, a French theatre, an elegant English theatre, which cost upwards of 100,000 dollars, a Catholic college, a female orphan asylum, a nunnery, 3 insurance offices, 5 banks, 1 of which is a branch of the United States bank, and 3 houses of public worship; 1 for Roman Catholics,

1 for Episcopalians, and 1 for Presbyterians. There are also two chapels and a hall where public worship is celebrated. Most of the public buildings are large and handsome. The Catholic cathedral church is a large and elegant edifice. The Presbyterian church, is a spacious and handsome edifice of brick and stone.

The buildings of the city were formerly almost entirely of wood, but those recently erected are, for the most part, handsomely built of brick; and the place is of late, in various respects, very rapidly improving. The population is fast increasing by accessions from all the states in the Union, and from almost every kingdom in Europe. The French language fifteen years ago, was here almost universal, but at present the English predominates. There are five newspapers published in the city, 3 of which are printed in English, the other two both in French and English.

New-Orleans is admirably situated for trade, near the mouth of one of the noblest rivers in the world, whose numerous branches extending many hundred miles in different directions, waft to this port the products of various climates; and it is already become one of the greatest emporiums of commerce in America. The shipping belonging to this port, in 1821, amounted to 32,551 tons. The number of arrivals and clearances in a year, ending October 1st, 1815, was 623; in 1816, 699; and in 1817, 1,030. In the year ending October 1st, 1817, 1,500 flat bottomed boats, and 500 barges arrived at the city, from the upper country, bringing its productions. The exports for the year, ending October 1st, 1817, amounted to \$13,501,036,72.—The following is a view of the quantity of some of the principal articles of domestic produce, that arrived at New-Orleans in the year ending October 1st, 1817: bacon 18,000 cwt.; beef 4,000 bbls.; cotton 65,000 bales; corn 140,000 bush.; molasses 500,000 galls.; sugar 20,000 hhds.; taffia 150,000 galls.; tobacco 28,000 hhds.; flour 190,000 bbls.; lead 7,000 cwt.; wheat 95,000 bush.; whiskey 150,000 galls.

In 1819, there were 50 steam boats navigating the river Mississippi, and its tributaries, and their number is increasing.

The British made an attack on New-Orleans in December, 1814, but were repulsed by the Americans under general Jackson, with the loss of about 3,000 men, killed, wounded, and prisoners. The American army lost only 7 men killed, and 6 wounded.

The island of New-Orleans is formed by the river Mississippi on one side, and the lakes Pontchartrain and Maurepas, together with an outlet of the Mississippi, called the river Iberville, on the other. It is about 100 miles long and from 3 to 50 broad. It produces sugar, lemons, oranges, and figs.—Lake Pontchartrain communicates with the city by the Bayou St. John, which is navigable for small vessels, which pass between N. Orleans, Mobile and Pensacola. Fort St. John is situated at its entrance into the lake, 7 N. New-Orleans. Fort St. Charles is situated NE. of the city.

Q. What is the commerce of New-Orleans?

A. The commercial advantages of New Orleans surpass those of any other city in the United States. From the head waters of the Mississippi and Missouri, 4000 miles, this extensive river, with its numerous tributary streams, is designed by nature to convey the wealth of the vast interior to New Or-

leans ; but it is to be expected, that the unhealthy climate of New Orleans, together with the rapid current of the Mississippi, will turn a very considerable proportion of the wealth through the inland channels of commerce, by the way of the lakes, to New York.

Q. How is New Orleans connected with lake Pontchartrain ?

A. By a canal, at the head of St. John's creek ; the whole distance is about 6 miles, as the creek runs.

Q. What is the face of the country adjoining the river Mississippi on both sides, from N. Orleans to its mouth ?

A. As far up as Fort St. Philip, about 35 miles, the country, is mostly marsh prairie ; but the country above is secured by levees, nearly 100 miles in extent, and in general is highly cultivated.

Q. What are the soil and productions of this state east of the Mississippi ?

A. North of the river Iberville and lake Pontchartrain, the soil is remarkably fertile. The southern parts of this tract are level, and produce sugar cane, cotton, rice, indigo, &c. The northern parts are undulating ; but the whole tract is considered as the garden of Louisiana. Some planters employ more than 300 slaves, and cultivate from 400 to 1000 acres ; 2 or 300 of which are cotton.

Q. What commercial town is situated upon this tract ?

A. Madisonville, upon the northern side of lake Pontchartrain ; it is better situated for the coasting and the Florida trade than New Orleans, because it can be approached in 14 days less time, by a sea vessel, and the same can return two days sooner. Congress have established a navy yard at this place ; and the neighbouring country abounds with pine, and other timber, peculiarly favourable to the station.

Q. What is the face of the country in that section of this state that lies west of the Mississippi ?

A. The river Sabine is generally laid down as the boundary ; but the Rio Grande del Norte is the most natural, and by many, considered as the true boundary of the United States. In either case, this section of the state opens to view one of the most inviting scenes that is to be found. No part of the United States is more completely watered by majestic rivers, streams and lakes, than this ; and no part exhibits a richer soil, a finer climate, or more interesting scenery. This country is yet a wilderness, with only a few scattered settlements.

Q. Which are the principal rivers in this section of the state ?

A. Red river, Washita, Sabine, &c. with their numerous tributary streams,

Q. What are the principal prairies ?

A. Prairie Menou, Grand prairie, and Opelousas prairie. The first contains about 128,000 acres, and the last about 1,200,000 acres. Some of the most thriving settlements in Opelousas and Attakapas, are in this prairie. The former contains a population of about 5,000, and the latter a population of about 10,000. Several other valuable prairies are situated in this section of the state.

Q. When were these settlements formed, and from what do they derive their names ?

A. They were formed by the French, about the year 1750, and they derive their names from two tribes of Indians, who formerly inhabited the country.

Q. What are the productions of these parishes ?

A. Sugar in the southern section, and cotton throughout. They also raise vast numbers of horses and cattle, which run at large through the winters, on the prairies. They furnish beef, butter and cheese, in great quantities, for the New Orleans market. Sheep flourish here ; the mutton is good, but the wool is coarse.

This section of the state abounds with the greatest variety of useful and valuable forest trees, that is to be found on any portion of the globe, of the same extent. Of these forest trees, more than 50 different kinds may be enumerated.

Q. What proportion of this state is prairie ?

A. About one fifth, including the marshes upon the coast.

Q. Which are the settlements in the Northern section ?

A. Natchitoches, Rapides, and Alexandria, upon the Red river, the first is 344 miles by water from N. Orleans. Catahoula and Washita, upon the Washita ; Concordia upon the Mississippi, and Avoyelles at the mouth of Red river.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Louisiana ?

A. About the middle of the 17th century, De la Salle traversed the Mississippi river, and explored the country, and called it Louisiana. This name embraced the country upon both sides of the river, and France continued to claim it down to the peace of 1763, when she relinquished all her claims to Louisiana, on the east of the Mississippi, except New Orleans, to Great Britain ; and on the west to Spain. Great

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Louisiana first explored, and why is it so called ?

What claims did France relinquish to Great Britain and Spain in 1763 ?

Britain ceded her claims to the United States, by the treaty of Paris, 1783.

Spain held possession of western Louisiana and N. Orleans, until she ceded it to France, by the treaty of Ildefonso, in 1802. In 1803, France ceded Louisiana to the United States for \$15,000,000. Congress divided it into two sections, termed Upper and Lower Louisiana, or the Territory of Missouri, and the Territory of Orleans. In 1812, the Territory of Orleans became a state, and was admitted into the Union, under the name of Louisiana. It was invaded by British army in 1814. (For further particulars, see page 47 of this work.)

---

When and in what manner did the U. States purchase the claims of Spain to Louisiana?

When did congress divide the country?

When did the Territory of Orleans become a state, and by what name?

When did Great Britain cede her claims to the U. States?

## MISSISSIPPI.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Mississippi?

A. Mississippi is bounded on the N. by Tennessee; E. by Alabama; S. by the Gulf of Mexico and Louisiana state, and includes all islands within six leagues of the shore; and W. by the river Mississippi and the state of Louisiana. It is about 340 miles long and 150 broad; and contains about 47,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into 17 counties, after the manner of Virginia, viz. Adams, Amite, Claiborne, Covington, Jackson, Franklin, Greene, Hancock, Jefferson, Lawrence, Marion, Monroe, Perry, Pike, Warren, Wayne and Wilkinson. Its population is 75,448.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. It is generally level, excepting the northern section, which is intersected by the Appalachian mountains.

Q. What are the climate, soil and productions?

A. The climate is mild and healthy. The soil is fertile, like Alabama. The productions are sugar, cotton, tobacco, indigo, Indian corn, wheat, rye, barley, oats, sweet and Irish potatoes; also, apples, pears, figs, pomegranates, plums, grapes, oranges, &c. Cotton may be cultivated as a staple throughout the state; but it is not a safe crop north of 35 deg.; nor the sugar-cane north of 30 degrees.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Mississippi, Yazoo, Black, Pearl, and Pascagoula.

Q. What is the extent of the Mississippi ?

A. The Mississippi river rises in lat. 47 deg. 47 min. N. and lon. 95 deg. 6 min. W. amidst lakes and swamps, dreary and desolate beyond description, and after a S. E. course of about 600 miles, reaches the falls of St. Anthony, in lat. 44 deg. N. where it descends perpendicularly 30 feet. From these falls to the junction of the Missouri, in lat. 38 deg. 27 min. N. the distance is 1,030 miles, and from the junction of the Missouri to its mouth, in the gulf of Mexico, is 1,395 miles, making the whole length of the river more than 3,000 miles. It is navigable for boats of 40 tons to the falls of St. Anthony. Ships seldom ascend above Natchez.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Natchez is the principal commercial town ; Jacksonville is the seat of government ; the other towns of note are Washington, Monticello, Warren, Winchester, Woodville, Greenville, Port Gibson, and Liberty ; the latter is a place of considerable trade.

NATCHEZ, city and port of entry, Adams co, Mississippi, on E. bank of the Mississippi, 322 above New Orleans, by the course of the river, 427 above the mouth of the stream. 669 below the mouth of the Ohio, 346 below St. Louis, 1613 below Pittsburg, 150 by land NW. New Orleans, 90 W. Monticello, 430 SW. by S. Nashville, W. 1,263. Lon. 91. 25. W.—Lat. 31. 34. N. Pop. in 1810, 1,511 : in 1820, 2,184 : slaves 356. It is much the largest town in Mississippi, and has till lately been the seat of government. It consists of two parts, the upper and lower towns ; the former is situated on the margin of the river ; the latter, which is the principal part, on ground elevated about one hundred feet above high water mark in the river. The city is regularly laid out in the form of a parallelogram, the streets intersect each other at right angles, but the site on which it is built is very uneven. It contains a court house, a jail, a market house, a bank, an academy, two printing offices, and two houses of public worship ; 1 for Roman Catholics, and 1 for Presbyterians.

Some of the houses are elegant, but they are mostly of wood, and of only one story. To enable the inhabitants to enjoy the evening air, almost every house has a piazza and balcony. The gardens are ornamented with fig trees, plums, peaches, and grape vines. It is a healthy trading town, well situated for a commercial depot, having a fertile and well cultivated country in its rear, which produces great quantities of cotton.

Q. What is the commerce of Mississippi ?

A. It is flourishing, and will doubtless become very extensive. Ships of any burden ascend to Natchez.

Q. What is the state of learning ?

A. It is fast improving. There is a college at Washington, founded in 1802, and another at Shieldsborough, which was established in 1818.

Q. What tribes of Indians reside within this State, and what is their character ?

A. " Three tribes of Indians reside in the State of Missis-

ssippi; the Chickasaws, Cherokees, and Choctaws. The Chickasaws consist of about 6,000; 1800 of which are warriors. They are the proprietors of several millions of acres of excellent land, lying between the Tennessee and Mississippi rivers, besides four reserved tracts, from one to four miles square. They have always professed the strongest friendship for the United States; and their fidelity has on trying occasions proved unquestionable. Some of the Chickasaw chiefs own many negro slaves, and annually make sale of hundreds of horned cattle and hogs. They occupy eight towns, and have attained to a considerable degree of civilization.

“The Cherokees are more numerous; their population being estimated at 11,000; 4,000 of which are warriors. They possess a spacious tract, east of lands owned by the Chickasaws, on the south side of the Tennessee, and between that river and Tombigbee. The Cherokees have made considerable progress in the knowledge of the useful arts; particularly in the manufacture of cotton and woollen cloths. They possess more than 500 looms of their own workmanship; and more than 500 ploughs, which they employ in the cultivation of their lands. They own large stocks of cattle and horses; also, swine, sheep, &c.; and a plenty of poultry.

“Thus supplied abundantly with the means of good living, these tribes are increasing in numbers. By the schools that have been established among them, their children have been taught to read and write; and their progress in acquiring the elements of the sciences has fully equalled the whites, with the same means of learning. Many of the men, and all the women, have adopted the modes of dress worn by the whites. Their persons are remarkably clean and neat, and their numerous streams of pure water, afford them the facilities of bathing, which they are in the constant habit of practising; all can swim. The Cherokees all believe in one God; they call him the Great Spirit, and speak of him with great reverence. They have no combination of terms in their language that is expressive of profanity towards the Great Spirit.

“The Choctaws are more numerous than the Cherokees; they occupy the lands between the Yazoo and Tombigbee, and the parallels of 31 deg. and 34 deg. north. The banks of the Chickasaka, Yazoo, Pascagoula and Pearl rivers, are inhabited by them. They have several neat public inns, for the accommodation of travellers, and they very generally resemble the Cherokees in their improvements. In times past, they occupied 43 towns and villages, containing about 12,000

souls ; 4,000 of which were warriors. It is supposed at present, that their tribe is considerably more numerous."

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Mississippi ?

A. The early history of this State is so interwoven with, and so much resembles the history of Louisiana, as to render particular details unnecessary. This State formerly belonged to Georgia, and under that government become the theatre of a noted speculation. In 1790, the Legislature of Georgia sold a large tract of land, lying chiefly in the centre and western parts of this State. The four original companies sold their lands principally in the eastern and middle states. The Legislature of Georgia caused the records of the act of sales of these lands to be burnt in their presence, in the year 1796, and the sales were considered as a nullity. The contracts, however, among the speculators, were considered as valid in law, which involved them in general distress and ruin.

About the year 1820, Congress, after long and repeated solicitations, took up the subject, and granted some relief to the sufferers ; but it was too late to be of much benefit to the original speculators.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is the connection between the history of Mississippi and Louisiana ?

What noted speculations took place in this state, and when ?

When did congress grant some relief to the sufferers under the Georgia speculation ?

## Western States and Territories.

### TENNESSEE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Tennessee ?

A. Tennessee is bounded on the N. by Kentucky and Virginia ; E. by N. Carolina ; S. by Mississippi, Alabama, and Georgia ; and W. by the Mississippi river. It is about 400 miles long and 100 broad ; and contains 40,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. Tennessee is divided into 2 sections, and 48 counties ; viz. Anderson, Bledsoe, Blount, Campbell, Carter, Claiborne, Cooke, Granger, Greene, Hamilton, Hawkins, Jefferson, Knox, M'Minn, Marion, Monroe, Morgan, Rhea, Roane, Sevier, Sullivan, and Washington, in the eastern section ; Bedford, Davidson, Dickson, Franklin, Giles, Hardin, Hick-



man, Humphries, Jackson, Lawrence, Lincoln, Montgomery, Maury, Overton, Perry, Robertson, Rutherford, Shelby, Smith, Stuart, Sumner, Warren, Wayne, White, Williamson, and Wilson, in the western section. Population 422,813.

Q. What is the climate?

A. It is mild and salubrious; cattle run at large throughout the winter.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. The eastern part is mountainous; but the western part is more level.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Cumberland and Clinch mountains, branches of the Allegany range. The first divides the state into two sections.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil upon the rivers is fertile, and generally good throughout the state, except upon the mountain ridges. The productions are cotton, tobacco and hemp, principally; all the various kinds of grain common to the western states flourish; and grazing is an important branch of husbandry.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Gold, silver, lead, iron, coal, alum, copperas, ocre, nitre and sulphur.

Q. What is the situation of their salines?

A. These are numerous, and sufficient to supply the state.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Mississippi, and Tennessee, with its tributary streams, the Cumberland, Forked Deer, &c. (see the map.)

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Knoxville, is the capital of East, and Nashville, the capital of West Tennessee; but Murfreesborough is the seat of government; the other towns of note, are Clarksville, Greenville, Jonesborough, &c.

NASHVILLE, post town, and cap. Davidson co. Tenn., on S. side of the Cumberland; 32 NW. Murfreesborough, 110 N. Huntsville, 190 W. Knoxville, 250 SW. Lexington, 430 NE. by N. Natchez, W. 727. Pop. 3 or 4000. Lon. 87. 8. W.—Lat. 35. 45. N. It is pleasantly situated, regularly laid out, and contains a court house, a jail, a market house, 2 banks, a young ladies' academy, a public library of 1,200 volumes, a cotton and woollen manufactory, a rope walk, 2 distilleries, and 3 houses of public worship; 1 for Presbyterians, 1 for Methodists, and 1 for Baptists. It is a thriving and wealthy town, the largest in the state, and is situated in a fertile and populous country, and has a flourishing trade. Two newspapers are published here. There is a steam-boat navigation from Nashville to New Orleans. The Cumberland is navigable to this place for vessels of thirty or forty tons, nine months in the year, and at certain times for ships of four hundred tons. The distance to Nashville from New Orleans, by land, through

Natchez, is 586 miles. A road is opening through Madisonville, distance 480 miles.—Cumberland college was incorporated here in 1816, and a building about 90 feet long, and 3 stories high, was erected; but the college has not gone into operation, and a grammar school is kept in the building.

KNOXVILLE, post town, and cap. Knox co. Tenn., on the Holston, 4 miles below the mouth of French Broad river, and 22 above the junction of the Holston with Tennessee river; 134 WSW. Abingdon, 190 E. Nashville, 190 S. Lexington, 455 WSW. Richmond, W. 538. Lon. 83. 44. W. — Lat. 35. 4. N. Pop. in 1818, about 1,400. It is pleasantly situated, regularly laid out, and contains a courthouse, a jail, a state bank, an academy, barracks sufficient to accommodate 700 men, 2 printing offices, from each of which is issued a weekly newspaper, and 3 houses of public worship; 1 for Presbyterians, 1 for Baptists, and 1 for Methodists. It is the largest town in East Tennessee, and was formerly the seat of the state government. Hampden Sidney Academy in this town, is a respectable seminary. A college, styled Blount, or East Tennessee college, was established in this town several years since, and a president first elected in 1821.

Q. What are the manufactures and commerce of Tennessee?

A. Cotton hemp, flax, and iron, are among her manufactures, and her trade with New Orleans and the neighbouring states, is very considerable.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. It is improving. They have four colleges, viz. one at Nashville, one at Knoxville, one at Greenville, and one in Washington county.

Q. What are the curiosities?

A. Several remains of ancient fortifications. Several streams of water, which are lost in subterraneous currents. Also, the enchanted mountain, so called; here are imprinted the footsteps of men, horses, bears, turkeys, &c. upon the solid surfaces of smooth, flat rocks, as distinctly marked as upon snow: some of these impressions are unusually large.

Q. What are their peculiar dimensions and characteristics?

A. The foot of a man measures 16 inches in length and 13 in breadth, across the toes. One track of a horse measures 10 by 8 inches; and they all have the same direction.

Q. What is the texture of these rocks?

A. Soft, and much like the soap-stone.

Q. What nations of Indians dwell in this state?

A. The Cherokees which extend into the state of Mississippi, where they have been described. The Chickasaws possess the western border, upon the Mississippi river.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Tennessee?

A. It was formerly visited by that people who constructed the ancient fortifications of this state, as well as those men-

tioned in the several other states, and who also left a monumental record of those engravings upon the rocks of the enchanted mountains, and numerous others which are found in other states. It is most probable that this people were a part of the Mexican colony, who attempted to settle the western country, but were overpowered by the natives and lost.

Tennessee was claimed by North Carolina, and by her ceded to the United States, in 1789. It was erected by congress into a Territorial government, in 1790; and admitted into the Union in 1796. The rise and progress of Tennessee have been remarkably prosperous; almost without a parallel. She furnished a full share of those heroes that fought under general Jackson, and with their rifles repelled the attack of the British upon New Orleans, Dec. 1814. The Tennesseans are a brave, hardy, and industrious people. Although the first settlers were mostly Scots, Irish, and Germans, from Virginia and Pennsylvania, with a few English, their national character is fast assimilating and blending.

- 
- QUESTIONS.—What people are supposed formerly to have possessed this state, and why?  
 What state formerly claimed Tennessee, and when was it admitted into the Union?  
 What is the general character of Tennessee?

## KENTUCKY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Kentucky?

A. Kentucky is bounded on the N. by Ohio river; E. by Virginia; S. by Tennessee; and W. by Mississippi river. It is about 400 miles long, and 200 wide in the broadest part; and contains about 60,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. Kentucky is divided into 67 counties, after the manner of Virginia, viz. Adair, Allen, Barren, Bath, Boone, Bracken, Brackenridge, Bourbon, Butler, Bullet, Clarke, Casey, Campbell, Christian, Cumberland, Clay, Caldwell, Davies, Estill, Fayette, Franklin, Fleming, Floyd, Gallatin, Grant, Greenup, Greene, Grayson, Garrard, Hart, Harlan, Henry, Harrison, Henderson, Harden, Hopkins, Jessamine, Jefferson, Knox, Livingston, Lewis, Lincoln, Logan, Mason, Mercer, Madison, Monroe, Muhlenburgh, Montgomery, Nicholas, Nelson, Ohio, Owen, Pulaski, Pendleton, Rockcastle, Scott, Shelby, Simpson, Trigg, Todd, Union, Wayne, Washington, Warren, Whitley, and Woodford. Population 564,317.

Q. What is the climate?

A. It is generally mild and salubrious throughout the state. Cattle can usually subsist without fodder through the winter.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. It is undulating, but not mountainous. Caves and caverns are numerous.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Cumberland branch, which divides Kentucky from Virginia.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil is remarkably fertile, and the productions such as are common to the middle states. Hemp and tobacco are the staples. On the grazing farms large droves of cattle and swine are raised for market. The grape is indigenous, and is very considerably cultivated. The forests abound with all the rich variety of forest timber found in the United States. Among these, are the coffee tree, sugar maple, papaw, cucumber and magnolia. The flowering trees and shrubs are so numerous as to cause the forests literally to blossom as the rose.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Iron is the principal; marble in all its variety is abundant; also, a crystal, that is semi-transparent, of a rhomboidal form, and possesses a peculiar refracting power.

Q. What are the salines?

A. These are called Licks; the principal of which are on Licking river, at Big Bone Lick, or at Saltsburg.

Q. What quantity of salt is annually produced at the Licks?

A. In 1816, it amounted to 500,000 bushels.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Mississippi, Ohio, Cumberland, Tennessee, Greene, Elkhorn, Licking, &c.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Lexington is the capital of Kentucky; Frankfort is the seat of government; Louisville is a place of very considerable trade and manufactures. Newport is a flourishing town, as well as many others in the state, too numerous to mention.

LEXINGTON, post-town, and cap. Fayette co. Kentucky; 22 E. S. E. Frankfort, 74 E. Louisville, 85 S. Cincinnati, W. 552. Lon. 85. S. W.; Lat. 38. 16. N. Pop. in 1810, 4,226; in 1820, 5,267. It is situated on Town Fork, a small stream which falls into the south branch of the Elkhorn. It is regularly laid out, and contains a court house, a jail, a hospital, two market houses, a theatre, a masonic hall, a museum, a public library of 6,000 volumes, a female academy, having in 1822, five teachers and 160 pupils, a university, three banks, one of which is a branch of the United States bank, 6 printing offices, from four of which is issued a newspaper, and nine houses of public worship; three for Presbyterians, one for Episcopalians, one for Baptists,

three for Methodists, and one for Roman Catholics. Lexington has had a very rapid growth. In 1797, it contained only about 50 houses. It is the largest town in Kentucky, and one of the most wealthy and best towns in the western states. The houses are mostly of brick, and the streets are paved and have side walks; the principal one is about 30 feet wide. Near the centre of the town is a public square, surrounded with brick buildings.

This town contains various and extensive manufacturing establishments, among which are four nail manufactories, two copper and tin manufactories, two steam paper mills, a number of large rope-walks, cotton and woollen manufactories, distilleries, a brewery, &c. The site on which the town is built is a gentle descending valley, which is one of the most fertile tracts in the United States. The climate is healthy and delightful, and in the vicinity there is a number of handsome country seats. The surrounding country is greatly admired for its rich and beautiful scenery.

Transylvania university was incorporated with the rank of a university in this town, in 1793, and was newly organized in 1813, since which it has been very flourishing. There are two college edifices of brick, one of which is calculated to accommodate 100 students. The library contains 6,000 volumes. The legislative government is entrusted to a board of seventeen trustees. The university comprises three departments, first of law, with one professor; second of medicine, with five professors; third of literature and general science, with four professors, besides the president: one of natural philosophy, geography, chronology and history, one of ancient languages, one of mathematics, and one of natural history and botany; and two tutors. Law students in 1822, 46; medical students 138; undergraduates 138; members of the preparatory school 62; total 332. Of the undergraduates 54 were irregular members, who recited with the classes, but were not candidates for degrees. Commencement is held on the 2d Wednesday in July, after which there is a vacation till the 1st of October.

Q. What are the commerce and manufactures of this state?

A. The commerce of the state is very considerable, and principally through New Orleans; hemp, cotton, duck, cordage, salt, salt-petre, leather, &c. are among their manufactures and exports. The amount of manufactures in 1810, exceeded \$5,000,000.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. Kentucky has one college at Danville, and another at Lexington, styled Transylvania University, comprising a medical institution and a law school, and is the most flourishing literary establishment in the western states. The library contains more than 6,000 volumes, and the philosophical apparatus is complete. Primary schools are very general in all the towns in this state, and the mass of the people have the means of instruction.

Q. What are the natural curiosities?

A. The caves and caverns are worthy of notice, particularly those in which great quantities of salt-petre are found.

One cave or cavern is found in Roekcastle county, so large that a yoke of oxen with a cart can be driven through the base of a hill, half a mile in extent. In the county of Warren is another that has been explored seven miles, without finding the extremity. A substitute for lamp oil has been found in their bituminous fountains. Mammoth cave, so called, has been explored 10 miles, and comprises in one apartment an area of 8 acres, with an arch 100 feet in height; this cave abounds with nitre, and the air is remarkably salubrious. The banks of Kentucky river present to the view of the traveller, in many places, solid walls of limestone, more than 300 feet perpendicular, with lofty elevations rising above, to the height of more than 1200 feet more.

Q. What other curiosities have been found?

A. A mummy has been found in a cave, and carefully preserved. Engravings have been found upon large flat rocks, that resemble the Hebrew character, and are supposed to be Phœnician; but this cannot be ascertained, because that language is lost.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Kentucky?

A. The six nations from the north claimed the district of country, now known by the name of Kentucky, as a part of their hunting grounds, and often extended their excursions over this range. The Cherokees from the south had the same claims, and ranged over this region in their hunting excursions. Collisions often took place between the parties, and bloody wars ensued, which gave to the country an Indian name, signifying the *bloody grounds*.

Virginia purchased the claims of the six nations, at the treaty of Lancaster and Stanwix, in 1768. Colonel R. Henderson purchased the claims of the Cherokees, in 1775; but these treaties and purchases did not secure the first settlers against the harassing excursions of the Indians.

In 1773, Colonel Daniel Boone explored this country, and commenced a settlement. In 1775, he moved with his family, and several others, into Kentucky. In 1777, Virginia erected it into a county. In 1778, the settlers joined Colonel

---

QUESTIONS.—What nations of Indians formerly claimed Kentucky, and what were the consequences?

When and by whom were the lands first purchased?

When and by whom were the first settlements made?

Clark, who was sent out from Virginia against the French and Indian settlements of Upper Mississippi, and overrun and took the whole, from the Ohio to the Illinois. On his return he dispossessed the French of their fort and settlement at Vincennes, and brought into submission the adjacent tribes. Colonel Clark returned to Kentucky, and rallied the settlers against the Shawnee, Delaware, and Mingo tribes, upon the Miami and Scioto rivers, laid waste their settlements, and dispersed the Indians; all of which kindled a savage war, that continued to rage, with very little intermission, down to the peace of Greenville, in 1795, about 17 years. During this period, the settlements of Kentucky, and upon the Ohio generally, were often very much distressed. In 1782, Virginia erected this county into a district, with a regular judiciary, open to appeals to the superior courts in Virginia. In 1785, Kentucky became an independent state, and in February, 1791, was admitted into the Union.

Kentucky entered with spirit into the late war with England, and although her territory was not invaded, yet she suffered severely by the loss of many of her brave sons in the Indian war.

---

When and how did the first Indian war commence.

When was Kentucky first erected into a state, and admitted into the Union?

What were the effects of the late war upon Kentucky?

## OHIO.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Ohio?

A. It is bounded on the N. by Michigan and Canada line, through the centre of lake Erie; E. by Pennsylvania and the Ohio river; S. by Ohio river; and W. by Indiana. It is about 216 miles square; and contains about 48,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions?

A. It is divided into 59 counties, viz. Adams, Ashtabula, Athens, Belmont, Brown, Butler, Champaign, Clark, Clermont, Clinton, Columbiana, Coshocton, Cuyahoga, Darke, Delaware, Fairfield, Fayette, Franklin, Gallia, Geauga, Greene, Guernsey, Hamilton, Harrison, Highland, Hocking, Huron, Jackson, Jefferson, Knox, Lawrence, Licking, Logan, Madison, Medina, Meigs, Miami, Monroe, Montgomery, Morgan, Muskingum, Perry, Pickaway, Pike, Portage, Preble, Richland, Ross, Sandusky, Scioto, Shelby, Stark, Trumbull,

Tuscarawas, Union, Warren, Washington, Wayne and Wood; and these contain 742 towns.

Q. What is the population of this state ?

A. By the census of 1820, it amounted to 581,434, about double the population of the State of Connecticut at that time, and exceeding that of Massachusetts. Such a rapid settlement is without a parallel.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. It is mild and salubrious ; but the winters are more severe than in Kentucky, especially in the northern section.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, and productions ?

A. The northern parts, near the lake, are marshy in some places, and the interior is generally level ; but the southern section, bordering upon the river Ohio, is hilly and broken. The bottom lands upon the principal rivers are very fertile, especially near the Miami and Scioto. There are many rich prairies in this state. The various kinds of grain peculiar to the northern and middle states, flourish in Ohio ; and 100 bushels of corn per acre are often raised.

Q. Which are the minerals ?

A. Iron, coal, white and blue clay, suitable for manufactures ; free stone, &c.

Q. Which are the salines ?

A. These are as numerous as in Kentucky, and sufficient for the consumption of the state, under any degree of population.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. Ohio, Muskingum, Hockhocking, Scioto, Great and Little Miami, on the south ; Maumec, Sandusky, Cuyahoga and Grand rivers, on the north.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Columbus, the capital, and near the centre of the state ; Cincinnati, the largest city, except New-Orleans, in the western country. The other rich and flourishing towns are too numerous to be detailed.

CINCINNATI, city, and cap. Hamilton co Ohio, on N. bank of the Ohio, 20 miles above the mouth of the Great Miami, 122 above Louisville, 465 below Pittsburg by water, and 300 by land ; 85 N. Lexington, 98 W. by S Chillicothe, 109 S. W. Columbus W. 504.—Lon. 84. 27 W.—Lat. 39. 6. N.—Pop. in 1805, 500 ; in 1810, 2,540 ; in 1812, 6,500 ; in 1820, 9,642. Buildings in 1819, 1,690 ; 432 of brick, 1,458 of wood ; dwelling houses 1,303.

The city is divided into four wards, regularly laid out, and well built, and its situation is pleasant, healthy, and considerably elevated. It contains a court house, 3 brick market houses, 4 banks, a lancasterian school, a public library of 1,400 volumes, a medical college, instituted in 1820, 10 places of public worship, a hospital, a museum, 4 printing offices, a steam mill, 87 feet by 62, of 9 stories, 1 woollen and



4 cotton manufactories, 2 glass houses, a sugar refinery, 2 breweries, a type foundery, an air and brass foundery, also the building of the Cincinnati Manufacturing Company, which is 150 feet by 37, of 4 stories, besides other manufacturing establishments. The funds of the Lancasterian seminary have lately been increased by a subscription of 30,000 dollars, with a view of erecting it into a college. Mathematics, natural philosophy, chemistry, and the learned languages are now taught here.

Cincinnati was first laid out in 1788, and began to flourish after 1794, since which time its growth in population, wealth and trade, has been exceedingly rapid, and it is now the largest town in the western country above New-Orleans.

Q. What are the commerce, manufactures, and aggregate wealth of this state?

A. They surpass those of any other state west of the mountains. Cotton yarn, cotton and woollen cloths, are among their large manufacturing productions; but horses, cattle, swine, whiskey and flour, are the principal articles of exportation. About 50,000 swine were driven from this state over the mountains, into the Atlantic states, in the year 1810. In 1815, the assessment of property in Ohio, as revised by the principal board of assessors, amounted to \$61,347, 216.

Q. Which are the contemplated canals?

A. One from the head waters of the Maumee to the Warbach; & one from the Cuyahoga to the Muskingum. see p. 18.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. This is flourishing. The general government have granted three townships, six miles square, out of the public lands, for seminaries of learning; and one mile square, near the centre of each township, for the benefit of common or primary schools. The legislature have appropriated two entire townships to the Ohio University, and located the same at Athens. The nett annual revenue of this college is about 2,300 dollars, and increasing. The Miami and Cincinnati Universities have been incorporated; the former has a revenue of 2,300 dollars, and increasing; but the latter is supported by private donations.

Q. What military posts are in this state?

A. Forts Washington, Defiance, Loramies and Meigs; the last is noted for sustaining a siege of the British and Indians, in 1813. Fort Recovery, built by General Wayne, on the ground where general St. Clair was defeated, in 1791. Fort Greenville, an old fortress, rendered memorable for the treaty of Greenville, in 1795.

Q. Which are the antiquities and curiosities?

A. Several fortifications of the same stamp as those of New York, Pennsylvania, &c. Such is their antiquity, that they

are covered with a growth of the heaviest timber; and their origin is beyond the reach of Indian tradition.

Q. Where are they situated and what are their dimensions?

A. Northerly from Hardenburg, one half mile from the Miami, on the top of a hill, about 150 feet above the base, is a fortification inclosing ten or twelve acres. The wall of earth, from four to five feet high, does not conform to any exact figure; but is regulated in its direction by the extremities of the level ground around the top of the hill, at the highest points of declivity, in an irregular form, so as to enclose all the level ground. There are two or three gate ways. On the south, near where the hill is very steep, within the fort, is a considerable mound; and on the south side of the hill, about one third of the distance from the base to the top, is a spacious highway, more than 50 feet wide, remarkably level and straight; the excavation on the upper side of which, is in some parts twelve or fifteen feet deep. This highway extends in length, on the side of the hill 160 rods; each end terminates at points where the declivity was gentle, and the ascent to the fortification easy; within which are two considerable artificial cavities. The numerous human bones, washed bare by the rains on the sloping places, indicate that the population was great. The monuments of antiquity of this description, found in this and the neighbouring states, and extending down into Mexico, are too numerous for the limits of this work.

Q. What other curiosities are found in this state?

A. A copper coin has been dug up four feet beneath the surface of the earth, near the Little Miami, with the stamp of an old Persian character; and a stump of a large tree with evident marks of an axe, at Cincinnati, 94 feet below the surface of the ground. Also, inscriptions have been found upon large, flat rocks, supposed to be Phœnician, because they so much resemble the Hebrew and Chaldaic.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Ohio?

A. This section of the Union was formerly claimed by Virginia and Connecticut, by virtue of their original patents, which embraced all lands west, within their parallels of latitude, to the Pacific ocean. In 1789, these states ceded their claims to Congress, reserving to Virginia her military bounty lands, situated between the Little Miami and the Scioto and reserving to Connecticut 3,000,000 of acres on the north-east

section of the state of Ohio. About the same time, the Ohio company commenced the settlement of Marietta, under Rufus Putnam esq. ; and John Cleves Syme commenced his settlement at the mouth of the Great Miami ; and soon after, fort Washington was built upon the Scioto ; and the settlement of Cincinnati was begun near the mouth of Little Miami. The Indian wars that soon after commenced, checked the progress of these settlements, until the treaty of Greenville, in 1795. Since that time the settlements of this north-western territory have been prosperous without a parallel.

Ohio was erected into a state and admitted into the Union 1802. In 1818, Ohio purchased of the Indians a tract of land, on the north-west corner of the state, amounting to 4,000,000 of acres ; the land is considered of a quality equal to any in the state, both for cultivation and commerce.

---

QUESTIONS.—What states formerly claimed Ohio? Upon what conditions did they relinquish their claims? When and by whom were the first settlements made? What treaty settled a permanent Indian peace? When was Ohio erected into a state and admitted into the Union? When and to what amount was the last purchase of the Indians made?

## INDIANA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Indiana?

A. Indiana is bounded on the N. by Michigan lake and Territory ; E. by Ohio, S. by Ohio river ; and W. by Illinois. It is 280 miles long, and 150 broad ; and contains 40,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into 14 counties, viz. Clark, Crawford, Davies, Dearborn, Decatur, Delaware, Dubois, Fayette, Floyd, Franklin, Gibson, Greene, Harrison, Henry, Jackson, Jefferson, Jennings, Knox, Lawrence, Marion, Martin, Monroe, Morgan, Owen, Orange, Perry, Pike, Parke, Posey, Putnam, Randolph, Ripley, Scott, Spencer, Sullivan, Shelby, Switzerland, Vanderburg, Union, Vigo, Wabash, Warwick, Washington and Wayne. Population 147,178.

Q. What is the climate?

A. The climate is much the same as that of Ohio.

Q. What are the face of the country, and soil?

A. The country near the river Ohio is hilly, and the interior is undulating, interspersed with rich prairies ; and on the streams the soil is productive. Small lakes are numer-

ous ; 38 lakes, from 2 to 10 miles in length, have been laid down on maps.

Q. What are the productions ?

A. The productions of this state correspond with those of Ohio. *Vevay* was granted by congress to a company of Swiss, upon an extended credit, to encourage the cultivation of the grape. The settlement commenced in 1805. In 1815, about 100 hogsheads of wine were made in the village ; some vineyards have produced 1000 gallons. The grapes of *Madeira* and the *Cape of Good Hope* have flourished best. The wine is well flavoured, and keeps through the summer without distilled spirits, and improves by age.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Iron, coal, &c. ; salt-petre and Epsom salts are found in a cave near *Big Blue* river, in large quantities.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The *Ohio* ; *Wabash*, with its tributary streams ; *White River*, and *White Water*. The *Illinois* and *Maumee* rise in *Indiana*.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. *Vincennes* is the oldest and largest town ; *Indianapolis* is the seat of government ; *Vevay*, *Harmony*, *Washington*, *Harrison*, *Corydon*, *Wabash*, *Springville*, *Clarksville*, *Greenville*, *Madison*, and others, are flourishing towns.

*VINCENNES*, post town, and cap. Knox co. *Indiana*, on E. bank of the *Wabash*, 100 miles from its junction with the *Ohio*, in a direct line, and nearly 200 miles by the course of the river ; 120 W. by N. *Louisville*, 140 E. *St. Louis*, 150 N. E. *Kaskaskia*, W. 726. Lon. 82. 23 W.—Lat. 40. 29. N. Pop. in 1810, 883. It contains a court house, a jail, a land office, a bank, an academy, a library of 700 volumes, a Roman Catholic chapel, and two printing offices, from each of which is issued a weekly newspaper. The plan of the town is handsomely designed ; the streets are wide, and cross each other at right angles. It contained in 1813, about 150 dwelling houses, some of which are built in good style, but the most of them are small and scattering. Every house is furnished with a garden. This town has considerable trade in furs and peltry. *Vincennes* was first settled by the French from *Lower Canada*, in 1730. Buried in the recesses of the wilderness, remote from civilized society, and having constant intercourse with the *Indians*, the inhabitants approximated in their manners and appearance to their savage neighbours. They have, however, greatly improved since their adoption into the American family.

Q. What is the state of agriculture and manufactures in *Indiana* ?

A. In some parts agriculture is extensively as well as successfully managed. Near the *Wabash* some farmers have raised in one year, from 4 to 10,000 bushels of corn, and other kinds of grain, potatoes, &c. in proportion. The soil is so rich in this, and many other parts of this state, that crops of

Indian corn have been raised in succession for 50 years, without any diminution.

*Harmony* is the seat of a society by that name, who emigrated from Pennsylvania, and hold all things in common; their agriculture and manufactures flourish remarkably well.

Q. What are the internal improvements?

A. The legislature of Indiana, in 1818, incorporated a company, with a capital of \$1,000,000. with permission to raise 100,000 more by lottery, for the purpose of extending a canal by the falls of the Ohio, between Jeffersonville and Clarksville. In 1819 they commenced their labours, and have most probably finished their undertaking. The advantages of this canal will be incalculable to the navigation of the Ohio.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. In 1816, congress granted one thirty-sixth part of each township for the support of schools. One entire township, or 23,000 acres, worth \$10 per acre, for the support of a college; which has since been located at Vincennes, and a large brick building is erected for the accommodation of the institution.

Q. What military posts are in this state?

A. Forts Wayne, Adams, Recovery, Harrison, Jefferson and Knox.

Q. What are the curiosities?

A. A large stream of water, called Lost river, which sinks into the earth and disappears. Also, several springs that issue from the rocks, which are never failing streams, and on which mills are built. Also, a large cave in the southern section, that affords a great abundance of Epsom salts.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Indiana?

A. Indiana was first explored by La Salle, a Frenchman, from Canada, in the year 1680. In the year 1735, a company of French came out from Canada, and settled the town of Vincennes, on the Wabash. This settlement commenced, and continued in the heart of an Indian country, and the settlers so far assimilated with the Indian manners and customs, as to become more than half savage until this country began to be settled by the English after the peace of Greenville, in

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Indiana first explored? When and by whom was it first settled?

1795. Vincennes has now become an enlightened, rich, and flourishing town.

Indiana has shared with Ohio in the distresses of Indian wars; first, from the expedition of general Harmer, in 1790, to the treaty of Greenville, in 1795; next, from the invasion of the British, in 1813, to the close of the war in 1815. Since that time, Indiana has flourished, and her settlements have rapidly progressed.

In 1818, 8,500,000 acres of land were added to this state by a purchase from the Indians, lying in the northern section of the state. This purchase affords incalculable advantages to Indiana.

---

What were the consequences of this settlement?

What wars have distressed Indiana, and what is her present situation?

When and to what amount was the last Indian purchase made?

## ILLINOIS.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Illinois?

A. Illinois is bounded on the N. by the N. W. Territory; E. by lake Michigan and Indiana; S. by the Ohio river; and W. by the river Mississippi. It is about 347 miles long and 200 broad; and contains about 52,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into 25 counties, viz. Alexander, Bond, Clark, Crawford, Edwards, Fayette, Franklin, Gallatin, Green, Hamilton, Jackson, Jefferson, Johnson, Madison, Monroe, Montgomery, Pike, Pope, Randolph, St. Clair, Sangamon, Union, Washington, Wayne and White. Population 55,211.

Q. What is the climate?

A. The climate is mild and salubrious, excepting in such parts as are contiguous to wet prairies, and stagnant waters.

Q. What are the face of the country and soil?

A. The face of the country is generally level, interspersed with numerous prairies, & variegated by gentle swells of hill & dale. The prairies are various; some are low and wet, and form the sources of the streams; others are more elevated, and exceedingly fertile. They yield wild grasses from two to six feet high, which make excellent fodder for cattle. The lands upon the Wabash, below fort Harrison, to its mouth, are enriched by the freshets of that river, to the distance of two or three miles in width, in some places.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The only elevations in this state, are the Rocky hills, in the north-west.

Q. What are the productions ?

A. Wheat, rye, oats, corn, barley, buck-wheat, &c. flourish well throughout Illinois; cotton, tobacco and grapes, grow in the southern section. The numerous prairies enable the farmer to raise stock easier here than in any other state.

Q. Which are the minerals ?

A. Iron, copper, coal, &c.

Q. What is the state of their salines ?

A. These are numerous throughout the state, and of great value, particularly those near Shawneetown.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. Mississippi, Ohio, Illinois, Kaskaskia, Wabash, and Rock.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The towns are all small. Vandalia is the seat of government. Some of the other most considerable towns, are Edwardsville, Kaskaskia, and Shawneetown. The great Bank of Illinois, with a capital of two millions of dollars, is at Shawneetown.

VANDALIA, post town, and capital of Illinois, in Fayette co. on the west side of the Kaskaskia, 100 miles above its junction with the Mississippi, 65 NE. St. Louis, 95 NNE. Kaskaskia, 125 NW. Shawneetown, W. 808. Lat. 38. 40. N. Pop. in 1822, 600. It is handsomely situated, on ground elevated sixty feet above low water mark, and was laid out in September, 1819. The streets are eighty feet wide, intersect each other at right angles, running north and south, east and west, and in the centre is a public square of eight acres. It contains a state house, which is a large building of wood, a state bank, a jail, a printing office, and about 200 buildings. It is supplied by eight large springs of excellent water. Here is a bridge across the Kaskaskia. The river is navigable eight months in the year, for boats drawing six feet of water, from its mouth to the distance of about sixty miles above Vandalia. The edifice of a public seminary is to be soon erected at this place, which has been endowed by congress with a township of land, consisting of 23,000 acres.

Q. What are the manufactures of Illinois ?

A. These are wholly confined to domestic employment.

Q. What are the exports ?

A. Grain and provisions.

Q. What are the internal improvements ?

A. Congress have appropriated one hundred thousand acres of land to effect a canal to unite the head waters of the Illinois, with the head waters of the Chicago, which falls into Lake Michigan, which will connect the navigation of the Mississippi with the Hudson, through the lakes, and the great

western canal of New York. A company is incorporated, with a capital of one hundred thousand dollars, to unite the Ohio with the Mississippi, by a canal at America, eight miles above its mouth.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. It is altogether in its infancy. The state has appropriated certain portions of each township for the support of schools, and has raised a fund for a college.

Q. What are the antiquities?

A. On the north-west bank of the mouth of the Wabash is a remarkable cave, called the Great Cave, which is one of the most noted natural curiosities on the Ohio; the entrance is spacious and singularly uniform.

Ancient fortifications and mounds, similar to those found in Kentucky, Ohio, and Indiana, are also met with in Illinois.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Illinois?

A. Illinois was first discovered by Marquette as early as 1671, by the way of the lakes. It was also a part of the interior discovered by La Salle, in 1680. The French commenced the settlement of this country at Kaskaskia, Cahokia, and several other villages, soon after the discovery of Marquette, and about the time of the discovery of La Salle. When the revolutionary war commenced in 1775, the village of Kaskaskia contained about 700 inhabitants; but now there are 160 houses. In 1778 the governor of these French settlements excited the Indians to commit depredations upon the settlements in the back parts of Virginia, and Colonel Clark was sent out with a force to subdue them. He traversed the desert 1200 miles, surprised these settlements, took them, administered the oath of allegiance to the inhabitants, and sent their governor into Virginia. The Indians became quiet for a time. Illinois was a part of the N. W. Territory, until it became a Territorial government in the year 1800. It became a state, and was admitted into the Union, in 1812. The same year in August, the Commissioners of the United States met the chiefs of the Kickapoo Indians, at Edwardsville, and made a purchase by treaty, of ten millions of acres of land, lying between the Illinois river on the north-west, the Kaskaskia

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Illinois first explored and settled?

When and by whom were these settlements conquered?

When did Illinois become a state and a member of the Union?



on the south-east, the Kaskakee on the north-east, and the Mississippi on the south-west. These lands remain unsold by government. Illinois, with the river Mississippi on the west, the Ohio on the south, the Wabash and lake Michigan on the east, possesses commercial advantages that must ultimately render her one of the most flourishing states of the west.

When and to what amount was the last Indian purchase made?  
 What are the commercial advantages of Illinois?

### MICHIGAN.\*

Q. What are the situation and extent of Michigan?

A. Michigan is bounded on the N. by lake Superior; E. by the line of Upper Canada; S. by Indiana and Ohio; and W. by Illinois and the N. Western, or Wisconsin Territory. It is about 280 miles long and 174 broad; and contains about 35,000 square miles.

The true boundary is as follows, viz. The southern boundary begins about 15 miles from the southern bend of lake Michigan, thence due east to the line between Indiana and Ohio; thence on that line south to 41 deg. 31 min.; thence due east over the Maumee to lake Erie, about sixteen miles from Sandusky bay.

The eastern boundary from the southern line, traverses the head of lake Erie, through the middle of the rivers Detroit and St. Clair into lake Huron; through the middle of that lake to the mouth of the strait of St. Mary into lake Superior, and through the middle of that lake, until it cuts a line drawn perpendicular from the southern bend, of lake Michigan, over its middle waters across into lake Superior; which perpendicular is the western line of Michigan.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into seven counties, viz. Wayne, Macomb, Mackinaw, Monroe, Brown, Crawford and Oakland. Population 8,896.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil and climate?

A. It is one body of table-land, free from mountains, and interspersed with numerous prairies. Many of these prairies are of a rich soil, others are sandy and barren; but the

\* Although Michigan is still a Territorial government, the Author has considered it in this place, because it will undoubtedly soon become a state, and this will be its most proper connection with the other states.

timber in this peninsula is remarkably good. The climate is mild in summer, but cold and severe in winter, as in Upper Canada. It is generally considered not so healthy as Ohio and Indiana.

Q. What islands belong to Michigan?

A. The island of Mackinaw, in the straits of Mackinaw, which is about seven miles long, and of an elliptical form; on a summit of 150 feet, and 100 yards from the shore, stands fort Holmes, one of the strongest stations in the western country. Morilou, Beaver, and Gross islands, belong to Michigan.

Q. Which are the lakes and bays?

A. Michigan includes one tenth of lake Erie; one third of Huron; a small part of lake Superior and about one half of lake Michigan. Northwardly from Detroit is a cluster of small, but beautiful lakes, that measure from 100 to 1000 acres each; they give rise to several small rivers, which flow into the great lakes. The bays are Maumee, Sagand and Thunder. (See the map.)

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. At the head of lake Erie is the Raisin, rendered famous for the defeat of general Winchester, in January, 1813. The other rivers or streams of note, are the Huron, the Rouge, &c. The St. Joseph rises near the tributary streams of the Maumee, and falls into the southern parts of lake Michigan. It is said a canal might unite the St. Joseph and Maumee, and thus connect lakes Erie and Michigan, which would greatly shorten the distance into the west.

Q. Which are the principal straits?

A. Detroit, St. Clair, St. Mary, and Mackinaw.

Q. What is the situation of Detroit strait?

A. Detroit strait connects lake St. Clair with lake Erie; is 28 miles long and 1100 yards wide at Detroit, and navigable for vessels of any burden.

Q. What is the situation of St. Clair strait?

A. It connects lake St. Clair with lake Huron; is 50 miles long, and is as deep as Detroit strait, excepting a sand bar at its mouth, and a rapid at its head; both of which are passable with some difficulty.

Q. What is the situation of the strait of St. Mary?

A. It connects lakes Huron and Superior. At the head of the strait, the falls of St. Mary obstruct the passage of vessels, but boats pass and repass without difficulty or danger.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Detroit, the capital, Mount Clement, Mackinaw, Monroe, Brownstown and Frenchtown.

DETROIT, city, port of entry, and capital Michigan Territory, in Wayne, co. on W. side of the river Detroit, between lakes St. Clair and Erie, 18 N. of the W. end of the latter, and 9 S. of the former, 300 S. by E. Michilimackinac. 302 W. by S. Buffalo, W. 566. Lon. 82. 58. W.—Lat. 42. 24. N. Pop. in 1810, 770, in 1820, 1,422, exclusive of the garrison. It is finely situated, regularly laid out in a square, 3-4 of a mile on each side, with spacious streets, having an elevation of about 10 feet above the river, of which it commands beautiful views. It contains a council house, a penitentiary, a market house, a bank, an academy, an arsenal, a government store house, a magnificent Catholic church of stone, a Presbyterian church, a lyceum, a bible society, and several other associations. The town is defended by fort Shelby; and the barracks adjoining are capable of quartering several regiments. In 1819, there were 142 dwelling houses, and 131 stores, public buildings, &c. Several of the buildings are of brick and stone, but they are mostly of wood and painted, and there is a general appearance of taste and neatness. It is advantageously situated, and has a considerable and growing commerce, and is a place of importance in the fur trade. It has twelve attorneys and eight physicians. It was wholly destroyed by fire in 1805, but the streets have been since laid out regularly and wide, and the town built in an improved style. The shipping belonging to this port in 1818, amounted to 849 tons; the value of exports 62,330 dollars; imports 15,611 dollars.—Detroit was settled by the French from Canada as early as 1683. In 1818—19, the average temperature at Detroit, was for November, 43 deg.; December 25 deg.; January 30 deg.; February 33 deg.; in Albany, N. Y. the same year, January 22 deg.; February 29 deg.

Q. What are the antiquities of Michigan?

A. The remains of ancient fortifications and cemeteries are found here, as in the other western states.

Q. What is the zoology of Michigan?

A. The animals and fowls of Michigan are such as are common to the western country; but their numbers surpass those of any other section. Wild animals are exceedingly numerous in the forests; and wild fowl abound to such a degree in the lakes, rivers, and bays, that their squalling, added to the noise of their wings, render them very accessible to the hunter.

Q. What Indian tribes dwell in Michigan?

A. Chippewas, Miamies, Wyandots, and Ottawas: in the whole about 3,000. These tribes all have villages, and till the ground; but the Ottawas are the most civilized.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Michigan?

A. The forts and villages of Detroit and Michilimackinac, were built by the French from Canada, in the early part of the 18th century, as military posts to protect the fur traders,

who visited the interior country. They also formed links in the great chain of military posts between Quebec and New Orleans. It is not unusual for 7 or 800 traders to assemble at Mackinaw in the months of June and July, annually. France ceded these posts to Great Britain, in connection with Canada, at the peace of Paris, 1763; Great Britain ceded them to the United States, at the treaty of Paris, 1783; but they were not delivered up until after the treaty of London, by Mr. Jay, in 1794, and the peace of Greenville in Indiana, in 1795. In 1796 it was formed into a county, and called Wayne.

In the year 1800, it was formed into a Territorial government, and general Hull became governor. On the 16th of August, 1812, Detroit was taken by the English, at the commencement of the late war. On the 28th of September 1813, general Harrison, at the head of the North Western army, recovered Detroit, and it was confirmed to the United States by the peace of Ghent, February, 1815.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and for what purpose were the military posts in this Territory built?

What number of traders generally assemble there annually?

When did France cede this Territory to Great Britain?

When did Great Britain cede it to the United States, and when were they put in possession?

When did it become a Territorial government?

When was Detroit taken by the English?

When and by whom was it retaken, and to whom was it confirmed at the peace of Ghent?

## MISSOURI.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Missouri?

A. Missouri is bounded on the W. and N. by the territory of Missouri; E. by the Mississippi, which separates it from Illinois, Kentucky and Tennessee; and S. by Arkansas Territory. The boundary line beginning at the mouth of the Des Moines, proceeds up the river to the rapids, thence due W. till it meets the meridian that passes through the mouth of the Kansas, thence due S. down that meridian to the parallel of lat. 36. 30. N. thence due E. to St. Francis river, down that river to the parallel of lat. 36. N., thence due E. to the Mississippi. Mean length from N. to S. 280 miles; mean breadth from E. to W. 220; and contains 63,000 square miles.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population ?

A. It is divided into 28 counties, viz. Boone, Callaway, Cape Girardeau, Cole, Cooper, Chariton, Franklin, Howard, Gasconade, Jefferson, Lillard, Lincoln, Madison, Montgomery, Clay, Saline, Scott, St. Francis, New Madrid, Perry, Pike, Ralls, Ray, St. Charles, St. Genevieve, St. Louis, Washington, and Wayne. Population 66,586.

Q. What are the face of the country and climate ?

A. Missouri is variegated with high table-lands, mountains, and prairies ; but almost destitute of timber ; the climate is mild and serene : much the same as that of Kentucky.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Ozark mountains stretch into this state. Also, a range of hills between the head of the St. Francis and the Missouri rivers, which terminate in a bluff about twenty miles above the mouth of the Ohio. These are the first high-lands that appear on the west bank of the Mississippi, from its mouth ; a distance of 1136 miles. This range of hills divides Missouri into two distinct, natural sections.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil in general, is remarkably fertile throughout the state. The productions are cotton, hemp, tobacco, and the various kinds of grain.

Q. Which are the minerals ?

A. Lead, coal, silver, iron, marble, slate, and plaster of Paris. It is believed that more extensive lead mines are situated in this region than in any other part of the world. Those which are wrought, extend about sixty miles between the St. Francis and the Marameck rivers. More than 1000 tons of lead are produced annually from these mines, by the labour of about 500 men.

Q. Which are the salines ?

A. The salines of the Missouri state are the most extensive of any that have yet been discovered. This tract lies west of the lead mineral tract, and runs parallel with it. At the salines on the Osage, a greater quantity of the bones of the Mammoth, and other animals now extinct, have been found, than at any other salines in the western country.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Mississippi and Missouri, with their numerous tributary streams. (See the Atlas.)

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. St. Louis is the capital ; Winchester, Jackson, St. Genevieve, Potosi, Herculaneum, Franklin, Madisonville, and others, are thriving towns.

St. Louis, post town, St. Louis co. and the chief town of Missouri, on W. bank of the Mississippi, 18 miles by water below the junction of the Missouri, and 14 above that of the Merrimack, 30 below that of Illinois, 200 above that of the Ohio, 1,180 above New Orleans, about 1,100 below the falls of St. Anthony, W. 89. 36. Lon. 89. 36. W.—Lat. 38. 36. N. Pop. in 1810, 1,600; in 1820, 4,598; labourers 635; mechanics 470; engaged in commerce 92; grocers and tavern keepers 49; clerks and agents 106; lawyers 23; physicians 15. The situation of the town is elevated, pleasant, and healthy. The ground on which it stands rises gradually from the first to the second bank. Three streets run parallel with the river, and are intersected by a number of others at right angles. The town extends along the river about two miles.

The second bank is about 40 feet higher, than the plain on which the town is chiefly built, and affords a fine view of the town and river. On this bank stood the fortifications, erected in early times for the defence of the place. They consist of several circular towers, 20 feet in diameter, and 15 in height, a small stockaded fort, and a stone breast work. The courts are held in one of the buildings of the fort, and another is used for a prison. The town contains 3 houses of public worship, a land office, a brewery, 2 water mills, a steam mill, a museum, 2 banks, a theatre, and 2 printing offices, from each of which is issued a weekly newspaper. The houses are mostly of wood, but many are built of stone, and are white washed; but few of them are handsome. Most of the houses are furnished with a large garden.

St. Louis was first established in 1764. It is at present in a state of rapid improvement, fast increasing in population and trade. Its situation is advantageous and interesting, being more central with regard to the whole territory belonging to the United States, than any other considerable town; and uniting the advantages of the three great rivers, Mississippi, Missouri, and Illinois, with their numerous branches, and possessing unrivalled facilities for an extensive trade, it will probably become a large city, and be the centre of an extensive commerce. The country around and west of St. Louis, for the distance of 15 miles, is an extended prairie of a very luxuriant soil.

Q. What are the manufactures and commerce of Missouri?

A. Lead is the only manufacture, except domestic; but their commerce with New York, Philadelphia, Pittsburg and New Orleans, in lead, cattle, and peltry, is very considerable. The time cannot be far distant when St. Louis will become the great central mart between New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, and New Orleans, and Astoria, at the mouth of the Columbia river; or, when Astoria will become the great central mart between India, China, and St. Louis; or between the eastern and the western world.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. It is in its infancy; almost every thing remains to be done.

Q. What are the antiquities and curiosities?

A. A continuation of such as have been described in several of the states, both east and west of the Alleghenies; particularly in Ohio and Illinois.

"Near St. Louis is a curious work, much admired, called the *fallen garden*. It suggests to the spectator the idea of a situation for assembling the people for public councils."

These numerous monuments of antiquity, which extend from the interior of New York, in a south-western direction, through the western states down into Mexico, all serve to shew the existence of a numerous population, who dwelt in these regions ; but whose history is lost beyond the remotest ages of tradition.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Missouri ?

A. The settlements of the French at St. Louis, St. Genevieve, &c. commenced soon after La Salle explored the country, in 1680 ; but their history forms a part of the chapter of all the other French settlements in this region ; they could not flourish until they came under the jurisdiction of the United States, and enjoyed the blessings of a free government, and a free religion ; since that time they have begun and will continue to flourish. Not only Missouri, but all the region of Western America will flourish, and become populous, prosperous and happy, so far as the blessings of a free government and religion shall extend, and no further. Missouri became a state and was admitted into the Union in 1821.

---

QUESTIONS.—When, where and by whom was this state explored and settled ?

What is the general history ?

### ARKANSAW TERRITORY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Arkansaw Territory ?

A. It is bounded on the N. by Missouri ; E. by the river Mississippi ; S. by Louisiana state ; and W. by Missouri Territory. It is about 250 miles square ; and contains about 60,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. Arkansaw Territory is divided into 7 counties, viz. Lawrence, Phillips, Arkansaw, Pulaski, Clark, Hempstead, and Miller ; these contain 36 towns. Population 14,273.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, climate and productions ?

A. The eastern section upon the Mississippi is level, and in some parts marshy ; the interior is mountainous, and the western parts are elevated. Many of the prairies, and interyaes near the rivers, are covered with a deep, rich soil,

except in the western parts, which are dry and sterile. The climate is various, but generally mild and salubrious. A region upon the White river, of about 150 miles square, is remarkably fertile: it produces cotton, tobacco, and all the various kinds of grain; limestone and marble abound. It is remarkable healthy.

Q. Which are its principal rivers?

A. The Mississippi, Arkansaw, St. Francis, Washita, Red, and Black, with their numerous tributary streams. (See the atlas.) Several of these rivers are navigable for boats 4 or 500 miles in a direct course, or 10 or 1200 by the course of the rivers.

Q. What are the mineral springs?

A. The hot springs near the Washita, are so celebrated that in 1812, more than 300 invalids visited them. These springs issue from the south side of a high bluff, are thirty in number, and the largest does not exceed six inches in diameter; they will boil an egg hard in fifteen minutes. Near these springs has been found a quarry of oilstone, resembling the Turkey stone.

Q. Which are their salines?

A. About 100 miles below the forks of White river, salt works are established upon a saline, that is very copious; and there are numerous others in the territory.

Q. Which are the principal settlements?

A. Arkansaw, upon the river of the same name, is one of the oldest settlements in the territory, and now begins to assume a flourishing aspect; and has hitherto been the seat of government, but Little Rock has been fixed upon to succeed it. Among the other small towns are Davidsonville, and Cadron.

LITTLE ROCK, post town, and seat of government of Arkansaw Territory, in Pulaski co., on the south bank of the Arkansaw; about 150 miles from its mouth by land, and 300 by water, W. 1,237. Lat. 34. 34. N. It is situated on a bluff, on which is a rock, the first that is seen in ascending the river, and from this rock it takes its name. It was commenced in 1820, and though the population is yet small, it is the most important town in the territory, and contains the offices of government, a land office, a printing office, and several trading houses.

Q. What are the curiosities?

A. The high prairies in the south-west section, are very generally covered with oyster and other sea shells, some of which extend two or three feet below the surface.



## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Arkansaw?

A. This country was explored by the French, and they erected the trading post of Arkansaw, about forty miles up that river, early in the 18th century; but this settlement, like all the other French settlements, progressed very slowly. Since the country has fallen under the jurisdiction of the United States, the settlements progress rapidly.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Arkansaw explored and settled?

What is its general history?

## MISSOURI TERRITORY.

Q. What are situation and extent of this Territory?

A. Missouri Territory lies west and north of Arkansaw and Missouri, and extends west to the Rocky mountains; and north to the British line, or the 49th degree of north latitude.

Q. What are the face of the country, climate, &c.?

A. The face of the country is very various, abounding with extensive plains, prairies, and mountain ranges; and intersected by large and numerous streams and rivers. The climate is mild in the south and cold in the north.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Rocky mountains form the western boundary. A few degrees east of these lies the Chippewan range, or Black mountains, like the Blue ridge of the Allegany. The Masserne, or Ozark range, is a branch of the Chippewan range, that runs between the Arkansaw and Red rivers, in a parallel direction, from 39 to 34 degrees of north latitude; then winding a NE. course, it divides, and the northern branch extends to the head waters of the Osage, and the southern branch nearly follows the course of the Arkansaw river to its mouth. The hot springs upon the Washita, rise from a spur of this range. A range of hills from the northern branch of the Masserne range, extends in a north-easterly direction to the banks of the Mississippi, about 20 miles above the mouth of the Ohio, and divides the waters of the Missouri, from the waters of the Mississippi, and forms the great mineral tract that extends between those rivers. (See the atlas.)

The Chippewan range, in its northern course, sends off numerous other spurs, that give rise to the numerous streams that flow from the south-west into the Missouri. (See the atlas.)

Q. Which are the principal rivers that water this region?

A. The Missouri, with its numerous tributary streams; a particular description of which may not be uninteresting.

“This river rises in the Rocky mountains, in latitude 43 deg. 31 min. : and west longitude 34 deg. 45 min. ; it has three principal head branches, navigable for some distance, called Jefferson, Madison, and Gallatin. From its junction with the Mississippi to the great falls, is 2,575 miles, and is navigable without interruption ; from thence to the Jefferson, the largest branch, is navigable 521 miles, which is distant from its confluence with the Mississippi 5096 miles, and from thence to the gulf of Mexico 1315 miles : total 4191 miles ; a greater extent of navigable waters than is to be found on any other stream upon the globe. The cataracts of the Missouri are second only to those of Niagara, the most stupendous in the world ; the descent of the former being 362 feet in 18 miles ; the first great pitch is 98 feet, the second 19, the third 45, and the fourth 26. The width of the river is about 350 yards.

Q. Which are the tributary streams of the Missouri, and what is the general character of the country?

A. (See the tributary streams upon the map of the United States.) “From the mouth of the Missouri to the La Platte, lat. 41 deg. a distance of more than 600 miles, the land is generally of good quality, and timber is tolerable plenty ; in many places the soil is rich and the country pleasant. From the mouth of the Missouri to the mouth of the Kansas, the river does not vary more than the half of a degree from due east : a distance of 340 miles as the river runs. From the Kansas to the great northern bend at Shannon’s creek, lat. 43 deg. the course of the river is about southeast, and the distance by water 720 miles. From thence to the Mandan villages, lat. 47 deg. 23 min. it makes nearly a right angle, and flows south through 4 1-2 degrees of north latitude, by water 455 miles. From the confluence of the river La Platte, for 1500 miles up the Missouri, the soil becomes less productive ; and except on the bottoms, the land of an ordinary second rate quality ; the surface generally void of timber ; rather hilly, but not mountainous, and with few rocks or stones. A surface and soil of this description is said to extend to a great distance from the river, on each side ; the country exhibiting the appearance of a grand prairie, or rather barren, overspread with a short, thick grass, interspersed with innumerable flowers, that blossom and decay in succession through the season, from spring to autumn. The whole exhibiting a most fanciful and de

lightful view from the hills. The great parent of rivers (Missouri) winding his course in his majestic march, and pouring his waters from numerous tributary streams, that bend their circuitous courses among the hills; while thousands of elk, deer and buffalo, are seen grazing, unconscious of danger, in these unfrequented walks of civilized man. This region, though not generally eligible for the purposes of agriculture, is unquestionably well fitted for the rearing of numerous droves of horses, cattle and sheep."

Q. What are the curiosities of this region?

A. Upon the Yungar river is a perpendicular fall of 90 feet. Between the forks of the head waters of the Kansas, lies the Grand saline, so called. "It is a hard level plain, of a reddish coloured sand, of an irregular figure, being in circumference full thirty miles. From the appearance of drift wood scattered over this plain, it would appear that the whole was occasionally overflowed by the surrounding streams. This plain is entirely covered in dry hot weather, with a crust of beautiful clean, white salt, of a quality rather superior to the imported blown salt; which forms a striking resemblance to a field of new fallen snow, succeeded by rain, with a light crust upon the top. Nothing can be more picturesque on a bright sunny morning than this natural curiosity."

The gates of the Rocky mountains; here the river is compressed to the width of 150 yards by perpendicular rocks that rise to the height of 1200 feet, for the distance of five miles; and for more than three miles, a man cannot stand between the water and the rocks.

About 200 miles below the falls of Missouri are natural stone walls, that rise perpendicularly, in some parts, nearly 300 feet, and have the regular appearance of art in many places.

Castle Rock, at the foot of the Rocky mountains, rises to a great height, with a level summit. It exhibits to the view, at a distance, lofty columns, porticoes, and arches, with all the regular appearance of an artificial structure, and often astonishes the traveller.

Q. What animals are peculiar to this region?

A. "The Grizzly bear. He is strong as the lion and terrible as the tiger of Bengal. He does not, like other animals, flee from the approach of man, but pursues him; and so dreadful is his approach, that his destruction by an Indian warrior is more honorable than the scalp of an enemy. He is nearly four times the size of a common bear. The dimen-

sions of one killed by Lewis and Clark, 2000 miles up the Missouri, are as follows, viz. round the head, 3 feet 5 inches; round the neck, 3 feet 11 inches; length of talons, 4 1-2 inches. The weight of the largest has been known to exceed 1200 pounds. He is the king of the forest. He is rarely seen in a lower latitude than 45 degrees.

“The Antelope, a species of deer, is a beautiful animal. He is small and goes in flocks of several hundreds, on the Missouri, above La Platte. The Indians take them by driving the flocks into the water, and then falling upon them with clubs.

“The mountain sheep, so called; to which animal they have but little resemblance, except in their feet and horns; the latter of which are enormously large, being two feet in length, and 4 or 5 inches in diameter. They are larger than the deer, have a fine, soft hair; are coloured white on the rump; but elsewhere are of a dun hue. They are shy, and clamber and graze upon the most perilous precipices of the mountains.

“Hares, grey in summer and white in winter, are often seen in this region.

“The Prairie Dog, a curious animal, is found in this region. It is about one third larger than the fox squirrel, has a thick, clumsy head, large jaws, full large eyes, small ears, a long body, short legs, and a delicate small tail. The hair is short and sleek, of a light grey, except on the belly, which is white. The towns (for so they are called) inhabited by this animal, are frequently more than a mile in length, on the large prairie 300 miles west of the Mississippi, on the slope of hills, and distant from water courses. They burrow in the earth, and secure themselves from their enemies by barking an alarm, and fleeing to their burrows. The wolves have declared war against these republics, and often make great havoc among the feeble, inoffensive citizens.”

Q. What is the number of Indian tribes that dwell in this region; their population, &c.?

A. They are generally estimated at about 70 tribes. Their population is about 102,000, and their number of warriors about 28,000. They have suffered very severely within a few years by the ravages of the small-pox; and their numbers have been greatly diminished. They were formerly much more numerous.

Q. What military posts are in this territory?

A. Fort Calhoun, at the Council Bluffs, and Fort Mandan; at the Upper Mandan village.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Missouri Territory ?

A. This vast region was explored to the head waters of the Missouri, by Clark and Lewis, under the patronage of president Jefferson, during his administration, and it has since been explored by others ; but such is the dreary, and uninviting aspect of the country, that no settlements have been made, except a few military establishments for the protection of trade. It will probably remain in the quiet possession of the natives for centuries to come.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who explored the Missouri Territory, under the patronage of president Jefferson ?  
How far did they explore this territory ?  
Are there any settlements in this territory ?

## TERRITORY OF WISCONSIN, OR NORTH-WEST TERRITORY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of this territory ?

A. It is bounded on the N. by the 49th deg. of north lat. of British America ; E. by Michigan and Upper Canada ; S. by Illinois ; and W. by the river Mississippi. It is about 420 miles north and south, and 510 east and west in the widest part. It contains about 180,000 square miles.

Q. What is the population ?

A. The whole tract is possessed by Indians, except the French settlements upon Fox river, and at the mouth of the Wisconsin ; all which cannot exceed 1000.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil and climate ?

A. The country is undulating, but not mountainous ; the southern parts and the borders of the rivers and streams, are fertile, but the northern parts are barren. The French settlements upon the Fox river, produce wheat, corn, potatoes, &c. with large stocks of horses and cattle ; the soil and timber are remarkably good. The climate is hot in summer, and cold in winter ; much like the climate of Upper Canada.

Q. What valuable natural production is found here ?

A. Wild rice. " This plant grows through water from four to seven feet deep, but does not take root in a hard, sandy bottom ; the blades shoot up from four to eight feet above the surface of the water, and the branches above the water have the appearance of oats. When in the milk the Indians bind the heads together to secure them from birds ; and when ripe they paddle a canoe along side of the branches, and upon a

spread blanket beat out the grain. The squaws soon fill their canoes. The grain is said to be as nutritious and as palatable as the true rice."

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Iron, copper and lead, in great abundance; also, copperas and alum.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. Mississippi, Ouisconsin, Fox, and several others, which run east, west, and north. "In the northern parts of this territory, and near to each other, are the head sources of three great rivers, viz. the Mississippi, the St. Lawrence, and the Red or Nelson's river of Hudson's bay, all flowing in different directions, and pouring their waters into distinct oceans, at a vast distance from each other." (See the atlas.)

Q. What are the antiquities and curiosities?

A. An ancient fortification, four feet high and nearly one mile in extent, just below lake Pepin, on the east branch of the Mississippi, may be very distinctly traced; its form is a regular circle; the flanks extending to the river; the angles are still definitely prominent, and appear to be fashioned with great art. Others have been found in different parts of the territory.

"On the eastern bank of the Mississippi has been found a curious cave, about 30 miles below the falls of St. Anthony. The entrance is about 10 feet wide, and the height 5. The arch within, nearly 15 feet high and about 30 broad; the bottom is fine sand. Within 20 feet from the entrance is a transparent lake, extending to an unknown distance. A pebble thrown into the lake causes an astonishing reverberatory noise. Indian hieroglyphics are engraven upon the walls."

Q. What Indians possess this territory?

A. The Menonomies, Winnebagoes, Foxes, and Chippeways.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of this territory?

A. Of this very little is known. The French settlements on the Fox and Ouisconsin rivers, commenced before France ceded Canada to Great Britain; but the English had no knowledge of this region until it was explored by captain John Carver, soon after the peace of 1783.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom were settlements first made on the Fox and Ouisconsin rivers?

When and by whom did the English first obtain a knowledge of this region?

## WESTERN TERRITORY, OR TERRITORY OF COLUMBIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of this region?

A. It is bounded on the N. by the parallel of 54 deg. 30 min. of north lat. by a late treaty with Russia; E. by the Rocky mountains; S. by the parallel of 42 deg. north lat.; and W. by the Pacific ocean. It is about 800 miles long and 500 broad; and contains about 400,000 square miles.

“The sea coast, unlike that of the Atlantic, opens no great bays, or mouths of large navigable rivers, except the Columbia, to aid the transportation of agricultural productions, and to facilitate commerce. That great river, with its four great branches, spreads out in different directions, to a vast extent, and drains this spacious region, besides extending some of its ramifications far beyond, both to the north and south.

“The northern branch, which retains the name of Columbia, draws its head waters from near the Frozen ocean. Clark’s river, interlocking with the head streams of the Missouri, of which some of the extremities of each are separated by a space less than 300 rods, flows in a broad circuitous route, in the form of a half circle, a little flatted, and disembogues into the Columbia about latitude 48 degrees.

“Lewis’ river rises near the source of the Yellow Stone, and winding its long route in a course more angular, meets the main river, about 120 miles below the former junction, in latitude 46 degrees. The eastern branch, by the name of Multnomah, draws its head waters from the same mountain, which gives rise to two other great rivers—the La Platte of Missouri, and the Colorado of California, that flow to different oceans, 2,000 miles apart. The Multnomah unites with the Columbia, through a mouth 500 yards broad, in latitude 46 deg. 20 min.; from whence the latter, which is here more than a mile wide, after flowing about 100 miles, still widening in its progress, to a space of five miles, pours its multitude of waters into the Pacific ocean, in the latitude of 46 deg. 15 min. This river is navigable 200 miles from the ocean, without any obstruction; beyond that distance, are several precipitous rapids; here it is one mile in width. Both this river, and all its tributaries, are most abundantly supplied with Salmon, and various other kinds of fish.

“About 100 miles from the sea coast, a ridge of mountains extends parallel therewith, on each side of the Columbia, north and south, for several hundred miles; and between this

ridge and the Rocky mountains, the country is extremely broken and hilly, but occasionally interspersed with beautiful rich vallies ; a large portion of the whole surface being almost destitute of wood. Here are many fine streams of water, and much of the country is well adapted to the raising of cattle and sheep. Of the latter a species running wild in the woods are sometimes found with fleeces of beautiful fine wool. In many places clover, timothy, flax, currants and strawberries, grow spontaneously.

“Columbia valley, west of the lowest rapids, is said to be many miles wide, and 70 miles in length. It is represented as very beautiful, possessing a rich soil, and much of it shaded by fine groves of timber. The climate on the sea coast is stated to be incommoded with excess of moisture in the atmosphere, and drenching rains through the winter season. Farther to the east, the climate is pleasant, being much milder than the same parallel of latitude on the shores of the Atlantic.

“The Indians are extremely numerous on the waters of the Columbia, being supposed to amount to nearly 100,000.”

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of this region ?

A. The coast on the Pacific had been explored by captain Cook, and others, but the interior had never been explored until it was explored by captains Clark and Lewis, under the patronage of president Jefferson in the year 1805. These adventurers ascended the Missouri to its sources ; crossed over the Rocky mountains, and explored the rivers that bear their names, and descended the Columbia to its mouth. They returned without being able to explore the country at any distance from the Columbia, either north or south, and published an account of their adventure, with such facts as they could collect. All which serve to shew, that a water communication from New-York to Astoria, (a village at the mouth of the Columbia) and another from New-Orleans to the same place, may be effected with only one portage, between the head streams of Missouri and Clark's rivers, of less than 300 rods.

---

QUESTIONS.—By whom was this coast explored ?

When and by whom was the river Columbia discovered, and why was it thus called ?

By whom and when was the interior explored ?

What military post is erected upon the river Columbia ?

What rivers may be united by a portage of 300 rods ?



Another such instance is not to be found on the face of the whole earth.

A pass has lately been discovered through the Rocky mountains, a little south of the route of Lewis and Clark, that will make a good waggon road.

## TEXAS.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Texas?

A. It is bounded on the N. and N. E. (according to the Spanish treaty) by Red river to 100 deg. west longitude from London, thence due north to the Arkansaw, thence up the Arkansaw to lat. 42 deg. thence due west to a point intersected by a right line drawn from the source of the Rio del Norte. E. by the Sabine river, or the state of Louisiana; S. E. by the gulf of Mexico; and W. and S. W. by the Rio Grand del Norte. It is about 800 miles long and 500 broad; and contains about 40,000 square miles.

Q. What is the population of this province?

A. It is unknown; but must be very small.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil and climate?

A. The face of the country is extensively level, abounding in prairies and open plains, destitute of wood, and but few ranges of mountains. The soil is rather inferior, except upon the borders of the rivers and streams. The climate is generally mild and temperate.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Chipewyan range extends through the north-western section of Texas.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Rio Grand del Norte, Gaudaloupe, Colorado, Brazos a Dios, Sabine, Red river, &c. Several of these rivers afford the best harbors in the gulf of Mexico.

---

† The author has thought it proper to consider the geography of the Spanish province Texas in this place, because the river del Norte, which forms its western boundary, is the most natural boundary of the United States, on the west; and because the natural connection of Texas is more immediately with the United States than with Mexico, although it is under the jurisdiction of the latter. Texas was formerly claimed and possessed by the French, and considered by them as a part of French Louisiana, in their cession of that country to Spain, in 1762.

Q. Why is the Rio Grand del Norte the most natural boundary between Mexico and the United States?

A. Because it extends from the gulf of Mexico nearly to the 42 deg. of north latitude. It has but few tributary streams, is sparingly supplied with water, especially in summer, and bordered extensively with lands uninviting to settlers, and barren to a great distance upon both sides of the river; all which distinguish this river as peculiarly fitted for a national boundary.

Q. Which are the principal settlements in Texas?

A. Santa Fe is the principal of the province, and most northern settlement of Spanish America. It stands upon the Rio del Norte, in about latitude 36, and is a place of considerable inland trade.

Congress have ordered two roads to be surveyed out to Santa Fe; the one from St. Louis, and the other upon Arkansas or Red river.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Texas?

A. La Salle landed in this province in 1683, and explored the river Gaudaloupe, and the adjacent country, which laid the foundation of the French claims. In 1714, the Spaniards from Mexico, crossed the Rio del Norte; but they did not commence a settlement until 1717, when they occupied the Adayes. The French, at the same time, commenced the settlement of Natchitoches; distant only nine miles. These two posts were held by the two governments; but France always claimed all the country east of the Rio del Norte, as a part of Louisiana, and ceded the same to Spain by the treaty of 1762.

---

QUESTIONS.—When were the French claims first laid to this province, and by whom?

When and where did the Spaniards first commence a settlement?

What settlement did the French make about this time?

When did France cede her claims to Spain?

## SPANISH NORTH AMERICA.

Q. How is Spanish America divided?

A. Spanish North America is divided into the provinces of Mexico and Guatimala.

## MEXICO.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Mexico?

A. Mexico is bounded on the N. by the United States; E. by the Rio del Norte, or rather by the United States, (see the atlas); S. by Guatimala; and W. by the Pacific ocean. It is about 1800 miles long and about 1200 broad; and contains about 2,000,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population?

A. Those under the Spanish government were the provinces of Old and New Mexico, California, &c.; but since Mexico has become a free and independent government, the civil divisions are not known. Its population is about 3,000,000, Spaniards and Indians. These are divided into six classes, viz. Whites, Blacks, and Indians; and these into three others, viz. Whites and Indians, Whites and Blacks, and Indians and Blacks.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. It is low upon the shores of the gulf of Mexico, but rises into an elevated region, called table-land, 8 or 10,000 feet above the level of the sea. This table-land is situated upon the southern section of the Stony or Chippewan mountains; it extends, in some measure, as far north as the northern boundary line, and widens with its extent.

The north-western section includes the two Californias, which stretch along the coast of the Pacific. (See the atlas.)

The eastern and north-eastern sections include New Mexico, and border upon the deserts that separate Spanish America from the United States.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Stony or Chippewan ranges extend from the northern region down into Mexico, and form the high table-land.

Q. What volcanoes rise out of this table-land, and what is their height?

A. Popocatapetl and Orizaba; each about 12,000 feet above the plain.

Q. Which are the principal mountains of California?

A. A range extends through the centre of that peninsula, and runs parallel with the coast, at the distance of about 100 miles, until it terminates at mount St. Elias, lat. 60 N.; altitude of mount St. Elias, 18,000 feet.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The elevated regions or table-lands, south of the tropic, are fertile; but the northern parts are frequently dry and barren. The productions are such as are common to the

tropical and temperate regions. The vegetable kingdom of this country stands unrivalled; more than 1200 native medicinal plants are found here. Also, resinous gums, oils, &c.: balsams, toben and copaivi.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Gold, silver, iron and lead. Loadstone abounds in the mountains.

Q. Which are the mineral springs?

A. These are numerous, and strongly impregnated with sulphur, nitre, vitriol and alum; some are so hot as to cook food in a short time. Strong petrifying waters are common.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Colorado and Buenaventura fall into the Pacific ocean; and the Rio Grand del Norte, and others, into the gulf of Mexico. (See the atlas.)

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. Lake Chapala, Chalco, and Tezcuco.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Mexico is the capital, and great mart of the kingdom, and one of the richest and finest cities in the new world. Acapulco is a rich commercial city upon the Pacific ocean, and the commercial port of Mexico, with the west. Vera Cruz, upon the gulf of Mexico, is the great commercial port of Mexico, with the east. Culiacan, Durango, Zacatecas, St. Luis Potosi, Guadalupe, Puebla and Oaxaca, are rich and flourishing cities.

Q. What is the situation and character of the city of Mexico?

A. Mexico is situated lat. 19 deg. 26 min. north; lon. 99 deg. 5 min. west. It stands about equally distant from the Pacific ocean and the gulf of Mexico, near the lake Tezcuco, which serves as a reservoir for the waters that descend from the mountains into a delightful valley, more than 230 miles in circumference; and upon a range of table land that is elevated more than 7,000 feet above the level of the sea. This city, when invaded by the Spaniards, in 1521, was large, and regularly built; but it was nearly destroyed in the siege, and about 100,000 Mexicans were slain. The present city of Mexico rose upon its ruins; is regularly built; is about four miles square, and stands upon an extended plain; the streets intersect each other at right angles. It contains more than 100 magnificent churches, and numerous other public buildings. The convent of St. Francis has a revenue of £20,000 from alms only. The hospital supports more than 1400 aged people and children with a revenue of £10,000. The mint is the most extensive establishment of the kind in the world.

and employs annually more than 400 workmen. Gold and silver coin, plate, church ornaments, vases, &c. are the principal articles manufactured. Mexico contains a population of about 150,000.

Q. What is the state of literature in the province of Mexico?

A. Very low. The city of Mexico contains a university, and they have several colleges in other cities for the benefit of the rich; but the mass of the people are as ignorant as the Indians.

Q. What is the state of agriculture?

A. In the high temperate regions their agriculture is tolerable.

Q. Wherein consists the wealth of this province?

A. The wealth of Mexico consists in its extensive mineral productions, gold and silver, which supply the world with nearly one half of the coin in circulation.

Q. What is the state of manufactures and commerce?

A. They depend upon their foreign commerce for nearly all their manufactures, except plate. Gold, silver, and tropical fruits, are the principal articles of commercial exchange. They manufacture some iron, steel, and earthen ware, at Puebla, near Mexico.

Q. What is the average amount of exports and imports?

A. The amount of exports is estimated by Humbolt, at 21,000,000 dollars, from Vera Cruz only. Imports 11,000,000 dollars.

Q. What is the zoology of Mexico?

A. All the domestic animals of Europe, when transported into Mexico, have flourished well. They have lions and tigers, with all the other animals common to the North American forest.

Among the feathered tribes are found 200 species peculiar to Mexico, and many of them of delightful note and plumage.

Q. Are earthquakes common in Mexico?

A. They are both frequent and severe at their great volcanic eruptions.

Q. What memorable event took place in one of these?

A. A vast mountain, called Volcan de Jurullo, was thrown up, in 1752, to the elevation of 1,700 feet above the level of the plain.

Q. Are these events common?

A. This is the only mountain ever known to have been thus produced; but several islands have been thrown up in this way, particularly near the Azores, south of Iceland.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Mexico?

A. When Cortez, the Spanish adventurer conquered Mexico in 1521, he found there a regular and extensive empire, under the government of a regular system of laws; at the head of which was a powerful monarch. The city of Mexico was a rich and splendid city, regularly built; and the Mexicans were a race of Indians, distinctly different from all the other Aborigines of America, in every respect, excepting their personal features. They possessed the arts as extensively as they could be enjoyed in a half civilized state. Their laws, religion, and state of society, were peculiar to themselves. They were idolaters; they worshipped the sun, and practised human sacrifice. The remains of an ancient brick pyramid at Cholula, on the top of which was displayed a golden sun, is one of the evidences of their religious rites. They offered annually 20,000 victims to this idol. When Cortez had subverted this monarchy, and established a Spanish government, he made a formal surrender of his conquest to the crown of Spain; and Mexico continued a Spanish province, down to the year 1811, when she threw off the Spanish yoke, and declared herself independent. Mexico, and all Spanish North America, have gained their independence, provided they possess virtue and intelligence sufficient to maintain it; this remains to be tested.

In 1825, the United States acknowledged the independence of Mexico, and sent out a minister to her government.

---

QUESTIONS.—What and by who it was conquered, and what was its character as a government?

What was the character of the city of Mexico, and of the natives?

What memorable remains of their religious rites were found?

When did Cortez surrender Mexico to the government of Spain, and when did it become independent?

What historical conjectures may be derived from the history of Mexico? (See Remarks.)

## REMARKS.

Q. What ancient nations upon the eastern continent did the Mexicans resemble, in their government, and religious rites?

A. The Mexicans resembled the Phœnicians and Egyptians. These were regular governments, had the arts, and in their religious rites worshipped the sun, and offered human sacrifices to their gods; the Egyptians built pyramids, and

embalmed their dead. They also adorned their temples with the image of the sun, or golden suns.

Q. What other evidence have we that the Mexicans sprang from the Phœnicians, and these from the Persians or Chaldeans?

A. Their knowledge of astronomy which so exactly corresponded.

Q. Will you illustrate this remark?

A. The Chaldean shepherds, on the plains of Babylon, began the study of astronomy soon after the flood; from thence it passed into the west and became the great object of attention among the Phœnicians and Egyptians, and they regulated their navigation by the heavenly bodies; calculated eclipses, and became learned in astronomy; and from thence the science passed into Mexico with the first adventurers.

Q. What evidence have we of this?

A. The Abbe Clavigero, in his history of Mexico states, that they had discovered, that the year did not consist of 365, nor of 366 days, but of some intermediate number, which they supplied by adding 13 days to every 52 years; which exactly answers to our leap year.

Q. How could the Phœnicians and Egyptians reach Mexico?

A. They had ships, were the first commercial people; and before the mariners compass was discovered, had sailed round the continent of Africa. If any of these adventurers had been blown off the coast of the eastern continent, the trade winds would have conveyed them into the gulf of Mexico.

Q. Wherein do the Mexican rites of sepulture resemble those of the Egyptians?

A. The Egyptians built their pyramids as their mausolea, of stone, but the Mexicans built their's in the same form, of brick, and of earth; remains of the latter are not only found in Mexico, but throughout the interior of all the western states, and in the western parts of the states of Pennsylvania and New York, as far north as the lakes; and a female mummy has been found in a cave in Kentucky.

Q. Are the ancient Mexicans supposed to have been the authors of all those ancient monuments of art?

A. Those people undoubtedly attempted to settle the rich basin of the Mississippi, and western interior, and were overpowered by the natives; as were many of the first settlements of the English, on the coast of Virginia and Carolina; and left on long record those monuments of ancient rites, as well as modes of defence, common to their nations.

Q. What corroborative evidence is there of this?

A. Inscriptions have been found upon large, flat rocks, in Kentucky and Ohio, supposed to be of the Phœnician charac-

ter ; but as that language is lost, the inscriptions cannot be decyphered. A copper coin has also been dug up near the Wabash, four feet beneath the surface. with a Persian stamp and inscription. The engravings of the enchanted mountains. in Tennessee, make another link in this chain of conjecture : and the mummy found in Kentucky, in 1820, shews that those people embalmed their dead.

Q. At what age of the world could the Phœnicians, or Egyptians, or Mexicans, have made these settlements ?

A. It might have been 2,000 years since ; because it is more than that length of time since the Phœnicians were conquered by the Grecians ; the Egyptians were conquered by the Romans 31 years after Christ. Supposing the settlements to have been made within the period of the first thousand years after Christ, even that distance of time will fully account for the growth of timber upon those ancient mounds. and the total loss of tradition among the natives.

### GUATIMALA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Guatimala ?

A. Guatimala is bounded on the N. by Mexico ; E. by the Caribbean sea ; S. by the Isthmus of Darien or S. America ; and W. by the Pacific ocean. It is about 600 miles long, and 300 broad in the widest part ; and contains about 330,000 square miles.

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. Guatimala is divided into 6 provinces, viz. Chiapa, Vera Paz, Guatimala, Honduras, Nicaragua, and Costa Rica. Its population is about 2,000,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. Guatimala is level upon the eastern shore ; but intersected in the interior, from north to south, by the continuation of the Rocky mountains, which extend down to the Isthmus, where they meet the Cordilleras or Andes of S. America.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. The climate near the coast is hot and unhealthy ; but in the interior it is mild and salubrious.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Andes of S. America extend up to this country. and commence the Rocky mountains of North America. Volcanoes are more numerous here than in Mexico, and earthquakes are more frequent : about twenty volcanoes are in constant action.



Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil is very fertile, and the tropical fruits are abundant. The interior is well supplied with horses, cattle, and sheep ; and agriculture is more flourishing than in the mineral regions of Mexico.

Q. What dye woods are found in this province ?

A. Upon the shores of lake Nicaragua is found *Nicaragua wood*, and upon the bay of Honduras, the English have a settlement where they procure *log-wood* and *mahogany*.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. The same as in Mexico ; but they are not so abundant.

Q. Which are the principal bays and gulfs ?

A. The bay of Honduras, and the gulf of Amatique.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The rivers are numerous ; but they are too small to require particular notice ; (see the Atlas.)

Q. Which is the principal lake ?

A. The lake Nicaragua.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Guatemala is the capital ; the old town has been twice destroyed by earthquakes ; the present city stands 25 miles south of the old site ; and is a magnificent place, adorned with splendid churches, monasteries, and other public buildings. The University is flourishing, and the best in Spanish North America ; the population exceeds 20,000. Chiapa, Leon, Guatemala, Valladolid, Vera Paz, and Carthage, are large flourishing towns.

Q. What important event is now taking place in this province ?

A. A canal is now in great forwardness through lake Nicaragua, across the isthmus, to unite the Caribbean sea with the Pacific ocean.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Guatemala ?

A. It was a province of the Mexican Empire at the time of the conquest of Cortez, and at that time fell under the dominion of Spain, and continued under the Spanish government until they threw off the yoke, and declared their independence in 1811. They are now attempting to establish a free government.

#### NATIVES OF NORTH AMERICA.

Q. What are the character and history of the natives of North America ?

A. In their physical character they have all a strong re:

semblance, excepting the Esquimaux of Labrador and the northern regions ; these are a dwarfish race peculiar to themselves.

The other tribes are tall and straight in their persons : well proportioned, with long, straight, black hair ; small, black eyes ; teeth, white and regular ; with olive skins, and firm athletic constitutions. In their walk they carry their chins high, with a firm and manly step. They are shrewd in their intellectual powers, with strong retentive memories. Warm friends, but implacable enemies. Mild in peace ; fierce and intrepid in war. - Easily provoked ; but not easily appeased. Strong national pride, that disdains to ask even life of an enemy ; but takes delight, and even glories in the torture, and death of their enemies. They have no books but nature's volume, wherein they learn the arts of war, and of the chase ; by which they defend and support themselves. The same volume teaches them how to construct their wigwams or dwellings, their bows and arrows, as weapons of war, or the chase ; their wampum for ornament, stone hatchets, as substitutes for the axe, and their stone mortars, to grind or pound their corn ; the art of dressing skins for clothing, and the art of weaving mats from the bark of trees or Indian hemp. Also, the art of ship-building, so far as to construct canoes from the bark of trees, that are both safe and portable.

Their husbandry is confined to the culture of a few simples, such as corn, beans, potatoes, melons, &c. ; these supply their wants, for nature's wants are few.

The same volume of nature teaches them how to heal their diseases, and cure their wounds, by the plants that grow in nature's garden. When these fail they often use the cold or warm bath. But their diseases are few ; and their remedies few and simple.

The employments of the men are more generally confined to war and hunting ; the squaws till the ground, rear the children, nurse the sick, do the drudgery, and when they travel, carry the pappoose upon their backs. In fine, the squaws are the slaves. This is not only true of savage life, but of all countries where the gospel is not enjoyed.

The amusements of the men are such athletic exercises as are best calculated to render them dexterous, either in war or the chase. Their war dances are always round a large fire, in which they sing the feats of their warriors, and in their gestures act over the scenes of the combat. The squaws seldom, if ever, join in their sports, or enjoy amusements or recreations among themselves.

The dress of both sexes is very similar, and is adapted directly to the season: in summer very light; in winter the skins of the chase keep them warm. All classes are fond of show and ornaments; but the chiefs take great delight in painting themselves for war or public shows. If for war, the more hideous their figures, the more highly ornamental.

Their habitations, or wigwams, are mere pens, inclosed and covered with bark or brush, with an aperture at the top, through which the smoke of the fire ascends; the earth their bedstead, and skins their bed and covering. They usually sleep around the fire, with their feet inward, like so many radii of a circle.

Their domestic utensils are such as are necessary to pound the corn, roast or boil their food; and at the same time may be carried by hand, or on their backs, when they remove.

Their food is such as the chase affords, or fish when they can be obtained; and this they devour uncooked, whenever the situation of their enemies, or their own removals render it necessary.

Their money consists in wampum, skins, shells, or such articles of barter, as nature requires. A belt of wampum is generally used as a confirmation of a treaty, or any other engagement, assurance or promise.

Social intercourse between the sexes is not known; a squaw is a degraded, savage slave, who knows no better condition.

The language of the Indians is strong, bold, nervous, and energetic; capable of powerful expression: and they possess powerful means of using it. In fine, both in utterance and gesture, they are nature's orators, who rise or fall with the magnitude of their subject: but their language possesses nothing of the social turn, and is barren of those expressions peculiar to the *tete-a-tete* of social life.

War is the study and delight of the savage; and this he conducts, by surprising and destroying his enemies; or if discovered too soon, by rushing to the conflict with daring intrepidity, and rending the air with his horrid yells, whilst the combat continues: but his chief delight is in the torture of his captives.

The governments of the tribes are absolute. The will of the chief, or sachem, is fixed, and binding upon the whole; but in all questions of war or peace, and in all treaties, especially such as regard a sale, or exchange of property, the chief always assembles his council of old men, or warriors,

and the subject is fairly and fully discussed. The young men often attend in council, but never speak. Although the voice of the majority is generally decisive, still it is in the power of the chief alone to decide. They speak deliberately, listen attentively, and such is their memory, that they often retain a long speech, and in their reply the next day, repeat it correctly.

The religion of the Indians corresponds with the religion of all the ancient heathen nations, as well as the more modern. They believe in the existence of a Supreme Being, who made and governs all things, whom they call the Great Spirit. Him they consider as the author of all good. They believe also in an evil deity, whom they consider as the author of all evil. The first, they worship as the object of their love; and the other, as the object of their fear.

Marriages among the Indians are considered as temporary contracts, but they often, if not generally, continue through life. The squaw, however, is never considered by the parties as being any thing more than the menial of her sanup or husband.

The rites of sepulture are more uniform among the Indians than any other rites. They generally bury their dead in a sitting posture, with their clothes on, and faces towards the east; accompanied with their arms, and other utensils, necessary for a long journey; for they believe in a future state, where they expect to visit their friends and relations, whose smiles will reward their virtues, and whose frowns will punish their crimes. Loud howlings, by way of mourning, at the sepulture of their dead, are common among the Indians. It is usual for some tribes to collect the bones of their dead, and deposit them in a common cemetery, now called a barrow.

The resemblance of the natives of America, in form and feature, as well as in manners and customs, to the northern Asiatics, has led to a general belief, that they migrated from that continent, across Beering's straits; a distance of only 41 miles, which may often be passed upon the ice.

It has become a very fashionable opinion, that the natives of North America are descendants of the ten tribes of Israel, and has the following authority of William Penn. "For their origin (the natives) I am ready to believe them of the Jewish race; I mean of the stock of the ten tribes, and that for the following reasons. First, they were to go to a land not planted nor known, (2 Esdras xiii 39--50,) which to be sure Asia

and *Africa* were, and even *Europe*; and he that intended that extraordinary judgment, might make their passage easy to them, as it is not impossible to cross from the easternmost parts of Asia to the westernmost parts of America. In the next place, I find them of like countenance, and their children of so lively a resemblance, that a man could think himself in Duke's place, or Berry street, London, where he seeth them. But this is not all: they agree in rites, they reckon by moons, they offer their first fruits; they have a kind of feast of tabernacles, they are said to lay their altar upon twelve stones, their mourning a year, the customs of women, &c."

For the local residences of the most respectable confederacies and tribes, see the map of the United States.

QUESTIONS.—What are the characteristic features of the natives of N. America?

What is their means of acquiring knowledge?

What is their husbandry?

What are their employments? Amusements? Dress? Habitations?

What are their domestic utensils? Food? Money? Social intercourse?

What is their language? Chief delight? Government? Religion?

What are the rites of marriage? Sepulture?

What is their origin?

## WEST INDIES.

Q. What islands are included in the term West Indies, and how are they situated?

A. The Bahama Isles, that lie off the coast of East Florida, the Great Antilles, which lie south of the Bahamas; the Virgin Isles, that lie near to the Great Antilles; the Cariobes, that lie contiguous to the two latter; and the Lesser Antilles, that lie near the Spanish Maine.

Q. Why are these islands called *West Indies*?

A. Because they were supposed to be connected with the Indies of the East, at the time of their discovery.

Q. What are the situation and extent of these islands?

A. They lie in the form of a crescent, or semi-circle, extending across the entrance of the Gulf of Mexico, from the coast of Florida, nearly to the river Oronoco, in S. America.

Q. What is their population?

A. (See the following table.)

		<i>Bahama Islands.</i>			
	<i>Tot. Pop.</i>	<i>Whites.</i>		<i>Tot. Pop.</i>	<i>Whites.</i>
Bahama	} 14,318	2,052			
Providence					
Abaco, &c.					
<i>Great Antilles.</i>					
Cuba	620,980	230,203	Jamaica	359,912	
St. Domingo	650,000	40,000	Porto Rico	130,000	
<i>(Carribee) Leeward Islands.</i>					
St. Thomas	5,000		Antigua	35,301	2,102
Santa Cruz	23,812	2,223	Montserrat	10,750	1,000
Tortola	11,520	1,300	Mariegalante	12,400	
Anguilla	800		Guadaloupe	114,839	12,747
St. Eustatia	20,000	5,000	Dominica	26,036	1,325
St. Christopher	27,993	1,800	St. Bartholomew	8,000	
Nevis	16,000	6,000			
<i>(Carribee) Windward Islands.</i>					
Martinico	95,206	9,200	Grenada	31,362	1,210
Barbadoes	93,000	16,000	Tobago	16,483	900
St. Lucia	16,640	1,200	Trinidad	25,245	2,261
St. Vincent	23,193	870			
<i>Lesser Antilles.</i>					
Margarita	14,000	5,500			
Curacoa	8,000				
Buen Ayre					
Total population of the W. Indies, 2,408,025.					

Q. Who possess these islands ?

A. St. Domingo is in possession of the blacks ; Cuba and Porto Rico belong to Spain ; Guadaloupe, Martinico and Mariegalante to France ; St. Eustatia, Curacoa and Buen-Ayre to the Netherlands ; St. Bartholomew to Sweden ; Margarita forms a part of Venezuela ; the remainder belong to Great Britain.

Q. What is the climate of these islands ?

A. They are exposed to a tropical heat that would be insupportable, if not alleviated by the land and sea breezes, which refresh them, and render the climate comfortable. Some of the mountainous regions enjoy a mild temperature.

Q. How are these winds regulated ?

A. The sea-breezes commence about 8 or 9 o'clock in the morning, and blow upon the land through the day. The land breezes commence at evening, and blow off the land through the night.

Q. How are the seasons divided ?

A. The same as in South America, into rainy and dry.

Q. What other winds are common to these islands?

A. The trade winds, which extend 20 or 30 degrees north and south of the equator, and blow from the north-east to the south-west upon the north side, and from the south-east to the north-west on the south side, and meet upon the equator. (See the map of the world.)

Q. Where do these winds commence?

A. Near the coast of Africa, and extend across to America.

Q. Do these winds cause a current in the ocean?

A. Yes: and this current sets into the Gulf of Mexico; and thence along the coast of North America, as far as the coast of Newfoundland, and thence taking a north-eastern direction is lost in the ocean.

Q. What is this current called?

A. It is called the gulf stream.

Q. Are these the winds and current that are supposed to have wafted the Phœnicians or Egyptians to Mexico?

A. The same; and it was a very natural event. (See remarks on Mexico, page 179.)

Q. What other winds are common to these islands?

A. Tornadoes or hurricanes.

Q. What are the effects of these winds?

A. They are short, but violent, attended with terrible thunder and lightning, rain, and often hail, prostrating houses, trees, plantations, and whatever interrupts their course; the torrents of rain often deluge the plains, and the sea overflows the coast, laying waste the country, and destroying the shipping in the ports.

Q. What is the general period of these winds?

A. They seldom continue more than 24 or 36 hours; but their period continues from August to October and November: it is then followed by a delightful season until May.

Q. What are the diseases of these islands?

A. Malignant autumnal fevers of the stamp of yellow fever are common to these islands, particularly among strangers who are not accustomed to the climate.

Q. What is the general face of the country upon these islands?

A. A mountainous ridge extends through these islands generally, which divides them into high and low lands, or mountains and coast.

Q. What are the soil and productions generally?

A. These islands produce the cane, from which are made rum, sugar and molasses; also, cotton, cocoa, ginger, pepper, pimento or alspice, together with the tropical fruits. They depend on foreign trade for all their articles of clothing and

support, except a little corn, yams, and sweet potatoes, which they raise for food.

Q. By whom are these islands cultivated?

A. By black slaves altogether.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. Literary institutions are little known in the West-Indies. The rich planters send their sons abroad for education, and the others remain in ignorance.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of the West-Indies?

A. Immediately after the discovery by Columbus, in 1492, the Spaniards commenced the settlement of Hispaniola; and as their settlements extended, they enslaved the natives; a race of Indians, mild and docile in their manners and dispositions, and delicate in their frames and constitutions, (from the nature of the climate and their mode of living) until by their cruel oppression, they had nearly exterminated the whole population of that island; supposed at that time to have been about 500,000.

This cruel treatment of the natives led the king of Spain to consent to the importation of blacks from Africa, into his West India colonies, to relieve such of the natives as had survived their cruel oppression. The plan succeeded so far, that Africans were imported in large numbers, (and even particular companies were specially privileged for the purpose, by the Spanish government) until they became the sole labourers of the islands.

The government of Hayti has become an exception to this policy, as may be seen under the history of Hispaniola or St. Domingo.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom were the West-Indies discovered and settled?

What was the conduct of the first settlers towards the natives, and what were the consequences?

### Great Antilles.

Q. Which are the islands called Great Antilles?

A. Cuba, Hispaniola or St. Domingo, Porto Rico, and Jamaica.

### CUBA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Cuba?

A. Cuba lies off the southern point, or cape of Florida;



distant about 100 miles. It is about 700 miles long and 100 broad.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The interior is mountainous ; but the coast is generally level.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil upon the streams and the plains of Havanna is rich and fertile, and produces the cane, cotton, and all the tropical fruits.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Gold and silver ; and some gold dust is found in the streams ; but iron and copper abound in this island.

Q. By whom is Cuba cultivated ?

A. By about 100,000 black slaves.

Q. What are the exports of Cuba ?

A. Sugar, coffee, tobacco, hides, spices, and all the tropical fruits.

Q. What is the present state of commerce ?

A. It is not only flourishing but increasing.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Havanna is the capital ; it is remarkable for the extent and safety of its harbor, and the strength of its fortifications, particularly the Moró Castle, at the entrance of the port. Matanzas is a flourishing commercial place, near Havanna. St. Jago de Cuba is a place of some trade, with a good harbor.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Cuba ?

A. The Spaniards first settled this island about the year 1511, and held a quiet possession until the year 1762. The city of Havanna was then taken by the English, under the command of lord Albemarle and admiral Pococke ; but it was restored to Spain at the treaty of Paris, February, 1763, upon the principles of *uti possidetis*.

## HISPANIOLA, OR ST. DOMINGO.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Hispaniola, or St. Domingo ?

A. This island lies about 50 miles south-east of Cuba, and is the next in size and value ; being 450 miles long, and 150 broad.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The island is divided by an elevated range of mountains,

some peaks of which shoot up 6000 feet above the level of the sea.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil is fertile, and richly rewards the cultivator with all the tropical fruits common to the West-Indies.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. The same as in Cuba.

Q. What is the commerce?

A. The exports in 1823, to the U. States alone, amounted to more than two million of dollars.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. St. Domingo and Cape Francois were the capitals, until the latter was destroyed by the blacks, in 1793; after that time Port au Prince became one of its capitals; but since the blacks have conquered the Spanish part of the island, they have made Cape Henry the sole capital of the Republic of Hayti.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. The Black republicans of Hayti were the first to commence a regular system of instruction in the W. Indies. They have established free schools and a college; and are founding their republic upon the basis of intelligence, industry, and commerce.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Hispaniola, or St. Domingo?

A. This island was discovered by Columbus, in 1492, who settled a colony here before he returned to Spain. The riches of the island, particularly gold, which Columbus displayed at court on his return, induced numerous adventurers to visit the island; and the settlements, as well as avarice of the Spaniards, in a few years destroyed the natives, which led to the introduction of African slavery. These slaves, or rather their descendants, and others afterwards imported, seized on the island in 1793, and planted that system of liberty which they caught from the French republic, and have extended it over the island. The chiefs that distinguished themselves in the revolution, were Tousant, Christophe and Dassalines; the last became Emperor.

The year after general Bonaparte was made Consul of France, (1801) he sent out a strong military force, under the command of general Le Clerc, to reduce to obedience the revolted blacks of Hispaniola; but the diseases of the climate,

and the swords of the blacks, destroyed this army, and the island remained free.

It is worthy of special remark, that African freedom commenced where African slavery began ; and it now appears probable that their liberty will progress in the course their slavery pursued, until Africa's sons shall become free throughout the world.

At Hayti or St. Domingo, president Boyer now holds out the olive branch to all his sable brethren, and many are flocking to his government. England, France, and the United States, are promoting by law the freedom of the African race.

In 1825, Charles X. king of France, entered into a treaty with president Boyer, which acknowledged fully the independence of Hayti, for the consideration of \$30 000,000.

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Hispaniola discovered, and what were the consequences ?

When did the slaves assert their independence, and who were the principal chiefs ?

When and under whom did France attempt to subdue the blacks, and what was the result ?

What is worthy of particular notice upon this subject ?

Who is the president of Hayti and what is his character ?

What christian nations are promoting by law African freedom ?

When did France acknowledge the independence of Hayti ?

## PORTO RICO.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Porto Rico ?

A. It lies about 60 miles east of Hispaniola or St. Domingo, is about 140 miles long and 40 broad.

Q. What is the character of this island ?

A. Much the same as that of Hispaniola or St. Domingo.

Q. Which are its capitals ?

A. Porto Rico and St. Juan, are both commercial ports ; the latter is strongly fortified.

Q. What is an average amount of the exports of this island ?

A. About nine or ten million of dollars.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of this island ?

A. It was settled by the Spaniards soon after they settled Hispaniola ; and still continues in their possession.

## JAMAICA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Jamaica ?

A. It lies about 100 miles south of Cuba ; is 150 miles long and 30 or 40 broad.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. One vast pile of rocks extends through the centre of the island ; the summit of which, called Blue peak, rises 7 or 8000 feet above the level of the sea.

Q. What advantages are derived from this range ?

A. Numerous streams of pure water flow from these mountains, which may be considered as peculiar to this island.

Q. What are the productions of Jamaica ?

A. Rum, sugar and molasses, which generally claim a preference in market ; also, cocoa, ginger, cinnamon, and Jamaica pepper or pimento, commonly known by the name of allspice. The poisonous machineel is found here, whose fruit is delightful to the view, but poisonous and fatal.

Q. What valuable trees are found in Jamaica ?

A. It abounds with rare, curious, and valuable trees ; such as the cabbage tree, more hard than lignumvitæ ; the oil yielding palma ; the soap tree, mangrove, and olive ; also, fustic, red-wood, and log-wood, for dyes.

Q. What are the annual exports and imports ?

A. In 1819, the exports amounted to £3,033,234 ; the imports amounted to £4,068,170.

Q. Which are the capitals ?

A. Kingston is a place of great wealth, situated upon a spacious bay that will contain 1000 ships ; founded in 1692 ; population 33,000 Spanish Town is the residence of the governor.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Jamaica ?

A. It was settled by the Spaniards soon after the settlement of Cuba. It was taken by the English in 1756, and confirmed to Great Britain by the peace of 1763, and has continued one of her most valuable colonial possessions.

## Bahama, or Lucages Isles.

Q. What are the situation and character of these Isles ?

A. They lie off the coast of Florida, and extend nearly to the island of St. Domingo ; are about 500 in number, but on-

ly five of them are inhabited, viz. New Providence, Cat, Harbour, Eleuthra and Exuma. *Turks Islands*, so called, are inhabited during the season of gathering salt, with which they greatly abound.

Q. What are the productions of these islands ?

A. They are generally a vast cluster of barren rocks, producing some cotton, lignumvitæ, and dye-woods ; New Providence is the most fruitful, and yields all the tropical fruits. They are noted for a class of people, called wreckers, who subsist chiefly by plundering such vessels as are wrecked on their passage through the keys, or narrows.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of these islands ?

A. They are famous for being the first land discovered by Columbus, particularly Cat Island, which he called St. Salvador. The Spaniards soon exterminated the natives, as in the other islands.

Charles II. king of Spain, granted these islands to the proprietors of Carolina, about the middle of the 17th century, and they built Nassau, the capital of New Providence. In the time of the American revolution, the English took, and continue to hold them.

#### Bermudas, or Somers' Islands.

Q. What are the situation and character of these islands ?

A. The Bermuda islands lie as far north as latitude 31 deg. 30 min. yet they are generally classed among the West-India islands. They are a barren group, about 400 in number, very small and rocky ; and some of them are mountainous. They are not capable of being cultivated, yet yield excellent timber for ship building, particularly red cedar.

Q. What is the capital ?

A. St. George, and the only town of note on these islands.

Q. What is the general employment of the Bermudians ?

A. Commerce and ship building.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of these islands ?

A. They derived their name from John Bermudas, a Spaniard, who first discovered them in the 16th century. They are possessed by the English, and are valuable only as ports of safety for their ships, when upon the coast. They were

rendered noted by the disaster of admiral Somers, in the year 1609, who was cast away on these rocks, on his passage from England to Virginia.

### Caribbee Isles.

Q. What are the situation and character of these islands?

A. The Caribbes lie east and south of Porto Rico, and extend in a regular chain nearly to the mouth of the river Oro-noco, in South America; completely encircling the entrance of the Caribbean sea.

Q. How are the Caribbes divided?

A. Into *leeward* and *windward* islands. (See table, page 186.)

Q. Why are these islands thus divided?

A. In regard to the trade winds, which blow on the north side of the equator, from the north-east to the south-west, in the range of these islands, and produce a constant current.

Q. What are the climate and productions of these islands?

A. Such as have been described as common to the West-Indies; they all abound in the fruits of the cane, and are generally well cultivated by the slaves.

Q. What other small islands belong to this group?

A. Santa Cruz, or St. Croix, noted for its rum and sugar; St. Thomas and St. John's, of little note.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of these islands?

A. They have frequently changed their masters in the great struggles for supremacy in Europe, and are now owned by all the European maritime powers; but mostly by England.

### Little Antilles.

Q. What are the situation and character of these islands?

A. They lie in the Caribbean sea, off the coast of Terra Firma, or Venezuela.

Q. Which are the principal?

A. The principal are Curracoa, Aruba, Buen-Ayre, Or-chilla, Tortuga, and Margaritta.

Q. What are the climate and productions of these islands?

A. Such as are common to the West-Indies; but these lie more remote from the United States, and are less frequented for trade, than the other islands.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of these islands ?

A. They were noted for the residence of the Buccaneers in the 17th century.

---

## SOUTH AMERICA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of South America ?

A. South America lies between 12 deg. of north latitude, and 56 deg. of south latitude ; and between 35 deg. and 81 deg. of west longitude ; is about 4,000 miles long, and 3,000 broad, at its widest extent.

Q. Which are the *civil* and *statistical divisions* of South America ?

A. It is divided into Colombia on the north ; Guiana and Brazil on the east ; Peru and Chili on the west ; La Plata, or Buenos Ayres, in the middle ; and Patagonia on the south.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. South America is the boldest, and most striking draught of nature, that is presented to view. The whole face of the country abounds with the loftiest, as well as the longest ranges of mountains ; the most extensive plains and basins, and the largest rivers in the world.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Andes or Cordilleras, which stretch through the whole extent of South America.

Q. What are the local situations of these mountains ?

A. The principal chain or main body lies upon the western side of the continent, and in its course varies from one to two hundred miles, in distance from the coast.

Q. What are the principal characteristics of the Andes ?

A. They generally rise abruptly, with numerous and frightful precipices ; they shoot up their lofty summits far above the regions of the clouds, and are covered with perennial snows ; yet their declivities present to view all the climates and productions of the earth. In some parts they unite in one compact chain, and in others they divide into two or three ridges, leaving a plain, or space of five or six leagues in width between.

Q. Which is the highest elevation of this chain ?

A. Chimborazo, near the equator, which is about 20,000 feet above the level of the sea ; and is the highest mountain in America.

Q. Which are the principal branches of the Andes ?

A. The chain of Venezuela extends from the main body through the interior of the northern section of South America, nearly to the shores of the Atlantic, and gives rise to the river Orinoco, and the northern branches of the Amazon.

Q. What are the highest elevations of this branch ?

A. Many of its summits rise to 10 and 15,000 feet above the level of the sea.

Q. Which are the other branches ?

A. A second branch, near the 10th degree of south latitude, extends in broken ridges nearly across the continent, and gives rise to the southern branches of the river Amazon, and to the Paraguay.

The third lateral branch shoots off near the 20th degree of south latitude, and extending across the continent, unites with the mountains of Brazil.

Q. Which are the *grand physical divisions* of South America ?

A. The western declivity, the basins of the Orinoco, the Amazon, the Paraguay, and the Brazilian or eastern, and southern sections.

Q. What is the character of the western declivity ?

A. It stretches the whole extent of the Andes, from one to two hundred miles in width ; is abrupt in its ascent from the ocean ; abounds with short and rapid streams ; and is the seat of the kingdoms of Chili, Peru, and the western section of Colombia.

Q. What is the character of the northern section ?

A. That part that lies north of the northern range of mountains, may be considered as one extended plain, rising but little above the level of the sea, and through which the river Orinoco, with its tributary streams, winds its course more than 1,000 miles. This valley, excepting Los Llanos, is incomparably fertile.

Q. What is the character of the basin of the Amazon ?

A. The Amazon is formed by the declivity of the Andes on the west, the declivity of the first branch on the north, and the declivity of the second branch on the south : embracing an extent of about 2000 miles in length, and 1500 in breadth. This whole extent is richly watered by the majestic Amazon and its numerous tributary streams. Rich mines of gold are found here.

Q. What is the character of the basin of the Paraguay ?

A. This is formed by the declivity of the Andes on the west, the declivity of the second branch on the north, and the declivity of the Brazilian chain on the east. This basin is near-



ly as extensive as that of the Amazon, and abounds with the precious metals. In the interior of this section is an extent of high table-land, from which streams descend in all directions.

Q. What is the character of the Brazilian, or eastern section?

A. A chain of mountains extend along the coast, from the river La Plata or Paraguay, to cape St. Roque; few rivers pass this chain from the interior, and few settlements are made under its eastern declivity. The interior is mountainous and broken, until it descends into the basin of the Amazon.

Q. What is the character of the southern section?

A. A cold, broken, barren, and uninviting region, possessed by the natives.

Q. What are the minerals of South America?

A. Diamonds are found in Brazil; but gold and silver mines are more abundant than in any other part of the world.

#### INLAND NAVIGATION.

Q. What is the inland navigation of South America?

A. It is entirely confined to the natural streams.

Q. What are the natural advantages of inland navigation in the western section?

A. It is almost entirely excluded; the rivers are all short and rapid.

Q. What are the facilities of inland navigation in the northern section?

A. That portion which lies within the basin of the Orinoco, has great facilities of inland navigation, through that river and its tributary streams; but that part of the section that lies north-west of this basin has no facilities, excepting through the river Magdalena to Carthagena.

Q. What are the facilities of the section of the Amazon?

A. The bold waters of the river Amazon would admit of the passage of ships, 2,000 miles, if the rapid current did not prevent; boat navigation extends about 3,000 miles; the navigation of this river, like that of the Mississippi, may be greatly improved by steam boats.

Q. What natural communication is there between the Amazon and Orinoco?

A. The branches of the two rivers interlock between the Negro and Carsiquiari, so that boats may pass at high water. The lake Perima forms also a link in this chain.

Q. What are the facilities of the section of Paraguay?

A. The navigation of the river Paraguay or La Plata is also very extensive: ships of almost any burden can pass up to Assumption, 1000 miles, and boats about 1800.

The Pilcomayo branch extends into the mineral regions, and serves as a conveyance for the rich treasures of the gold and silver mines. The Parana and Cuyaba branches also extend into rich mineral regions.

Q. What are the facilities of the eastern, or Brazilian section ?

A. The St. Francis and Tocantines, are the only rivers of note that extend into the interior. The commerce across the mountains is carried on principally by the use of mules.

Q. What are the facilities of the southern section ?

A. None : and it will probably need none.

#### ZOOLOGY.

Q. What is the zoology of South America ?

A. Their rivers abound with serpents and crocodiles, like the Nile in Egypt. They produce also the electrical Eel, 20 or 30 feet long : a shock of which would kill a man. The Sloth is found also in South America.

Q. What is peculiar to this animal ?

A. The Sloth is about the size of a monkey, and never moves, unless impelled by hunger ; and even then, with such difficulty, as to occasion great distress ; he feeds on leaves and the fruits of trees, which he gathers by ascending ; and when he is satiated, collects himself, and falls to the ground, without violence or injury ; he often becomes lean in travelling from one tree to another.

Q. What other animals are peculiar to South America ?

A. The Llama and Vicuna, which are the sheep of Peru, because they yield them wool ; but this is the only point in which they resemble sheep ; their bodies are much like a camel ; and the Llamas often carry burdens of 60 or 70 pounds. The Vicuna is not so large, and yields the finest wool.

Q. What remarkable birds are peculiar to this country ?

A. The Condor of South America is of the vulture kind, a bird of prey, remarkably large, measuring from 10 to 16 feet from the extremities of its wings ; it is very destructive to the small animals, and when two or three are united, they are able to destroy men and cattle. The Ostrich is also a bird of S. America.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of South America ?

A. Christopher Columbus, in the year 1498, discovered South America, near the river Oronoco, on his way to Hispan-

aola. About the year 1514, Spain commenced settlements upon this part of the continent.

The Portuguese, under Vasco de Gama, discovered Brazil in the year 1500 ; but they did not commence settlements until about the year 1549.

In the year 1531, Pizarro, the Spanish adventurer, commenced the conquest of Peru ; and in 1540, he subjugated the whole empire.

The Spaniards commenced the settlement of Buenos Ayres in the year 1535, and the settlement of Chili about the year 1540.

The French commenced settlements in Guiana in 1635, and the English in 1641.

From these points the settlements extended, until they have become numerous.

Q. How did Spain govern these provinces ?

A. The Spanish government was uniform throughout her American colonies ; she established absolute governments under her Viceroys ; incorporated the Catholic religion with her system, independent of the Pope ; the king of Spain was at the head of both church and state, and held the sovereign control. Under this system, Spain monopolized all the commerce of her colonies, and foreigners were as much excluded from her American dominions as from China, until the early part of the 18th century.

At the close of the war of 1713, by the peace of Utrecht, Philip V. then king of Spain, granted to Great Britain the special privilege of supplying his American colonies with negroes : this opened a trade that disclosed that wealth which had been so long concealed. Great Britain established factories at Carthagena, Panama, Vera Cruz, Buenos Ayres, and other Spanish cities, which soon gave the English a knowledge of the country, that led to a commerce which Spain has never been able to suppress. The French and Dutch both entered with zeal into the smuggling trade with the Spanish colonies.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was South America discovered and first settled ?

When and by whom was Brazil discovered and settled ?

When and by whom was Peru conquered ?

When and by whom were Buenos Ayres and Chili settled ?

When and by whom was Guiana settled ?

What was the general character of the Spanish government ?

When and by what means did Great Britain begin to share the commerce of South America ?

Spain, sensible of the ruin of her American commerce, sought to recover it by guarding her American coasts, which led to a war with England in 1739. The next year the English took Porto Bello, and made a descent upon Carthagena, which failed; but lord Anson took a rich Spanish galleon, that served to remunerate the expenses of the war; this war closed by the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748. The English still retained the commerce of South America, and continued it in various forms, down to the time of the French revolution, when she enjoyed the commerce of South America more fully, and continues it with the present free governments.

Q. What is the present situation of these provinces?

A. They all, except Brazil and Peru, commenced a revolution, and began to throw off their foreign yoke about the year 1810, and have continued their exertions, until they have become free and independent states, with republican governments.

Peru commenced her revolution in 1820, and completed it in 1825.

Brazil commenced her revolution in 1823, and her prospects are flattering.

Whenever their governments become settled; agriculture and the arts and sciences, united with their commerce, and the riches of the mines, will give a new lustre to South America.

Q. What revenue has Spain derived from her American colonies since their first discovery?

A. The total amount exceeds £2,000,000,000 sterling

What were the consequences that followed, down to the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle?

What were the effects of the French revolution upon this commerce? When did the several Spanish colonies commence their revolutions and what has been the result?

What amount of revenue has Spain derived from her American colonies?

## COLOMBIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the Republic of Colombia?

A. Colombia is situated upon the northern section of South America, and comprises the vice-royalty of New-Grenada, and the captain-generalship of Caraccas, including Venezuela, &c. It is bounded N. by the Caribbean sea; E. by Guiana:

S. by the river Amazon and Peru ; and W. by the Pacific ocean. Population in 1820, 2,500,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. This, with other geographical descriptions, can be best understood under the heads of the former provinces.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Colombia ?

A. This country was discovered by Columbus in his third voyage, in 1498, and called *Terra Firma*. It was settled by the Spaniards in 1514 ; and continued under the government of Spain until the year 1810, when the province of Venezuela threw off the Spanish yoke, declared its independence, and assumed the name of the republic of Venezuela. The province of New-Granada declared itself independent of Spain about the same time. In 1819, the two governments united in a general congress at the city of Rosario de Cucuta, which established their union, by the name of the *Republic of Colombia*.

This congress, after passing their declaration of independence, proceeded to divide the Republic into seven departments, viz. Venezuela, Sulia, Boyacca, Candinamarca, Magdalena, Cauca, and Oronoco. They also passed a law to establish a uniform system of education throughout the departments, and a college in each, with at least two professors.

The constitution of Colombia resembles that of the United States ; but the president is chosen for seven years.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Colombia discovered and settled ?

When did she commence her revolution, and when declare her independence ?

What provinces united with her, and at what congress did she assume her present name ?

How did that congress divide the republic ?

What provision did they make to promote education ?

What is the form of their constitution ?

### NEW-GRENADA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of New Grenada ?

A. New Grenada is bounded on the N. by the isthmus of Darien and the Caribbean sea ; E. by Venezuela and Guiana ; S. by the river Amazon ; and W. by the Pacific ocean. It is 1200 miles long and 700 broad.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. Mild and serene upon the table-lands among the mountains, as in Mexico ; but hot and sultry upon the plains, and near the coast.

Q. How are the seasons divided ?

A. Into rainy and dry : the first continues from May to November, and is rendered unhealthy by the inundating rains ; the latter continues through the year, and is generally healthy.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The Andes extend through the western parts ; and their northern branch extends across the province from west to east ; these mountains exhibit all the variety of climate and scenery in nature ; from their lofty snow-capped summits to the burning heats of Los Llanos, or the vast extended plain below.

Q. What are the situation and productions of Los Llanos ?

A. Los Llanos is a vast desert of barren sand, of a dead level, near the sources of the Orinoco, which covers about 2000 square leagues ; and produces nothing but vipers and venomous reptiles.

Q. What are the productions of New Grenada ?

A. Corn, sugar, cotton, tobacco, and all the tropical fruits in perfection.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Gold, silver, copper and lead. Platina, a metal that resembles gold, and next in value. Emeralds are found near Santa Fe, and the richest in the world.

Q. What fruits and trees are peculiar to this country ?

A. The Manzillo, which bears a poisonous apple. The Carthagena bean, which is an antidote to the bite of poisonous reptiles. Also, the Cane tree, which grows about fifty feet high, and contains water between each joint, that ebbs and flows with the changes of the moon ; this water becomes turbid on the decrease, and clear upon the increase of the moon.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Chagre, Darien, Conception and Magdalena.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Andes, in the western section ; the principal summits of which are Chimborazo, Cotopaxi, Antisana, and Pichinca.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Santa Fe de Bogota is the capital of New Grenada, situated upon one of the head branches of the river Magdalena, on a range of table-land about 8,000 feet above the level of the sea, and enjoys a delightful climate ; it is large and beautiful, and contains four public squares ; the streets are wide

and well paved ; it has a magnificent cathedral, a college, with a most splendid edifice, which belonged to the Jesuits ; also 3 other churches, 8 convents, 4 nunneries, a hospital, a mint 3 collèges for students, and a university, founded in 1621, having a large public library, which was established in 1772 ; also, a court of judicature, the president of which was governor of all New-Grenada. Carthagena and Porto Bello, upon the shores of the Caribbean sea, have spacious and convenient harbors ; Carthagena is now a rich and flourishing city. Panama, upon the bay of Panama, on the Pacific ocean, is a rich and flourishing city, the store-house for the mines of Peru and Chili ; and has a valuable pearl fishery. Popayan is an ancient city of some respectability, situated among the Andes, upon an elevation of about 5000 feet. Quito is an ancient and much the largest city ; the capital of the province of Quito ; it stands between the ranges of the Andes, on an elevated table-land, about 10,000 feet above the level of the sea, and enjoys a delightful climate ; it is subject to earthquakes from its vicinity to the great volcano Pichinca. Guayaquil and Cuenca are rich cities ; the former stands upon the gulf of Guayaquil, and the latter among the mountains.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. It is not flourishing.

Q. What is their commerce ?

A. This was restricted very much to Spain before the revolution ; but it is now free, and begins to flourish.

Q. What are the arts and manufactures ?

A. They can hardly be said to have any.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. It is very low ; the mass of the people are ignorant and superstitious. Schools, and those means of instruction so common in the United States, were not known before the revolution.

Q. What are the curiosities ?

A. The summit of Chimborazo, near the city of Quito, rises nearly 22,000 feet above the level of the sea, whose snow-capped head presents a sublime view to the traveller, or the mariner upon the coast. Baron Humboldt ascended Chimborazo nearly to its summit ; a task worthy of the efforts of a man of his astonishing enterprise and perseverance. Also, Cotopaxi, still nearer to the city of Quito, whose volcanic summit shoots up in the form of a cone, far above the region of the clouds, and from whose snow-cap'd crater, volcanic flames have been known to rise more than 3000 feet, with explosions that have been heard more than 600 miles.

An extraordinary cataract, near the city of Santa Fe de Bogota, which descends a perpendicular precipice about 600 feet, and forms an unfathomable abyss below, then runs off in a rapid descent, until it unites with the river Magdalena.

Q. What troublesome insect infests this country?

A. The Nigua; it inserts itself into the flesh of men and animals, and deposits its eggs, which hatch immediately, and spread, and become very troublesome, unless soon removed.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of New Grenada?

A. The Spaniards settled Carthagena in the year 1502; and in 1544 it had become a very considerable place of trade. In the year 1536, Sebastian Benalcazar, and Gonzalo Ximenes de Quesada, conquered the interior country, and added it to Spain.

### VENEZUELA, OR CARACCAS.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Venezuela?

A. Venezuela is bounded on the N. by the Caribbean sea; E. by the Atlantic ocean, and Guiana; S. by Guiana; and W. by New Grenada. It is about 700 miles long and 500 broad.

Q. What are the climate soil and productions?

A. Much the same as in New Grenada. The Quinquina, that yields the Peruvian bark, is found in Venezuela.

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. Valencia and Maracaybo.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Oronoco is the only river of note in Venezuela.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Caraccas is the capital; it is situated upon an elevated plain, about 3000 feet above the level of the sea; it was nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1812; previous to that event it contained about 40,000 people. Laguira, the port of Caraccas, is a flourishing commercial town. Cumana contains a population of about 30,000. Maracaybo, Barcelona, and others, are flourishing cities.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Venezuela?

A. Venezuela or Little Venice was discovered by Alonso de Ojeda, in 1498. It was sold by Charles V. to a company



of German merchants, who attempted to settle it, but failed. The Spaniards resumed their settlement. Venezuela has suffered severely in her struggles for liberty, from the commencement of the revolution in 1810, to her union with New Grenada, in 1819. The total number that fell by the sword, famine, and earthquakes, within that period, has been estimated at 222,000 souls. (See South America and Colombia for further history of this province.)

## GUIANA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Guiana ?

A. Guiana is bounded on the N. by Venezuela ; E. by the Atlantic ocean ; S. by Amazonia ; and W. by New Grenada. It extends about 1100 miles upon the coast.

Q. What province does it embrace ?

A. Spanish Guiana on the north-west ; Portuguese Guiana on the south ; and English, Dutch, and French Guiana, upon the coast.

Q. What is the population of Guiana ?

A. It is about 250,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. Generally level, except such parts as are intersected by the northern branch of the Andes, which extends from the main body to the coast of Guiana.

Q. What are the climate and productions ?

A. The climate near the coast, which is the only part now settled, is hot and sultry, and varies with the wet and dry seasons. The productions are sugar, cotton, indigo, tobacco, cocoa, coffee, and all the tropical fruits.

Q. What trees are peculiar to these forests ?

A. The red mangrove, guaiacum, camphor tree, and silk cotton tree, which shoots up a shaft of 60 or 70 feet, and then expands its top 30 or 40 feet higher. Also, the cabbage tree, that rises about 120 feet, free from branches, and produces the cabbage on its summit. Ebony, fustic, and Spanish cedar, are also found in this province.

Q. What curious vegetable is found in this province ?

A. A plant called Troolies, whose leaves spread on the ground, and often grow to the size of 30 or 40 feet long, and 3 feet wide. They are used as thatch for their houses.

Potent drugs of various kinds are also found here ; such as quassia wood, ipecacuanha, balsam copaivi, &c.

Q. What animals are found here ?

A. Monkeys and apes, which abound in South America.

Q. Which are the British settlements ?

A. They lie upon the rivers Essequibo and Berbice, and are called Demarara ; Stabroek is the capital ; New Amsterdam is a seaport, at the mouth of the Berbice.

Q. Which settlements belong to the Dutch ?

A. Surinam : and Paramaribo is the capital, upon Surinam river ; a rich and flourishing city, with a population of about 20,000.

Q. Which is French Guiana ?

A. It lies south of Surinam, and has Cayenne for its capital, and is noted for its Cayenne pepper. The country is mountainous and thinly settled.

Q. Which is Portuguese Guiana ?

A. It lies south of French Guiana, upon the north side of the river Amazon, and is annexed to Brazil.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Guiana ?

A. Guiana was first discovered in the year 1500, but no settlements were made until the French commenced the settlement of Cayenne, in 1635. In 1641, the English commenced the settlement of Surinam. The Dutch took Cayenne, in 1646 ; but the French re-took it in 1667. The same year the Dutch took Surinam ; the latter part of the same year the English took Cayenne and re-took Surinam ; but they restored them in 1674. The English took Surinam again, near the close of the 18th century ; but restored it in 1802. Demarara was finally ceded to England at the peace of 1814.

---

QUESTIONS.—When was Guiana first discovered ?  
When was then first settlement made ?---where ?---by whom ?  
What settlement was made in 1641 ?---by whom ?

### BRAZIL.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Brazil ?

A. Brazil is bounded on the N. by the river Amazon ; N. E. and S. E. by the Atlantic ocean ; S. and W. by the La Plata or Buenos Ayres, and Amazonia. It is about 2500 miles long and 1200 broad, in the widest part.

Q. How is Brazil divided, and what is its population ?

A. It is divided into 25 provinces. Population 2,500,000

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. It is generally mountainous.

Q.-Which are the principal mountains?

A. A chain extends along the coast, from Rio Grande or St. Pedro to cape St. Roque, called the Andes of Brazil. The interior is broken by numerous mountainous elevations, which are in some parts connected with branches of the western Andes.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil upon the table-lands is fertile. The productions are corn, sugar, cotton, tobacco, indigo, Brazil-wood, with all the tropical fruits.

Q. Which are the minerals of Brazil?

A. Gold and diamond mines are the most valuable; the diamonds are highly variegated.

Q. What animal is peculiar to this country?

A. The Torpizassou, which resembles an ass and a bull, but without horns: his flesh is well flavoured, and makes good beef.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The tributary streams of the Amazon and La Plâta, and the rivers Francisco and Tocantines, are the principal.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Rio Janeiro or St. Sebastian is the capital: a rich commercial city, with one of the best harbours in the world; and is the great mart of the gold and diamond region. St. Salvador is the next in size and commercial importance, to St. Sebastian; it is situated upon an acclivity like Quito, and the sudden elevation of the streets prevents the use of carriages. Pernambuco is a rich commercial city, with a port so difficult of access as to admit but one vessel at a time; but safe and commodious when they have entered. Porto Seguro is a port of some note. St. Paul is a town of some distinction among the mountains. Villa Rica is a rich town in the gold mine region. Tejuco is the capital of the diamond region. Cuyaba, on a river of the same name; is another rich town in the interior gold mine region. Villa Boa, also in the interior, is a town of some note.

Q. What is the state of commerce?

A. It languished under the restrictions of the royal government; but new motives actuate the Brazilians, and commerce begins to expand and flourish.

Q. What are the principal exports?

A. Gold, silver, diamonds, &c.; also more than 20,000 hides annually, taken from black cattle that run wild in the woods. Also, mules, &c.

Q. What is the state of the roads?

A. They are bad in the extreme, and call upon a nation of freemen to put them in repair.

Q. What is the state of agriculture and manufactures ?

A. Their agriculture is in a low depressed state ; and they have no manufactures. They depend upon their slaves to perform the labour.

Q. What is the general character of the Brazilians ?

A. They are an ignorant, superstitious, and indolent people.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Brazil ?

A. Brazil was discovered by the Portuguese under Vasco de Gama, in the year 1500 ; but no settlements were made until about the year 1549.

The Dutch invaded Brazil and subdued the northern provinces in the year 1613 ; but were bought off by the Portuguese with eight tons of gold and silver, in 1661.

In the year 1808, the royal family of Portugal fled from the invasion of the French, and took up their residence in Brazil, where they continued until the year 1821, when they returned to Lisbon.

Brazil threw off the yoke of Portugal, in 1823, and is now endeavouring to establish a free government.

---

QUESTIONS.-- By whom was Brazil first discovered ?---when ?  
 About what time were settlements commenced ?  
 In what year were the northern provinces subdued ?---by whom ?---  
 did they retain the possession of them ?  
 What took place in 1808 ?---in 1823 ?

### BUENOS AYRES.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Buenos Ayres .

A. Buenos Ayres is bounded on the N. by Bolivar and Amazonia ; E. by Brazil and the Atlantic ocean ; S. by Patagonia ; and W. by Bolivar and Chili. It is about 1300 miles long and 1000 broad.

Q. How is it divided and what is its population ?

A. It was divided formerly into eight provinces, or intendances, which are now the United Republic of Buenos Ayres. Population, estimated at 2,000,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The northern parts extend into the mountainous, and mining regions ; but the southern are generally included within the basin of the Paraguay, and are interspersed with extensive plains, called pampas ; the same as in North America are called prairies and savannas. These pampas extend

several hundred miles without a tree, and are covered with a tall moose-grass. Numerous herds of wild cattle and horses feed on these plains.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Andes on the west ; and the southern chain that extends across into Brazil, intersects the northern parts.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. Generally mild and salubrious in summer ; but rainy and often tempestuous in winter.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil varies according to the face of the country. The mountainous districts are barren ; but the vale of the Paraguay is extremely rich and fertile. The productions vary with the difference of latitude, and include all the variety of the temperate and torrid zones. Matte or Paraguay tea, is a plant of some note, and is used very generally in that country.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Paraguay or La Plata, with its numerous tributary streams.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Buenos Ayres, the capital, is situated about 200 miles up the river La Plata, and contains about 6000 houses, mostly built of brick ; its public buildings are all of white stone, which give it an elegant appearance ; it enjoys an extensive commerce. Montivideo stands near the mouth of the river ; has a good and safe harbour, and is a rich, flourishing city, with a population of about 30 or 40,000. Assumption is a place of much trade, about 1000 miles up the Paraguay.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. Under the old government it was greatly depressed ; but it now begins to improve under their free government.

Q. What is their commerce ?

A. The restrictions of their former government depressed their commerce : the mines and the pampas furnished all their articles of export. Gold and silver, hides and beef, are the principal exports.

Q. What communication is there across the Andes ?

A. There is a regular intercourse with Peru and Chili, by stages, or covered carts, drawn by oxen, which are guarded, to protect them against the savages.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. Their former government neglected the education of the lower classes of the people ; but their present prospects are more favourable.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Buenos Ayres ?

A. The Spaniards discovered the river La Plata, in the year 1516, and in 1535, they commenced the settlement of Buenos Ayres. In 1538, Pizarro, from Peru, penetrated into the western section of what now comprises the confederacy of Buenos Ayres, and conquered the province of Charcas.

In 1586, the Jesuits commenced their missionary labours among the Indians.

From these several dates the kings of Spain assumed the government, by their Viceroys, who exercised every possible degree of oppression upon the natives, as they explored the country, until they reduced them extensively to a state of subjection, and compelled them to labour in the mines.

From that time, this section of South America became the theatre of Spanish avarice, cruelty and oppression, in common with the other provinces under their dominion, until they threw off the Spanish yoke, and asserted their independence, in 1810.

Since that time, Buenos Ayres has been governed by a general Congress ; but such was the revolutionary state of the government, that Congress did not publish their declaration of Independence, until July, 1815.

The government is not yet fully settled, but gains strength and respectability daily, and so far as regards their independence of Spain, is permanently fixed. Their constitution, if decided upon, has not yet appeared ; but it is expected that they will follow the plan of the United States.

---

QUESTIONS—When did the Spaniards discover and settle Buenos Ayres ?

When and by whom was the western section conquered ?

When did the Jesuits commence their missionary labours ?

What form of government did Spain introduce, and what were the consequences ?

When did Buenos Ayres commence her revolution ?

When did she assert her independence, and what are her present prospects ?

## CHILI.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Chili ?

A. Chili is bounded on the N. by the desert of Atacama, and Bolivar ; E. by the United Provinces of Buenos Ayres ; S. by Patagonia ; and W. by the Pacific

ocean. It is about 1300 miles long and 150 broad. Population 1,200,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The western section, or maritime country, is intersected by three ranges of the Andes, which render it broken : but the eastern, or interior section, is an elevated range of table-land.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. The climate is remarkably mild and salubrious : it seldom rains in the northern section, and thunder is rarely heard in Chili. The country is refreshed by copious dews, as in Egypt. There are many volcanoes among the Andes, which produce frequent earthquakes

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil is remarkably fertile, especially upon the table lands. It produces the fruits of all the climates abundantly. Apples, pears, peaches and plums, abound in the southern parts ; oranges blossom and bear throughout the year ; and they make rich wines with their grapes.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The principal rivers of Chili, are Cauten, Maule, Valdivia and Biobio, with numerous others, which rise in the Andes, and find a short course to the ocean. Many of the rivers are navigable for the largest ships more than 100 miles.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. St. Jago is the capital of Chili, a rich commercial city, situated in the elevated region near the mines ; and by the assistance of Valparaizo, its port, is the chief commercial city of Chili : population 40,000. Concepcion is also a rich flourishing city, with a population of about 20,000. Valdivia was one of the first cities built in Chili ; it has an excellent harbour, and lies five miles back from the sea : population 13,000. There are several other valuable ports in Chili.

Q. Which are the minerals ?

A. Gold, silver, copper, tin, lead, iron and quick-silver, abound in the mines of Chili, besides vast quantities of gold washed down from the mountains ; all which produce an annual amount of more than 800 000 dollars.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. It is flourishing and respectable. Chili supplies Peru with wheat.

Q. What is the state of manufactures ?

A. They are in their infancy.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. Before the revolution it was very low ; it is now rising. Printing presses are introduced.

### . HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Chili ?

A. In the year 1535, when the Spaniards had nearly completed the conquest of Peru. they attempted to penetrate into Chili, under Diego Almagro ; but they were met by a brave and warlike people, who compelled them to retire with great loss, and abandon the enterprise.

In the year 1540, the Spanish General Pedro Valdivia, penetrated into Chili with a strong force, and gained such possession as enabled him to found the city of St. Jago, the capital, upon the river Maupocho. Not content, he next advanced into the country of the Araucanians, and founded the cities of Villa Rica, Valdivia, and Angol : but in the year 1553, the natives rose upon their conquerors, drove them from their country, and killed their general. From that time the Spaniards continued to invade the Araucanians, but without success, down to the year 1773, when they were wholly expelled from their country, - and that tribe remains free to this time.

In 1587, the English invaded Chili with a naval armament : but were driven off by the natives, with considerable loss.

In 1633, the Dutch made a similar attempt, and met with the same disasters.

In 1810, the Chilians threw off the Spanish yoke and commenced their revolution.

In 1814, a royal army from Peru entered Chili, defeated the patriots and restored the Spanish government ; the patriots fled into the provinces of Buenos Ayres, where they were protected.

In 1817, the patriots, being joined by a strong force, (the patriots of Buenos Ayres,) re-entered Chili, and restored the liberties of their country. by a decisive battle, April 5th, 1818.

- QUESTIONS.—When did the Spaniards first invade Chili?  
 When and by whom was St. Jago built?  
 What further conquests did Valdivia attempt, and what was the result?  
 When did the English invade Chili, and what was the result?  
 When did the Dutch make the same attempt, and with what success?  
 When did Chili assert her independence of Spain, and what has been the result?



Chili then took her rank among the free and independent states of South America.

## BOLIVAR.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Bolivar ?

A. It is bounded on the N. by Peru ; E. by Amazonia, and the river Paraguay ; S. by the United Provinces of Buenos Ayres and Chili ; and W. by the Pacific ocean ; about 700 miles long, and the same broad, in the eastern section ; but upon the Pacific, it does not exceed three degrees in width. Population 1,700,000.

Q. What are the civil divisions ?

A. It is divided into the following departments, viz. Potosi, Charcas or La Plata, Cochabamba, La Paz, Santa Cruz or Puno, Moxos, and Chiquitos.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The Andes divide into two ranges, as in Peru, but the region in the department of Potosi, is the most mountainous and irregular, as well as most elevated. In this region, the two great rivers Amazon and La Plata take their rise, at a distance of about 70 miles of each other.

Q. What is the climate of Bolivar ?

A. Upon the coast it is hot and dry, as in Peru ; but in the elevated regions, it is temperate, and in the higher regions, cold.

Q. How are the seasons divided ?

A. Into summer and winter, or rainy and dry seasons, in the upper country ; but the regions of temperature admit of very little variation.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil upon the coast, as in Peru, is barren ; but in the upper country it is fertile, and yields all the productions of the temperate and torrid zones.

Q. Which are the mines of Bolivar ?

A. Gold, silver, quicksilver, &c. ; but the most valuable mineral region is situated in the department of Potosi. This mountain rises in the form of a sugar loaf, and abounds with silver. It is pierced with more than three hundred shafts, through which the precious metal is drawn from its bowels. It was discovered by accident in the year 1545, soon after the conquest of Peru. An Indian, in climbing the mountain in pursuit of game, pulled up a shrub, which disclosed a mass of silver beneath its roots.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The head branches of the rivers Amazon and Paraguay, with the Pilcomayo, &c.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Potosi the capital ; Charcas, Cochabamba, La Paz, Santa Cruz, &c.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. Much the same as in Peru.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. As low as their agriculture.

Q. What is the state of commerce and manufactures ?

A. Their mineral productions are their principal exports ; but they carry on an inland trade with Peru, Chili, and Buenos Ayres. This is conducted only by ox-teams, on account of the badness of their roads.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Bolivar ?

A. The government of Peru embraced the seven intendancies, now departments of Bolivar, until the year 1778, and were called the district of the audiencia of Charcas, which city was the capital. At that time the district was annexed to the viceroyalty of Buenos Ayres, or Rio de la Plata. In the civil war under the insurrection of Tupac Amaru, in 1780, this district was greatly distressed, its cities were sacked, their inhabitants butchered, and about one third of the whole population destroyed.

The late revolution that severed this country from the government of Spain, commenced in the city of La Paz, in 1789, and soon extended throughout the whole district. A severe and distressing civil war ensued ; the country bled at every pore, until the famous battle of Ayacucho, in April, 1825, which was a triumph to the patriots, like the capture of Yorktown in the North American revolution. In this memorable action, the total loss of the royalists amounted to more than 18,500 men, and in August following, Bolivar, or then Upper Peru, published their declaration of independence, and decreed that Upper Peru should hereafter be called, the Re-

---

QUESTIONS.—When was the state of Bolivar divided from Peru, what was it then called, and to what state was it annexed ?

When did a civil war desolate this country, and under what chief ?

When and where did the revolution commence that severed the country from the government of Spain, and what memorable battle decided the war ?

When did the state of Bolivar assume its name and publish their declaration of independence ?

public of Bolivar, in honor of the liberator of Colombia and Peru, whom they acknowledged the Washington of the nation. Bolivar soon appeared in their capital, and issued a proclamation, which sanctioned their doings, and proposed to change the name of the republic to that of Bolivia, and recommended that a congress be called on the 25th of May, 1826, to frame a constitution.

---

From whence is the name derived, and how was it approved by the Liberator?

## PERU.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Peru?

A. Peru is bounded on the N. by New Granada or Columbia; E. by Amazonia; S. by Bolivar, that divides it from Chili; and W. by the Pacific ocean. It is about 700 miles long and 600 broad. Population 1,297,000.

Q. What are the civil divisions?

A. Peru was formerly divided into 7 governments, viz. Lima, Truxillo, Tarma, Guanaca Velica, Guamanga, Arequipa, and Cuzco. The present divisions are not known.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. The Andes divide into two ranges, as they extend through Peru, and the western range divides the region of the coast from the region of the mountains. The face of the country upon the coast is an extensive, sandy plain, where it seldom rains, as in Chili; but the earth is fertilized by fogs, and heavy dews. The face of the country between the mountains, is one vast extent of table-land, as in Mexico, elevated about 10,000 feet above the sea.

Q. What is the climate of Peru?

A. Upon the coast it is hot; but in the elevated regions, it is of a delightful temperature, at about 65 of Fahrenheit, with little variation through the year.

Q. How are the seasons divided?

A. Into summer and winter; or wet and dry; but the degrees of change are very slight, and admit of very little variation.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil is various; but in general it is fertile. The productions are much the same as those of Chili. The tropical fruits and various kinds of grain, abound upon the borders of the rivers, on the vale of the coast; and the various kinds of grain, and fruits of the temperate zones, abound in

the table regions of the mountains. The tree that yields the Jesuit's, or Peruvian bark, is found here.

Q. Which are the mines of Peru ?

A. Gold, silver, quick-silver, &c. ; but the most valuable mineral section of Peru, is comprised within the new state of Bolivar.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Ucaylè, and Tunguragua, sources of the Amazon, are the principal rivers of Peru. The rivers that fall into the Pacific are small.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Lima is the capital ; and before the revolution, was the capital of all Spanish S. America ; it stands upon the river Rimac, six miles from the ocean, upon an elevation of 600 feet above the level of the sea, surrounded by an extensive plain ; and is strongly fortified with walls and ramparts ; the city is regularly built ; the streets are paved, and the churches, as in Mexico, are profusely adorned with gold and precious stones ; a university has been long established here, and the people have some taste for the sciences. Lima has a population of 70,000. Callao is the port of Lima, distant five miles ; it has the best harbour upon the western coast, and enjoys an extensive commerce. Earthquakes are common at Lima, which have rendered it necessary to build all their houses of one story.

Q. What display of wealth has particularly appeared at Lima ?

A. The Viceroy, in 1682. made his public entrance into Lima, through streets paved with ingots of silver.

Q. Which are the other large towns ?

A. Cuzco, the ancient capital, is situated in the elevated regions, and possesses much of its ancient style and splendour. Arequipa and Guamanga are handsome cities ; the latter has an university. Guanca Velica is situated among the mountains, about 16,000 feet above the level of the sea ; here are found rich mines of quick-silver, and gold and silver.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. It is almost wholly neglected ; and Peru depends very much upon Chili, and other foreign markets for her bread.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. About as low as their agriculture.

Q. What is the state of commerce and manufactures ?

A. Their mineral exports are the basis of their commerce ; and they carry on an inland trade over the mountains with Buenos Ayres and Chili ; but their roads are almost impass-

sable. That universal system of ignorance and depression, which has prevailed throughout South America, still prevails in Peru. It is hoped and expected, that their present free government will introduce a new system, that will radically abolish the old, by encouraging learning, agriculture and the arts.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Peru?

A. The Spanish adventurer, Pizarro, commenced the conquest of Peru, in the year 1532, seized the Inca or Emperor, and put him to death. In the year 1533, he took possession of Cuzco, the capital; the same year the Spaniards, under the adventurer Benalcazar, took Quito. The next year Pizarro founded the city of Lima, January 18th, 1534. The next year (1535) the Spanish adventurer Almagro, marched into Chili; but met with so warm a reception from the Indians, that he returned into Peru and attempted to seize on that country, and wrest it from Pizarro. From this time Peru became the theatre of intrigue, murder and civil war, until the year 1539, when the government, (after a few more fruitless struggles of party) became settled and quiet under the administration of Gasca, a president general sent out by the king of Spain, in the year 1547. Peru became the most valuable possession Spain held in South America. Lima became not only the Spanish capital of Peru, but the residence of the Viceroy of Spanish South America.

Peru commenced her present revolution in 1820; in 1824, she wholly threw off the Spanish yoke, and gained her independence, and her prospects are flattering.

Q. What is the history of Peru before the Spanish conquest?

A. It was, in common with the whole of South America, inhabited by numerous Indian tribes, who were destitute of the arts and civilization, like the other tribes of the continent, or as the mass of them are at this time.

About four centuries, (according to Indian tradition) before the Spanish conquest, a man and woman appeared upon the banks of lake Titicaca, decently clad, and of majestic appearance, who declared themselves to be children of the sun, sent

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Peru conquered?  
 When and by whom was the city of Lima founded?  
 When, and under what chiefs did Peru become a theatre of civil war?  
 When and by whom was it closed, and what was the result?  
 When did Peru throw off the Spanish yoke?

by their beneficent parent, to instruct and reclaim them. The savages assembled around them, and listened to their instruction. When they had gained the confidence of the Indians then assembled, they led them to Cuzco, and there continued their instruction, until the Indians began to reverence them as gods, and submit to their authority.

Manco Capac, and Mamma Ocollo, those children of the sun, commenced such a system of instruction as was best calculated to inspire them with confidence, and meliorate their condition. Manco Capac taught them agriculture, and such other arts as were more immediately useful; Mamma Ocollo taught the women to spin, weave and knit; both improvements united, rendered their food and clothing more permanent and agreeable.

By these means, the Indians were soon won over to their counsel and authority, which enabled Manco Capac to introduce a system of usages, or customs, that grew up into established laws, and thus he laid the foundation of the Peruvian empire.

The Indians conferred the same honors upon the descendants of Manco Capac and Mamma Ocollo, which they had bestowed upon them, and continued the government in their line, until the Spanish invasion. Thus the government of the *Incas* or Lords of Peru commenced, and continued, until Pizarro subverted it, in the year 1533. At that time they had made such progress in agriculture and the useful arts, as a people without the use of iron, could readily acquire.

The Incas, in order to perpetuate a pure race of their line, compelled their children to inter-marry, that the divine authority of the children of the sun might not be impaired.

At the time Pizarro commenced the conquest of Peru, a rival interest in the Incan family, had involved the empire in a civil war, which enabled Pizarro to seize on the government.

Q. What was the genius of the government introduced by the Incas?

A. It was absolute; yet patriarchal. The Inca was both the king and the father of his people. He supported his government by establishing one common interest; and to effect this he divided all lands capable of cultivation into three parts. The first was consecrated to the sun, and the fruits went to the support of religion, building temples, &c. The second was set apart for the support of the government, and belonged to the Incas. The third and largest part was devoted to the people, for their support; it was divided into portions,

and they tilled the ground, and shared the profits in common, for the best good of the whole. These distributions were made among the people annually. Thus Peru became one common family.

Although the Peruvians held all things in common, they maintained regular grades of distinction in society. The common people, called *Yanaconas*, were like the *Tunemes* in Mexico, devoted to carry burdens; next to them were the people termed *free*, but without titles. The next were the *Origones*, a class distinguished by their ornaments; and these were the candidates for offices of power and trust.

At the head of these orders stood the Incan family, or the children of the sun. Thus balanced, the government preserved good order, and the people excelled the Mexicans in agriculture and the arts.

What is the history of Peru before the Spanish conquest?

What was the genius of the government introduced by the Incas?

## INDEPENDENT AMERICA:

Q. What is to be understood by Independent America?

A. Independent America includes those parts that are possessed by native tribes, that never have been subdued.

Q. What parts of South America may be comprised under this term?

A. A very considerable part of the basin of the Orinoco; the whole basin of the Amazon; a very considerable part of the basin of the Paraguay, and of the interior of Brazil; and the whole section of Patagonia.

Q. What portion of the whole of South America may be included under Independent America?

A. About three fifths.

Q. What are their modes of living and population?

A. The mild climate and fertile soil in the basins of these great rivers, afforded the natives an easy, and plentiful subsistence, that naturally rendered them numerous. The Spaniards have shewn no disposition to extend their settlements beyond the mineral regions, which lie generally not very remote from the coasts, and of course the natives have lived undisturbed in the interior.

Q. Which are the principal tribes of Independent America?

A. The Caribbs and Arowauks, Atomacks and Guaropes, in the basin of the Orinoco.

The basin of the Amazon has not yet been sufficiently ex

explored to learn much of the names or character of the natives, any further than to know, that they are very fierce and warlike.

Among the independent tribes of the Paraguay are the Abipones ; a fierce and warlike nation, that are often troublesome to the whites. The Araucanians are the most civilized of any of the native tribes : they dwell in the interior of Chili, and send ambassadors to that government, who are treated with respect. This is considered as the most warlike tribe in South America.

There are two confederacies in Patagonia, that are composed of several tribes ; but they all possess one character, rank among the most barbarous tribes, and were formerly reported to be giants 6-1-2 or 7 feet high ; but this is now considered as fabulous. In the northern parts they are good horsemen, and often rob the Spanish caravans as they cross the mountains, to and from Chili.

The Indians in the eastern section of the basin of the Paraguay, were early instructed in the principles of christianity by the Jesuits, and are considered as being the most civilized part of native America.

The situation of Independent America at large, has rendered it impossible to acquire any degree of knowledge of their population, but they are generally considered as being more numerous than the North American Indians.

### South American Isles.

Q. Which are the South American Isles ?

A. The South American islands, are Terra del Fuego, Falkland Isles, Trinidad, Chiloe, Juan Fernandez, the Gallapagos Isles, South Georgia, Sandwich Land, and the South Shetland Isles.

Q. What are the situation and character of Terra del Fuego ?

A. Terra del Fuego is separated from the continent, by the strait of Magellan, and contains the southern point, called Cape Horn. It is a cold, inhospitable, rocky, and barren waste, inhabited by a few miserable Indians, who subsist principally upon fish. It is the seat of a volcano, from which it derives its name ; *the land of fire*..

Q. What are the situation and character of the Falkland Isles ?

A. The Falkland Islands lie off the eastern coast of Patagonia, and belong to Spain. Their character strongly resembles



that of Terra del Fuego. The Spaniards send their convicts there from their American settlements.

Q. What are the situation and character of Trinidad ?

A. Trinidad Island lies off the coast of Guiana ; is noted for its coffee, and produces a fossil oil, that is found to be a great preservative for the bottoms of ships against worms. It was ceded by Spain to Great Britain, at the peace of 1813, which closed the French revolution.

Q. What are the situation and character of Juan Fernandez ?

A. Juan Fernandez consists of two small islands off the coast of Chili ; they abound with wild goats, and are often visited for refreshment by the south-sea ships. They are famous as the residence of Alexander Selkirk, the hero of the romance, called Robinson Crusoe.

Q. What are the situation and character of Chiloe ?

A. Chiloe is a large island on the western coast of Chili, that belongs to Chili. The Indians that inhabit it are remarkably industrious. It produces all necessary provisions and refreshments, except wine ; much ambergris is found in Chiloe. In the Archipelago of Chiloe, are 47 small islands ; 32 only are inhabited.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Gallapagos Isles ?

A. The Gallapagos Islands are a cluster of uninhabited isles off the coast of New-Grenada ; they abound with turtle. The south-sea ships often touch at these isles for refreshment.

Q. What are the situation of South Georgia, Sandwich Land, and South Shetland Isles ?

A. They lie remote from the coast ; are clusters of barren rocks, covered with perpetual snow ; the abode of seals, and sea fowls. The south-sea ships visit them occasionally to catch seals.

---

## EUROPE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Europe ?

A. Europe lies on the western part of the great eastern continent. It is bounded on the N. by the Northern ocean ; on the E. by the Ural mountains, the rivers Wolga and Don, and a line extending through the centre of the sea of Azof, Black sea, sea of Marmora, the Dardanelles, and the Archipelago ; on the S. by the Mediterranean sea, the straits of Gibraltar,

and the Atlantic ocean; and on the W. by the Atlantic ocean. It is about 3,000 miles long, and 2,500 broad, and contains about 4,000,000 square miles.

Q. Which are the statistical divisions of Europe?

A. Europe includes the following countries:—Lapland, Norway, Sweden, and Russia, in the north; Great Britain, France, Netherlands, Denmark, Prussia, Poland, Germany, Switzerland, and Austria, with Hungary, in the middle; Portugal, Spain, Italy, and Turkey, in the south.—Europe contains three sovereignties, styled empires, Russia, Austria and Turkey; fourteen kingdoms, Great Britain, France, Prussia, Spain, Netherlands, Naples, Sardinia, Portugal, Bavaria, Sweden, Denmark, Wurtemberg, Hanover, and Saxony; three republics, Switzerland, Ionian Islands, and St. Marino; and a number of smaller states, styled grand duches, duches, principalities, &c.

Q. What is the population of Europe?

A. Europe contains about 190,500,000.

Q. What is the climate of Europe?

A. Europe partakes of all the varieties of the temperate and frigid zones.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. Europe cannot boast of those bold and extensive ranges of mountains; those majestic rivers, nor those extensively rich and fertile basins, which characterize the face of the western continent; nor such vast lakes, pampas, savannas, or prairies; but it is indented with numerous seas, gulfs and bays, that are highly calculated to promote their internal commerce. The glaciers that are perpetual upon the Alps of Switzerland and Savoy, surpass every thing of the kind to be found on the western continent. The face of the southern section of Europe may be called rather mountainous than undulating; the northern section, particularly in Russia, is more undulating than mountainous.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Alps, Pyrenees, Appenines, Carpathian, Ural and Dorfrasfield mountains.

Q. What are the situation of the Alps and their branches?

A. The Alps are the most central in Switzerland, where they divide Italy from Germany. A southern branch extends down to Genoa, and divides Italy from France; this branch is connected with the Pyrenees, which divide France from Spain. Near Genoa, the southern branch divides and runs east to the head of the Appenines, which extend south through the centre of Italy.

Q. What other chains are connected with the trunk of the Alps?

A. An eastern chain passes through Austrian Tyrol, down into Turkey in Europe, and terminates near the head of the Black sea, and includes mount Hæmus. A northern branch passes through Bavaria, and unites with the Erzgebürg mountains, which divide Saxony from Bohemia; the same northern range passes into Poland and Russia, under the name of the Valdai Hills: thence they extend northeast until they reach the Ural chain, that divides Europe from Asia on the north-east. The Dorfræfield mounts divide Norway from Sweden. These several ranges of mountains give rise to all the principal rivers in Europe.

Q. Which are the principal elevations upon these mountains?

A. Mont Blanc, in Savoy, is nearly 16,000 feet, and is visible about 150 miles; it is the highest elevation in Europe. The glaciers of Mont Blanc surpass every thing of the kind upon the globe.

Q. What are the other elevations upon these ranges?

A. They vary from 4 to 12,000 feet. The range that separates France from Germany, has an elevation of 4 or 5,000 feet, and the highest elevation upon the Pyrenees exceeds 11,000 feet. But neither of these ranges abound in mineral treasures.

The great Carpathian chain divides Austria from Austrian Poland and Russia, and extends in a semi-circular form down into the province of Wallachia, and is about 500 miles in extent.

Q. What is the highest elevation of this range?

A. About 9,000 feet. Many of the summits of these mountains are covered with perennial snows; and they abound in mineral treasures.

Q. Which are the mountains in the south of Europe of less magnitude?

A. They will be considered under the different kingdoms.

Q. Which are the great chains of the north?

A. The Dorfræfield range, that divides Norway from Sweden, rises near the Skager Rack, and extends nearly to the North Cape. A branch of this range winds off from the northern parts, down through Lapland and Finland, nearly to lake Ladoga, under the name of Olonets mounts. This whole range is clothed with inexhaustible forests of fir, and abounds with minerals; south of Petersburgh it is connected with the northern Alpine range, which terminates in the Valdai Hills.

Q. What is the length and height of the Dorfræfield range?

A. About 10 or 1200 miles in its northern direction; but

it is of less elevation than the more southern chains; about 3000 feet.

Q. What are the height and extent of the Ural mounts?

A. Their highest elevations do not exceed 7,000 feet; but they extend more than 1200 miles.

Q. What branches pass off from the Ural chain?

A. It divides at the southern extremity into two branches, which will be described under the mountains of Asia.

Q. How far does the Ural chain extend north?

A. The Ural chain is supposed to stretch to the northern ocean, and through the isles of Nova Zembla. They also are clothed with rich forests, and abound in minerals.

Q. Which are the great physical divisions of Europe?

A. Europe cannot be divided into declivities and basins, like the western continent, because the face of the country is much more broken. It may more properly be divided into the mountain chains of the north and south, and the vallies between them. The mountains have generally been noticed; but the low lands remain undescribed.

Q. What kingdoms and states are found on the principal low lands, or vallies of Europe?

A. These several regions include the southern and eastern parts of Russia, or rather Russia in Europe, generally; Denmark, Prussia, and the Baltic regions of Poland. Also, the Netherlands, including Holland, the north of France, Germany, with Austria and Turkey, in the basin of the Danube.

#### RIVERS.

Q. Which are the principal rivers of Europe?

A. The Wolga, the Don, the Dneiper, Danube, and Rhine, are among the largest rivers of Europe. The others are so numerous that they will be noticed with their several countries.

#### MINERALS.

Q. Which are the minerals of Europe?

A. There are several gold mines in Europe; but the principal is at Kremnitz, in Austria; this is more valuable than all the other gold mines in Europe. Silver mines are also found in Europe, in Norway and Saxony; but the mines of Schemnitz, and Kremnitz, in Austria, are the most valuable. Iron is found in Great Britain, France, Spain, Germany, Austria, Russia, Sweden, and Swedish Lapland. The most ancient iron mine is upon the island of Elba. The mines of Danemora in Sweden; are very noted. Lapland contains a mountain of iron ore three miles long. Copper is found in Eng-

land in great abundance. Also, in the middle states of Europe, and in the Ural mountains. Lead abounds in England and Scotland; it is found also in France, Spain, and Germany. Tin is a metal more rare, and in Europe, is found only in England and Spain. Quick-silver is a rare metal, and in Europe, is found only in Spain, Germany and Austria. Cobalt in Europe, is found in Germany only. Arsenic is procured from Germany, and the south of Europe. Antimony and bismuth, are also procured from Germany.

## INFLAMMABLE MINERALS.

Q. In what countries are these minerals found?

A. England produces coal in abundance, particularly at Newcastle, and Whitehaven; it is also found in Scotland, France and Germany.

Peat is found, and extensively used, in Ireland and Germany.

Sulphur is found in Switzerland, Sicily and Poland.

Bitumen and petroleum are found and used in the place of oil, for lamps, in several places in Italy, particularly at Modena and Parma.

## MINERAL SALTS.

Q. In what part of Europe is this mineral found?

A. Mineral salt abounds in England, in the county of Cheshire, where a bed is found nearly 100 feet thick, that produces the fine Liverpool salt. Germany and Hungary abound in mineral salt; but the salt mines of Poland are the most extensive in the world.

Gypsum, or plaster of Paris, is not found in Europe, except in France, near Paris.

Soda, as a mineral, is found in Hungary.

Nitre, is found as a mineral, in Russia, Hungary and Spain.

## MINERAL SPRINGS.

Q. In what countries of Europe are found warm or hot springs?

A. In England, France, Germany, Bohemia, Hungary, Switzerland, Spain and Portugal.

Q. In what countries are chalybeate springs found?

A. At Spa, in the Netherlands, in Hanover; at Tunbridge, in England, &c.

Q. In what countries are found the saline springs?

A. At Cheltenham and Epsom, in England; and at Selters in Germany.

## PRECIOUS STONES.

Q. Which are the precious stones of Europe ?

A. Sapphires and rubies are found in France and Bohemia. The topaz is found in England, Scotland, Saxony, and Bohemia. Jasper and agate are found in Scotland and Germany. The diamond is not found in Europe.

## BUILDING STONES.

Q. Which are the building stones of Europe ?

A. White marble is found in Italy, of a superior quality ; clouded marble is found in the isles of Great Britain, in France, Spain and Italy. Chalk, as a rock, abounds in France, the Netherlands, England, and Ireland, Denmark, Poland, and the south of Russia. Flint is a production of the chalk-stone. Sand-stone is common throughout Europe.

## GOVERNMENT, &amp;c.

Q. What are the governments of Europe ?

A. The governments of Europe, are generally monarchical. They will be considered more particularly under the several kingdoms and states.

Q. What are the military and naval strength ?

A. The land forces of Europe, in time of peace, are estimated at 1,600,000 men ; in war 3,000,000. The maritime forces ;—ships of the line, 409 ; ships of fifty guns, 33 ; frigates, 348 ; inferior vessels, 1,503.

Q. What is the state of literature, agriculture, commerce and the arts.

A. These are all more highly cultivated and improved, in Europe, than in any other section of the globe.

Q. What is the state of religion in Europe ?

A. The number of different religions is stated by Hassel as follows :—Christians, 173,600,000 ; Mahometans, 3,700,000 ; Jews, 1,179,500.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Europe ?

A. The nations or tribes that emigrated from Asia into Europe, in the early ages, were rude and barbarous ; although they were distinctly a different race from the red men of America, they differed very little from them in civilization, or their manner of living. The names of these clans or tribes were numerous, and of too little consequence to be retained.

The Hellenes or Greeks, upon the shores of the Archipelago, were the first collection of tribes, who acquired the use

of letters ; they began to associate in a confederacy, and cultivate the arts, at the time of the Amphictyonic Council, 1522, before Christ. About 1000 years before Christ they subverted the kingdom of Troy.

These confederacies became so powerful as to be able to defend their country against Xerxes, the king of Persia, with an army of several millions, about 500 years before Christ. In the year 333, [ B. C. ] Alexander king of Macedon subverted the liberties of his country ; began the empire of Greece, and commenced the conquest of Asia ; and Greece became mistress of the world ; she surpassed all the nations that had gone before her, in the splendour of her arts and arms.

In the year 753, before Christ, the Roman state was founded in Italy. Such was the rapid and prosperous rise of this state, that at the commencement of the Christian era, it had subverted the kingdoms of Carthage and Greece ; overrun and subdued all the south of Europe ; conquered the Britons on the island of England ; and had become mistress of the world. Rome had eclipsed Greece in the splendour of her arts and arms.

In the year 330, after Christ, the Emperor Constantine removed his court from Rome to Byzantium, and called it Constantinople, which divided the Roman empire into two parts, the Eastern and Western, or Grecian and Latin, which laid the foundation of the Papal throne, and finally caused the ruin of the whole empire.

About the middle of the 5th century, the Western Roman empire was subverted by the northern barbarians, from the north of Europe, and Rome herself was devoted to a general massacre and pillage.

- 
- QUESTIONS.—What was the character of the first settlers of Europe ?  
 Which of the tribes first acquired the use of letters and the arts, and formed a civil compact, and when ?  
 When did they subvert the kingdom of Troy ?  
 When were the Greeks invaded by Xerxes, king of Persia, and what was the result ?  
 When did Alexander, the Greek, subvert the liberties of Greece, and establish universal empire ?  
 What was the character of Greece at that time ?  
 When was the Roman state founded ?  
 When had Rome become mistress of the world, and what states had she then conquered ?  
 What was her character at that time ?  
 When and by whom was the Roman empire divided into Eastern and Western ?  
 When and by whom was the Western Roman empire overthrown, and what period did it introduce ?

Rome, or the Western Roman empire, which had stood unrivalled in literature, arts and arms, was now stripped of her splendour and population, and possessed by the savage hordes of the north.

Here commenced the period of the dark ages, that continued about 1000 years, in which Europe became the great slaughter house of nations, by their wars and massacres. In this period the Papal kingdom, and the other modern kingdoms and states of Europe took their rise, and commenced the history of modern Europe.

These kingdoms and states generally, originated from some one clan, or horde of barbarians, who became more ambitious and enterprising than their neighbours, and by their daring innovations, and lawless ravages, overrun and subdued the neighbouring clans, until they were able to assume and maintain an independent power, and jurisdiction. As these kingdoms and states grew, and increased their powers and dominions, it became necessary to form coalitions among the smaller, or weaker states, or kingdoms, in order to check and controul the overbearing ambition of the larger, and more powerful: this commenced the system of what is termed the balance of power, which continues to this day.

The Papal kingdom is a spiritual sovereignty, that rose upon the ruins of the empire of Constantine in the west, who was the first Christian Roman Emperor. In the early part of the 7th century, the Popes began to unite their spiritual and temporal powers; and under this union they lorded it over Europe about 1000 years.

Under such an order of things, it will at once be seen, that not one moment elapsed, during the period of more than 1000 years, in which the nations of Europe were not involved in wars, either with their neighbours, or in their own dominions.

In addition to this, they carried war *en-masse* into Asia, about the year 1095, which continued at various times, through a period of about two centuries, in which the sufferings and calamities of Europe were incomparably distressing and severe. These were holy wars, styled Crusades, in order to drive the Saracens, or Mahometans out of Jerusalem, and restore the liberties of the cross. The crusades served to build up and establish the powers of the Popes. They also laid the

---

What was the character of the dark ages, and what kingdoms rose out of that period?

What was the state of Europe during this period, and what wars did they carry on against the Saracens of Asia?



foundation of chivalry, or knighterrantry, which began to give some polish to manners, and a new lustre to woman.

During this whole period of 1000 years, a military government prevailed in Europe, called the feudal system. The chiefs were the lords of the soil, and the people were slaves.

In the year 1453, Charles VII. king of France, laid the foundation of the first standing army in Europe, by establishing a regular army, and levying a tax to support it. In order to recruit this army, he obliged each village in France to support one archer, who was styled gentleman, because he was exempted from the King's tax, as were all the nobility. This measure laid the foundation of permanent governments in the several kingdoms and states, and ultimately rendered the king independent of the nobles.

In 1453, the Turks took Constantinople, which put an end to the last vestige of the Roman empire.

About the middle of the 14th century, John Wickliffe appeared in England, and commenced the reformation in religion, by laying the foundation of the puritan church.

The opinions and doctrines of Wickliffe, spread into Germany, and were embraced, and publicly taught in Bohemia, by John Huss, professor of divinity in the university of Prague, and Jerome of Prague, his colleague, men of eminent talents, piety and learning. The doctrines of John Huss commenced the reformation in Germany; but he was arraigned before the famous council of Constance, tried, condemned, and burnt as an heretic, 1415.

In 1440, the art of printing commenced in Germany. The discovery was made by a Dr. Faust, or Faustus, of Strasburg, in the low countries.

In the year 1517. Martin Luther, professor of theology in the university of Wittemberg, publicly declared against the sale of indulgences, and other corruptions of the Romish church, and prosecuted the reformation in Germany, until he laid the foundations of the Protestant cause in Europe, upon an immoveable basis.

What were the effects of the crusades upon Europe?

What was the character of these kingdoms, and what was their government?

When did the Turks take Constantinople?

When and by whom was the puritan church commenced?

When and by whom was the art of printing invented?

When did Martin Luther commence the Reformation in Germany, and what was his character?

The general wars that have followed this grand epoch in Europe, have all been more or less connected with the reformation ; even the 25 years war of the French revolution was a triumph of infidel philosophy over the corruptions of Popery, and laid the foundation of a free toleration in France, which so far favoured the reformation.

That spirit of liberty which kindled the fire of the French revolution, and subverted almost all the thrones upon the continent of Europe, was smothered by the peace of 1815. but so far from being extinguished, that the sovereigns of Europe found it necessary to enter into a general league, at the Congress of Vienna, 1816, termed the Holy Alliance, for the suppression of all further insurrections, or political revolutions, and for the security and tranquillity of their thrones.

In 1820, a revolution commenced in Spain, that subverted the legitimate government, and restored the constitution of 1812, and the king, Ferdinand VII. swore to maintain and support it ; but the Prince of Angoulême, at the head of 100,000 Frenchmen, sanctioned by the Holy Alliance, marched into Spain, abolished the constitution, and restored the legitimate government, 1822.

In 1821, a revolution commenced in the kingdom of Naples, and threatened the subversion of the government ; but the Emperor of Austria sent a strong force into Naples, that suppressed the revolution, and established the legitimate government.

At the same time a revolution commenced in England, under the mask of *radical reform*, supported by the Queen ; and threatened to subvert the government ; but the strength of the British government stood firm against the violence of the shock ; and a splendid coronation day, together with the death of the Queen, restored the tranquillity and permanency of the government, without the assistance of the Holy Alliance.

#### REMARKS.

Europe has passed through the extremes of political changes. The early ages of barbarism were succeeded by the

---

What have been the effects of the Reformation upon Europe ?

When and for what purpose did the Holy Alliance commence ?

When did the revolution commence in Spain, and how was it suppressed ?

When did the revolution commence in Naples, and how was it suppressed ?

When did the revolution commence in England, and how was it suppressed ?

What is the summary review of Europe ?

splendid empires of Greece and Rome, in which the arts and sciences, with the refinements of social life were carried to their highest improvements. Greece was subdued by the Romans, and the Romans by the Northern barbarians, and Europe in the 5th century, was again involved in the darkness of barbarism. In the 15th century, light began to arise again upon Europe, and she has now recovered that splendour that was the pride of Greece and Rome. But the naval and commercial splendour of modern Europe, far surpass every thing of the kind, ever known before. These have enabled several of the kingdoms of Europe to carry their conquests and settlements abroad, until they have added an extent of territory to their dominions, greater than the whole of Europe; an extent of territory, equal nearly to one half of the land of the globe.

## GREAT BRITAIN.

Q. What sections of Europe are comprised in the British Empire?

A. England, Wales, Scotland, Ireland, Shetland Isles, Orkney Isles, Hebrides, Isle of Man, Anglessea, Scilly Isles, Guernsey, Jersey, Alderney, Sark, Heligoland, Gibraltar, Malta, and the Ionian Isles.

Q. Which are the foreign possessions?

A. Great Britain has extensive and valuable possessions in Asia, Africa, North America, the West Indies, and claims the province of Guiana, in South America.

Q. What is the population of the British Empire?

A. In Europe, 17,781,581; foreign possessions, 64,471,581.

Q. What is the national debt?

A. It was stated in 1818, at £1,106,759,615 sterling.

Q. What are the revenue and expenditures?

A. In 1816, the revenue amounted to £61,755,153 sterling; in 1817, to £51,728,757. In 1813, the expenditure was £118,827,813. In the year ending Jan. 1817, the expenditure was £80,185,823, and the sum raised by taxes the same year, was £66,579,520.

Q. What is the state of the army and navy?

A. The army in 1818, amounted to 115,486 men; in Europe, 65,126 men. The navy in 1814 consisted of 1022 vessels of war; 250 of which were ships of the line; the whole carrying 140,000 men.

Q. What is the amount of shipping?

A. The tonnage of the British empire in 1816, was

2,983,940 tons ; of England 2,152,868 ; of Scotland 263,536 ; of Ireland 63,229 tons.

Q. What is the amount of exports ?

A. The exports in 1816, amounted to £60,983,894 ; of which goods to the amount of £44,053,455 were of British productions or manufactures.

The metallic manufactures of England employ more than 300,000 workmen, and yield more than £17,000,000 annually.

The woollen manufactures employ more than 500,000 workmen, and yield an amount of more than £180,000,000 annually.

The cotton manufactures employ more than 400,000 workmen, in England and Wales, and produce £15,000,000 annually.

Q. What is the nobility of Great Britain ?

A. There are five orders of English nobility, who have hereditary seats in parliament, and hereditary titles ; viz. 1, Dukes ; 2, Marquises ; 3, Earls ; 4, Viscounts ; 5, Barons. There are also baronets, who have hereditary titles.

Q. What is the government of Great Britain ?

A. The government of Great Britain is an hereditary monarchy, in which the power of the sovereign is controlled by the influence of the aristocracy, in the house of peers ; and by that of the democracy, in the house of commons.—The house of lords is composed, 1st, of all the nobility of England, who have attained the age of 21 years, and who labour under no disqualification ;—number in 1820, 238 ; viz. 25 dukes, (7 of them royal dukes,) 17 marquises, 100 earls, 22 viscounts, and 133 barons ;—2dly, of 16 representative peers from Scotland ;—3dly, of 28 representative peers from Ireland ; and 4thly, of 32 spiritual lords, viz. the 2 English archbishops, and 24 bishops, and 5 representative Irish bishops : total in 1820, 372.—The house of commons consists of 658 members, chosen by counties, cities and boroughs ; 489 are chosen for England, 24 for Wales, 45 for Scotland, and 100 for Ireland.

The ministry is composed of the first lord of the treasury, the chancellor of the exchequer, and three secretaries, of foreign affairs, of the home department, and of war ; the lord chancellor, the president of the council, the treasurer of the navy, the paymaster of the forces, the commissioners of the treasury, and other persons of high trust. The first lord of the treasury is usually considered the premier, or

prime minister. It sometimes happens that the offices of first lord of the treasury, and of chancellor of the exchequer, are held by the same person.

[For a further Geographical description and History of Great Britain, see England, Scotland, Ireland, &c.]

## ENGLAND, INCLUDING WALES.

Q. What are the situation and extent of England ?

A. England is bounded on the N. by Scotland ; E. by the straits of Dover and the North sea ; S. by the Atlantic ocean, and British channel ; and W. by St. George's channel, the Irish sea, and North channel, which separate it from Ireland. It is about 400 miles long and 150 broad, and contains about 50,000 square miles.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Wales ?

A. Wales lies upon the western shore of England ; is 130 miles long and 100 broad.

Q. How is England separated from Scotland ?

A. England is separated from Scotland by a line extending across the island near the Frith of Forth, embracing the river Tweed, the Cheviot hills, and the Solway Frith.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population ?

A. England is divided into 40 counties, and Wales into 12 ; and these into towns. Population of England, 11,260,555 : Wales, 717,108.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. Extremely variable ; it is subject to frequent rains and fogs, and irregular frosts. It is not uncommon to have frosts in June, and the temperature of June in December ; yet the country is always green throughout the year.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. It is neither mountainous nor level ; but delightfully undulating with hill and dale, and richly ornamented with all the variety which the highly improved state of agriculture can possibly produce.

Q. Which are the mountains ?

A. A range of hills or mountains, extends through the west of England, particularly in the Principality of Wales, as far as the county of Cumberland.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. England has some extensive plains, like the Salisbury plains ; and some barren heath ; but the soil otherwise is a

strong clay and loam. The productions of England are such as are common to the temperate zone: wheat, rye, barley, oats, buck-wheat, &c. ; but their summers are not sufficiently long to bring to perfection Indian corn; it does not rank among their crops. Their pasturage is good; and England is noted for fine horses, sheep and cattle.

Q. What is the state of gardening in England?

A. English gardening is in great perfection; not only the natural vegetables, fruits and shrubs are highly cultivated, but exotics of all climes are frequent in the gardens of England, by the assistance of hot and green houses.

Q. Which are the minerals?

A. These are numerous, viz. gold, silver, copper, iron, lead, & tin; the mines of Cornwall abound in the latter. Also, salt, marble, free-stone, and coal, are abundant.

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. Lakes Winandermere, Derwent, and Ulywater.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Thames, Severn, Trent, Humber, Ouse, Mersey, Dee, four Avons, Tweed, and Tyne.

Q. Which are the principal towns and naval ports?

A. London, Portsmouth, Plymouth, Tor-bay, Milford-Haven, Chatham, and Warwick, are noted naval ports. Liverpool and Nottingham are famous for their potteries and hosiery; Wilton and Kidderminster, for carpets; Birmingham and Sheffield, for cutlery and hardware; Manchester, for cottons; York, Wakefield and Leeds, for woollens; Newcastle, for coal; Coventry, for ribbons; Gloucester, for pins; Devizes is noted for its wool; Bath, for its mineral springs; Bristol has an extensive trade; Hull is engaged in the whale fishery; Exeter is a large commercial town; and Yarmouth is enriched by her fishery.

Wrexham is the principal town of Wales, famous for its flannels; Brecknock, Carmarthen, Pembroke, Holyhead and Milford-Haven, are also in Wales; the latter has the best harbour in Europe, in which more than 1000 ships may lie with safety.

Q. Which are the principal places of fashionable resort?

A. Bath is the most noted for its mineral waters. Brighton for sea-bathing. Ramsgate, Margate and Scarborough, are of some note. Cheltenham, Clifton, Buxton, Matlock, Harrowgate, and Tunbridge-Wells, are all places of considerable resort.

Q. What is the situation of London?

A. London stands upon both sides of the river Thames, about sixty miles from its mouth, and is connected by six elegant bridges, viz

London bridge, Black Friar's bridge, Westminster bridge, Waterloo bridge, Southwick and Vauxhall bridges. These are all in a different style ; but most masterly specimens of architecture.

Q. What are the extent and population ?

A. It is about thirty miles in circuit, and contains more than 100,000 dwelling houses, and more than 1,000,000 of people ; the largest city in Europe.

Q. What are its commercial advantages ?

A. As a rich commercial city, it surpasses all others, and is the capital of the whole British empire ; which is also the largest in the world.

The ships or vessels of London amount to six hundred thousand tons, and her annual imports and exports to more than seventy million pounds sterling.

Q. Which are the public buildings and places of public resort ?

A. Five royal palaces ; 7 colleges or societies of literati ; 13 public libraries ; 16 mans of courts ; 91 companies or rather guilds of tradesmen with their stately halls to transact business ; St. Paul's church, guildhall, and the lord mayor's palace ; more than 100 churches, nearly 100 parochial chapels, and nearly 200 chapels of different denominations, and 6 Jewish synagogues and 35 foreign churches ; 33 public free schools, 300 public charity schools, and more than 3000 private schools ; 27 hospitals ; 95 alms houses ; 57 parochial work houses, 5 houses of correction, and 14 prisons ; 45 offices of traffic and commerce ; 4 play houses ; 33 markets, 2 magnificent parks, 6 public gardens, and the monument.

Q. What are the dimensions of St. Paul's church ?

A. It is 550 feet long, 282 broad, and 340 high to the top of the cross : it was 35 years in building : cost £757,954.

Q. What are the dimensions of guild hall.

A. This noble edifice is 153 feet long, 43 feet broad, and 55 feet high, and is capacious enough to contain 7000 people.

Q. What is the situation of the tower of London ?

A. The tower of London stands upon the banks of the Thames, contiguous to the city of London, is a strong fortress upon a commanding position, and covers more than 12 acres of ground within its walls.

Q. Who built this tower, and what was its design ?

A. The tower was built by king William II. about the year 1080, as a strong fortress to protect the city, and as a royal palace. It is used also, as a royal arsenal, and but two often as a royal prison. It is also a royal treasury for the jewels and archives of the crown, and the mint ; a grand deposit for all the royal curiosities, and a state prison for all the great criminals of state.

Q. What is the history of London.

A. London was founded by the Romans about 40 years before Christ, and became a flourishing city in the time of Nero, 60 or 70 years after Christ. It was pillaged by queen Boadicea, in the year 65. In the years 830, 851, 872, 1013, and 1016, it was ravaged by the Danes. In the years 983, 1078, 1086, 1175, 1212, and 1666, it was visited by destructive fires. In the last, London bridge was burnt, together with 39 churches, 400 streets, and 13,000 dwelling houses ; the cathedral of St. Paul, and guild-hall, with many other public buildings. Damaged £10,780,000.

Q. What other calamities have befallen London ?

A. The plague commenced in 661, and ravaged the city. It appeared again in 1407, 1509, 1603, and in 1665 ; in all which, more than 200,000 people died. In 1030, 600 houses were demolished by a hurricane. In 1348, a pestilence commenced that lasted several years, and destroyed more than 100,000 people. In 1250, more than 20,000 perished with hunger.

The plague in 1665, (the year before the great fire) so depopulated London, that the grass grew green in many of its streets. It destroyed more than 100,000 people in one year.

Q. What public edifice remains in London, commemorative of the great fire of 1666 ?

A. The monument. This lofty structure is considered as the finest column in the world. It is 202 feet high, erected upon a base of 28 feet square, and crowned with a gilded flame 32 feet high. The shaft is 20 feet higher than Trajan's pillar at Rome. Within is a black marble staircase that leads to an iron balcony, within 32 feet of the top.

Q. What is the amount of the capital of the bank of England ?

A. It is £11,636,200 sterling.

Q. What is the state of literature in England ?

A. The English have equalled, if not surpassed all other nations in the arts and sciences ; the universities of Oxford and Cambridge are very celebrated.

Q. What is the religion of England ?

A. The Protestant Episcopal Church is the established religion ; but a free toleration is enjoyed in England.

Q. What are the internal improvements ?

A. The first canal in England, was made by the duke of Bridgewater, in 1756. Since that time canals have become very numerous, opening an internal communication between most of the great towns, for the conveyance of their manufactures, and also for the transportation of agricultural produce to the seaports. They are distinguished by being of moderate width, generally straight, passing through hills by tunnels, and over valleys or rivers, by aqueducts, and few, if any, are without locks. Some of the principal, are the Ashly de la Zouch canal, 50 miles long ; the Basinstroke 37 ; the Coventry and Oxford ; the Chesterfield 45 ; the Ellesmere 57 ; the Grand Junction canal, branching off from the Thames at Bedford, 100 ; the Grand Trunk, opening with the Severn, 135 ; the Hereford 35 ; the Ghennet and Avon 57 ; the Lancaster 76 ; the Liverpool and Leeds 130 ; the Oxford 91 ; the Leicester and Northampton 43 ; the Thames and Severn 30 ; the Wilts and Berks 52 ; the Warwick and Birmingham 25 ; the Worcester and Birmingham 31 1-2 miles long. There are also many others. The canal from London to the Medway is remarkable for its tunnel, two miles through the chalk hills ; vessels of 300 tons may pass this canal. The



length of the canals in England, taken collectively, exceeds 2000 miles.

Iron railways have recently been introduced into England, which have greatly facilitated the conveyance of heavy burdens upon land, and are in many places become as useful as canals, by the means of waggons moved by steam.

A tunnel is now constructing, and in great forwardness, near London, as a pass-way under the river Thames, that is calculated to afford the same facilities of passage as either of the bridges in London.

Q. What are the antiquities?

A. The temple of the Druids, called Stone Henge, in Wiltshire; the altars, monumental inscriptions, and military ways of the Romans; and their walls near the Frith or Forth, built against the Picts and Scots. Also, the Saxon ecclesiastical edifices and forts.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of England?

A. England was originally inhabited by the Britons, who sprang from the Gauls or Celtæ. They were invaded by the Romans under Julius Caesar about 40 years before the christian era, who founded London; and in the year 41, they were more generally subdued by the Roman general, Claudius.

In the year 85 of the christian era, the Roman general Agricola, fully subdued the Britons, and they continued a Roman province until the year 410; then the Roman troops were withdrawn to defend their own country against the northern barbarians. The Britons, soon after, were so harassed by the Picts and Scots, their ancient and natural enemies, that they invited the Romans to return to their protection; but when they found this impracticable, they invited over the Saxons, from Germany, who in their turn subdued the Britons, in the year 455, and divided their conquest into seven kingdoms, or states, called the Heptarchy, as follows:† 1. The King-

† The counties, as belonging to their several kingdoms, are designated on the Map by the Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7.

QUESTIONS.—Who were the first people of England; when and by whom were they conquered?

When and for what cause did the Romans abandon Britain, and what were the consequences?

When and by whom was Britain next subdued, and what confederacy did they establish?

dom of Kent, contained only the county of Kent: its kings were in number 17.—This kingdom began 454; ended 828.—Its first christian king was Ethelbert. 2. The kingdom of South Saxons contained the counties of Sussex and Surry, its kings were 8.—This kingdom began 491; ended 685.—Its first christian king was Adelwach. 3. The kingdom of East Saxons contained the counties of Essex and Middlesex: its kings were 11.—This kingdom began 527; ended 827.—Its first christian king was Serbert. 4. The kingdom of Northumberland contained Yorkshire, Durham, Lancashire, Westmoreland, Cumberland, and Northumberland: its kings were 31.—This kingdom began 547; ended 827.—Its first christian king was Edwin. 5. The kingdom of Mercia contained the counties of Huntingdon, Rutland, Lincoln, Northampton, Leicester, Derby, Nottingham, Oxford, Chester, Salop, Gloucester, Worcester, Stafford, Warwick, Buckingham, Bedford, and Hartford: its kings were 48.—This kingdom began 582; ended 827.—Its first christian king was Peada. 6. The kingdom of East Angles contained the counties of Suffolk, Norfolk, Cambridge, and the isle of Ely: its kings were 14.—This kingdom began 575; ended 792.—Its first christian king was Redwall. 7. The kingdom of West-Saxons contained the counties of Cornwall, Devon, Dorset, Somerset, Wilts, Hants, and Berks: its kings were 17.—This kingdom began 519; ended 828.—Its first christian king was Kingillis. The Saxons, though they were divided into seven kingdoms, were, for the most part, subject only to one monarch, who was styled king of the English nation; the most powerful giving law to the others, and succeeded to the number of 41, when England was invaded by William, duke of Normandy. This kingdom was united into a kingdom by Egbert, the first king of England, by a general council, held at Winchester, in the year 827.

England was conquered by the Danes in the year 877, and recovered by king Alfred in 880, who divided it into counties, and hundreds, in the year 886; established a regular militia, framed a body of laws in 890, encouraged learning by founding schools; founded the university at Oxford, and invited learned men from all parts of Europe to settle in England.

---

What were the names of the several states belonging to the Heptarchy?

Who united this Heptarchy, and became the first king?

When and by whom was England next conquered, and by whom was it recovered?

and gave great encouragement to the pursuit of learning ; he enjoined it upon all free-holders, or owners of land, to send their children to school ; and he gave preferment in church and state to such only as had proficiency in learning ; but above all, his own example was the most impressive ; although he had every thing to create that could civilize, govern, protect and defend a rude and barbarous people ; and although he fought more than fifty pitched battles by land and sea, yet in one short life he acquired a general and extensive knowledge of the most useful literature ; he introduced and encouraged the mechanical arts, and manufactures, and prompted men of industry and activity to apply themselves to navigation ; and thus laid the foundation of English commerce. In short, Alfred was the founder of all those civil, religious, literary and commercial privileges, that England enjoys, together with that system of liberty which now prevails in England.

Alfred died in the year 901, and left in his will, that " every Englishman ought ever to be as free as his own thoughts."

In the year 910, the Danes re-commenced their ravages in England, which continued to the year 1017, when Canute, the Dane, usurped the throne of England.

In the year 1041, Edward the confessor, son of Ethelred, restored the English throne, and left it to his son Harold, who expelled the Danes.

In the year 1066, William the Norman, styled the conqueror, invaded England, and placed himself upon the throne. William subverted the whole system of Saxon liberties, that Alfred had founded, and introduced the feudal system into England ; which laid the foundation of all the wretchedness and distress that England endured for many centuries. This system was a military aristocracy, that organized a regular chain of subordination and service, from the sovereign to the villain, and rendered the body of the people slaves to the nobles, who oppressed them with the most severe and cruel exactions, and services, from which there was no appeal. Wil-

---

What was the character and government of king Alfred ?

When did king Alfred die, and what was worthy of particular notice in his will ?

When did the Danes re-invade England, and who usurped the throne, and when ?

When and by whom was the throne restored ?

When and by whom was it next conquered ; what were the consequences, and how long did they continue ?

William seized on the estates of the English nobility, and conferred them upon the officers of his army, and other Norman friends and followers, which rendered the oppression still more severe: he also abolished the English or Saxon language at court, and introduced the Norman French language, and ordered all the records of the kingdom to be kept in the same; in short, he converted England into a Norman kingdom.

This state of things opened the field of civil wars in England, that raged from time to time, between the kings and barons, people and barons; and people and kings; and the kingdom became a theatre of carnage; through these successive struggles, down to the time of the Commonwealth, in the middle of the 17th century, about 600 years. The descendants of William laid claims from time to time, to the possessions of Normandy, which involved them in expensive and bloody wars with France, down to the reign of Henry VII. of England, 1492, about 400 years; when Henry relinquished all the claims of the English crown upon Normandy for a sum of money.

Q. Who were the most distinguished monarchs upon the English throne, from the Norman conquest to the revolution under Charles I. and the Commonwealth?

A. There appears no king of any particular eminence, until Henry II. Henry was of the Norman dynasty; ascended the throne Oct. 24th, 1154. Conquered Ireland, 1172. Took the king of Scots prisoner, and made him resign the independence of his crown, 1175. Died with grief, 1189, and was succeeded by his son Richard I. Richard distinguished himself in the wars of Syria, or Crusades, to recover the Holy Land. Richard signalized himself by his valor, as one of the greatest champions of the cross; but was slain soon after his return to England, in attempting to storm one of the castles of his barons: and was succeeded by his brother John, 1199.

John was a weak king, but his reign will ever be rendered memorable for the great charter of English liberties, which his barons extorted from him, called *magna charta*, 1215. In this charter, the essential features of Saxon liberty, which Alfred had founded, and which William I. had subverted, were now restored to England, upon parchment; privileges to the barons, the clergy, and the people; but the enjoyment of

---

Who were the most distinguished kings under the Norman dynasty, and what were their characters?

When was *Magna Charta* obtained, and what was it?

these liberties the people of England had to obtain by a succession of bloody struggles with the crown, under the strife of privilege and prerogative, for more than 400 years :—such is the difference between liberty on paper, and liberty in fact, or possession and enjoyment. The *magna charta* of king John was not a constitution, it was only a *bill of rights*, which defined the powers of the crown, and the liberties of the people. The successive kings of England considered this *bill of rights* as having been extorted from king John, and used their endeavours to subvert it, or set it aside ; but the people claimed it as their natural right, and urged its observance, until they obtained, through a succession of usages, the present system of British free government.

In the year 1271, Edward I. succeeded his father, Henry III. ; in 1276, he attempted to subdue Wales ; and in 1282, he accomplished the conquest of Wales ; Lewellyn their last prince was slain. The more effectually to secure the conquest of Wales, Edward ordered all the Welch bards to be put to death, that they might not, by their martial songs, inspire their countrymen with a spirit to rebel. In 1284, the queen of Edward, gave a prince to the Welch people, at Caernarvon ; and the heir apparent to the crown of England, has inherited the title and revenue of prince of Wales, to this time.

In the reign of Henry VIII. in 1536, the principality of Wales was incorporated with England, as an integral part of the kingdom.

In 1296, Edward entered Scotland with a powerful army, and by his sword and intrigues took possession of the kingdom, and sent king Baliol as a prisoner to the tower of London. The next year sir William Wallace roused up his countrymen to throw off the English yoke, and led them to victory ; Edward again attempted the conquest of Scotland, but failed, and died in the attempt, 1307.

Edward II. succeeded to the throne, and attempted to prosecute the plan of his father ; but failed, and Scotland remained free.

Q. What memorable events signalized the reign of Edward III. ?

A. Edward III. was successful in his wars with Scotland and France ; he fought the memorable battle of Cressy, in

---

When and by whom was Wales subdued, and when was it incorporated with England ?

When and by whom did England wage successful war against Scotland, and what were the consequences ?

France, on the 26th of August, 1346, in which more than 40,000 French were slain; Edward gained this battle by means of four iron cannon, which were the first ever used in Europe. This action, by the use of gunpowder and fire-arms, commenced a new military era in Europe. From this time, the wars of Europe began to assume a new stamp, and become less barbarous and sanguinary; and may be considered as one of the means, (perhaps not the least) of introducing, or bringing forward the present state of civil refinement.

In Oct. 1364, Philippa, queen of Edward III. took David, king of Scots, in a successful battle; and in 1356, Edward, the Black Prince, son of Edward III. took John, the French king at the famous battle of Poitiers; and Edward III. had the honor of the two kings for his guests in London, for several years. The splendour of Edward's court, gave as high a lustre to the English manners, as the success of his wars had given to their arms.

The limits of this work will not admit of the relation of the important events that took place in the reigns of Henry V. VI. and VII. nor the distressing civil wars between the houses of York and Lancaster.

It is an important feature in the English history, that Henry VIII. severed the English crown from the dominion of the Pope, in 1533; and instituted the present Episcopal church, in 1534, which laid the foundation of Protestantism in England. Henry abolished all religious cloisters in England; in 1538, Edward VI. introduced the present liturgy. Queen Elizabeth confirmed the ecclesiastical establishment; the reign of queen Elizabeth stands pre-eminent in the annals of England, and of Europe.

James the VI. of Scotland, succeeded queen Elizabeth, and became James I. of England, in 1603, which commenced the union of England and Scotland, under the title of Great Brit-

When and by whom was the memorable battle of Cressy (in France) fought, and by what means was the victory obtained?

What were the consequences of this battle upon Europe and the world?

When were the kings of Scotland and France prisoners in England, and by whom were they taken?

When and by whom was the Episcopal church established in England?

When and by whom was the present liturgy introduced?

When and by whom was the English church confirmed, and what was her character?

When and under what reign did the union of England and Scotland commence with the kingdom of Great Britain?

in. This union was confirmed by act of parliament, in the reign of William and Mary, in 1707.

Q. What is the history of Great Britain ?

A. King James. in attempting to suppress a spirit of free toleration in religion, which became popular during his reign, opened a field of civil war, both in England and Scotland, that subverted the monarchy in the reign of his son and successor, Charles I. ; brought the king to the block, and established the Commonwealth under Oliver Cromwell, as Lord High Protector, 1653.

In the year 1651, the Commonwealth parliament passed the famous navigation act,

In the year 1660, the monarchy was restored under Charles II.

From this time Great Britain became engaged in wars with the Dutch, French, and Spaniards, almost without intermission, down to the peace of Paris, 1763, when she dispossessed France of all her possessions in North America, except New-Orleans. This conquest was then supposed to have secured the peace of her American colonies ; but in 1775, Great Britain levied war upon her American colonies, that ended in 1783, by the peace of Paris, which declared the colonies free and independent states ; in this war she lost more than 100,000 men, and expended more than £100,000,000 sterling.

In the year 1789, the French revolution commenced, and Great Britain soon after entered into a coalition with the powers of the continent, to check and control it, which involved her in a war that continued, with but little intermission, down to the peace of 1814 and 1815, nearly 25 years. This was the longest and most violent war in which Great Britain was ever engaged ; but by the length of her purse, and the strength of her navy, she was enabled to give that support to the powers of the continent, which checked and controlled the French revolution, and restored the monarchy of France.

In 1800, Ireland became an integral part of Great Britain, by the union of the two kingdoms.

In the year 1812, the United States of America declared war against Great Britain, which raged in America, and upon

What is the history of Great Britain ?

When did the French revolution commence ? what were its effects upon Great Britain ? and when did it close ?

When was Ireland united with Great Britain ?

When did the United States declare war against Great Britain, and by what peace was it closed ?

the ocean, to the peace of Ghent, February, 1815. Since that time, Great Britain has enjoyed uninterrupted peace.

In the early part of the 16th century, the English began to extend their commerce into India. Such has been the success of British commerce and enterprise in India, through a period of 300 years, that she now possesses more than 60,000,000 of subjects in that country, and derives from thence such a revenue as has enabled her to sit the arbiter of Europe, and give law to the ocean.

Since the commencement of the French revolution in 1789, Great Britain has increased her trade with the Spanish American colonies. Since these colonies commenced their revolutions in 1810, Great Britain has continued to extend her commerce with them; and in 1824, she acknowledged the independence of all the Spanish provinces of North and South America, which has confirmed to her a free commercial access to the wealth of all Spanish America.

Great Britain is now at peace with all the world, and enjoys a free trade, not only with India and America, but with the whole habitable globe, and her prosperity was never so flourishing since she was a nation, as at this time.

---

What have been the effects of British commerce with India?  
 When did Great Britain acknowledge the independence of Spanish America, and what have been the consequences?  
 What is the present state of the British nation?

## SCOTLAND.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Scotland?

A. Scotland is bounded on the W. and N. by the Atlantic ocean; E. by the German ocean; S. E. by England, from which it is separated in part by the river Tweed; S. by Solway Frith; and S. W. by that part of the Irish sea called the North channel. It is about 300 miles long and 190 broad.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population of Scotland?

A. Scotland is divided into circuits and counties, as an integral part of Great Britain. Population 1,864,864.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. It is rough and mountainous in the north. The Grampian hills intersect the middle parts; but the south is an extended plain.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The mountains of the north are barren; the Grampian hills yield excellent pasturage, and the southern plains are



well cultivated. The productions are rye, barley, and oats, principally.

Q. How are the people divided ?

A. Into Highland and Lowland Scotch ; the former retain the leading features of the feudal system to this day, and are a hardy, brave, warlike people. The Lowland Scotch are an industrious, enterprising and intelligent people. Literature and the arts are highly cultivated among them. They are rich in agriculture, manufactures, commerce, and fisheries.

Q. Which are the minerals ?

A. Lead, iron, coal, lapislazuli and alum.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Forth, Tay, Dee, Tweed, Spray, Clyde, &c.

Q. Which are the principal lakes or lochs ?

A. Lochs Lomond, Tay, Fine, Awe, and Ness.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. Ben-Nevis, which is 4,387 feet above the level of the sea, and the highest upon the island of Great Britain. Also: Ben-Chronachan, 3,390 feet.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Edinburgh is the capital of Scotland, near the river Forth ; it stands upon an eminence, and is noted for its university ; many of the houses are from ten to fourteen stories high, and mostly built of freestone and brick ; it is a place of considerable trade ; Leith is its seaport.

Glasgow, upon Clyde, is a more commercial city than Edinburgh, and has more manufactures ; but not so prosperous ; it has the most splendid cathedral in Scotland. Aberdeen and Dundee, are large flourishing cities ; the former has a university. St. Andrews also has a university. Perth is a handsome town. Berwick and Sterling are noted in Scottish annals.

Q. What are the manufactures ;

A. The manufacture of iron, woollen, cotton and linen, are the principal.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. It is very flourishing. The Scotch have a natural taste for the arts and sciences.

Q. Which are the antiquities and curiosities of Scotland ?

A. There are many remains of the ancient Druids ; Roman camps, walls, &c. Also, a petrifying cave ; and oyster-shells upon a mountain 20 miles from the sea.

Q. What is their national character ?

A. They are brave, hardy, temperate and industrious.

Q. Which are the isles of Scotland ?

A. These are numerous upon the coast. The Hebrides

consist of a range of islands, about 300 in number, and contain a population of 70,000. The Orkneys, on the north, are 26 in number; they were early settled by a hardy and industrious people.

The Shetland isles are more northern still: are more numerous than the Orkneys, and contain a population of 20,000. Grazing and fishing are their chief employment.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Scotland?

A. Scotland boasts of a line of kings from Fergus I. who reigned 328 years before the christian era; and that she has never been conquered. She transferred her last king, James VI. to the throne of England, as the rightful heir, under the title of James I. in the year 1603. Since that time the two kingdoms have been united under one crown, under the title of Great Britain. In the year 1707, this union was confirmed by act of parliament.

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Scotland united with England, and under what title?

When was this union confirmed by parliament?

### IRELAND.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Ireland?

A. Ireland is bounded on the E. by St. George's channel, the Irish sea, and North channel, which separate it from England; and on all other sides by the Atlantic ocean. It is about 300 miles long and 150 broad.

Q. How is Ireland divided, and what is the population?

A. It is divided into four provinces, viz. Leinster, Ulster, Munster, and Connaught; and into 32 counties. Population about 5,000,000.

Q. What is the climate of Ireland?

A. The same as of England; but the seasons are generally more moist.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Sliebh-bloom, and Sliebh-donard: the latter has an elevation of 3,168 feet.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. Ireland abounds with swamps, which the inhabitants have exerted themselves very much to drain, and reduce to tillage; the arable and pasture grounds are very productive;

and the Irish beef is the best in the world. All the various kinds of grain in England, grow in Ireland; but oats and potatoes are the principal food of the poor.

Q. What is peculiar to Ireland?

A. There is not a venomous reptile or animal, upon the island.

Q. Which are the minerals?

A. Copper, lead, iron, coal, marble, and some silver.

Q. Which are the principal lakes or loughs?

A. Lough Neagh, famous for its petrifying waters. Lough Erne, Foyle, Corrib, Ree and Derg.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Shannon, Black-water, Barrow, Suir, Liffy, Noir, Boyne, Bandon, and Derg.

Q. What is the inland navigation of Ireland?

A. The grand canal connects the Liffy, with the Shannon, 33 miles in length. The royal canal connects the city of Dublin with the Shannon. Several others connect Dublin with the streams of the interior.

Q. Which are the principal cities?

A. Dublin, the capital of Ireland, stands upon the Liffy; and is the second city in Great Britain; it has a population of 140,000, and contains the only university in Ireland.

Cork is next to Dublin in size, but has a more extensive foreign trade. Limerick is one of the most flourishing cities in Ireland. Galway, Waterford, Belfast, Londonderry, and Kilkenny, are all flourishing towns.

Q. What is their national character?

A. The Irish, like the Scotch, are brave, hardy, frugal and industrious; quick of apprehension, impatient of injuries; violent in their passions, and fond of glory. The peasantry are more depressed than any other class of poor in Europe, except the Poles.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Ireland?

A. The Irish were the descendants of the ancient Celts, like the Scots and Picts, a rude and barbarous race.

The Irish were converted to Christianity by St. Patrick, in the fifth century.

Strongbow, Earl of Pembroke, (England,) invaded Ireland in the year 1170; and Henry II. completed the conquest, 1172. Ireland became the theatre of wars, which continued from time to time, under various insurrections and rebellions, down to the time of their union with Great Britain; in

the year 1800. The Irish suffered in those scenes, with unparalleled severity.

Insurrections are still common to Ireland ; and there is no apparent end to their sufferings.

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Ireland invaded and conquered ?

What consequences followed, and when was she united with Great Britain ?

What is the present state of Ireland ?

### British Isles and Foreign Possessions.

Q. What are the foreign possessions of Great Britain ?

A. Those of North America and the West-Indies have been described. Those of India and the Oriental Isles will be described in their place ; but the adjacent Isles, together with Malta, St. Helena, Heligoland, and the fortress of Gibraltar, deserve some notice in this place.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Isle of Man ?

A. The Isle of Man, situated in the Irish sea, is about 30 miles long, and 70 in circumference. It has a population of about 30,000. The island is generally level, except the interior, which is mountainous. Agriculture is highly improved ; and the people are generally frugal and industrious. It is the seat of a Bishop's see ; and contains 17 parishes.

Q. What are the situation and character of Guernsey, Jersey, Alderney, and Sark ?

A. They are small islands, near the coast of France, subject to their own laws ; and retain their ancient manners, customs, and language, which are Norman French.

Q. What are the situation and character of Malta ?

A. Malta is situated in the Mediterranean sea, near the island of Sicily, and is strongly fortified. It was visited by St. Paul, in his voyage to Rome, and then called Melita. It was given to the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem, by the Emperor Charles V. in the 16th century, who took the appellation of the Knights of Malta. It was taken by General Bonaparte, on his way to Egypt, in 1798. It was taken by the English two years after, and confirmed to them by the peace of 1814. The Maltese are governed by their own laws.

Q. What are the situation and character of Heligoland ?

A. Heligoland lies off the mouth of the river Elbe, and contains an English garrison, together with a few Danish fishermen ; it is of little value.

Q. What are the situation and character of St. Helena ?

A. St. Helena, like Heligoland, is a barren rock ; it lies off the coast of Africa, in the Atlantic ocean. It has been strongly fortified by the English, as a place of rendezvous for their India ships. It will ever be rendered memorable, by its having been the place where the Emperor Napoleon was confined, and died.

Q. What are the situation and character of Gibraltar ?

A. Gibraltar is a well known promontory in the south of Spain, on the straits which connect the Atlantic with the Mediterranean. It consists of a great rocky mountain, running from north to south, about three miles long, from half a mile to three-fourths wide, and from 1200 to 1400 feet high. On the north side is an isthmus, about 1-1-2 miles long, and half as much broad, which connects this vast mass of rock with the continent. The north front of the rock is almost perpendicular ; the east side is full of frightful precipices ; while the south, being narrow and abrupt, admits of hardly any possibility of approach. On none of these sides has this tremendous mass ever been attacked. The west front is almost as abrupt as the others, but on this side it is most vulnerable, and here are the great batteries and works of defence. The importance of Gibraltar arises chiefly from its bay, which is of great extent, and forms a convenient naval station, being protected from the more dangerous winds. Gibraltar was first fortified in the modern style in the reign of the emperor Charles V. It was taken by the English in 1704 ; it has since been repeatedly besieged, (first in 1705, next in 1727, and lastly in 1779,) but always without success. The town of Gibraltar stands at the foot of the promontory, on the north-west side. The population, exclusive of the garrison, is above 12,000, partly British, partly Spaniards, Italians, Jews, and even Moors, all attracted by mercantile enterprise. The trade of the place embraces a great variety of articles. The support of this post is very expensive to Great Britain. Excavations of great extent have been made by gunpowder, to establish communications between the different posts, and enable them to be relieved without a loss of lives from the enemy's fire.

## FRANCE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of France ?

A. France is bounded on the N. by the British channel, and straits of Dover ; E. by Italy, Switzerland and German

ny; S. by the Mediterranean sea, and the Pyrenean mounts, that separate it from Spain; and W. by the bay of Biscay. It is about 600 miles long and 500 broad. It contains 200,000 square miles.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population?

A. France is divided into 32 provinces, or 86 departments, including Corsica. Population about 29,000,000.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, and climate?

A. France is pleasantly undulated, and the face of the country is replete with interesting scenery; the soil is fertile, and the climate mild and salubrious.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Alps and Appenines; with mounts Jura, Cevennes, &c.

Q. What are the productions?

A. It abounds in all the various kinds of grain and fruits, common to the temperate zone, and produces wines in abundance.

Q. What is the state of agriculture?

A. France is more improved in agriculture, than any other state in Europe, except England. The vineyards of France are very flourishing.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Gold, silver, quick-silver, copper, tin, lead, iron, and coal; also free-stone, marble, turquois, or Turkey-stone, sere, chalk, and magnesia.

Q. What are the lakes?

A. France has but two lakes; the one on the summit of a hill, which is unfathomable; and the other gives a thundering noise, on a slight percussion.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Rhine, Rhone, Seine, Saone, Garonne, Loire, Somme, &c.

Q. What is the inland navigation?

A. The canal of Languedoc, which connects the river Garonne with the Mediterranean sea, is the longest in Europe; it is navigated by boats of 100 tons, through a distance of 140 miles; it passes through a tunnel 545 feet in length.

The canal of the centre of France knites the Saone with the Loire, 71 miles in length; this canal is much used.

The canal of Burgundy unites the Saone with the Seine, which, when completed, will be about 148 miles.

The canal of Picardy, connecting the rivers of France with the Scheldt, passes through two tunnels, the longest of which is about 31-2 miles, and 26 feet wide.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Paris is the capital; it stands upon both sides of the

Seine : it is one of the most magnificent cities in Europe, and has a population of about 700,000. Paris is the nursery of the arts and sciences, and was in the 9th century, the capital of the empire of the west ; and has aspired to the dominion again, under several of the ambitious kings of France, particularly Francis I. Charles VIII. Louis XII. and XIV. and the emperor Napoleon. Havre is the seaport of Paris, and the seat of its foreign commerce. Versailles is noted for the splendour of its royal palaces, and the residence of the court.

Q. What other cities of importance are found in France ?

A. Bordeaux is a rich and flourishing city, famous for its wines and brandy. Bayonne is a distinguished city, and rendered famous for the treachery of the emperor Napoleon, in seizing Ferdinand VII. and his father Charles IV. of Spain, and detaining them as prisoners in France, in 1808. Marseilles is the richest city in the south of France, and the centre of the Levant and Barbary trade. Montpellier is a large and beautiful city, famous for the salubrity of the air, and the resort of invalids. Lyons is one of the largest and most flourishing cities of France ; it is famous for its silks, &c. It was a theatre of distress during the insurrection, at the time of the French revolution, in 1793. Nantz is a rich commercial city, near the mouth of the Loire, famous for her brandy. &c. Nantz, as well as Lyons, was rendered famous by her sufferings in the revolution. Rouen, Lisle and Strasburg. are rich commercial cities. Rheims is an inland city, famous for the coronation of their ancient kings. Orleans upon the Loire, Toulouse upon the Garonne, are rich inland cities, and places of considerable trade.

Q. Which are the great naval ports in France ?

A. Toulon, upon the Mediterranean ; Brest, and Cherbourg, upon the British channel ; they are also rich commercial cities.

Q. What is the state of manufactures ?

A. They are not surpassed by any in Europe, except those of England.

Q. What is the state of commerce ?

A. This is also extensive and flourishing.

Q. What is the government of France ?

A. It is a limited monarchy.

Q. What is the religion of France ?

A. The Roman Catholic is the established religion ; but a free toleration has been enjoyed since the revolution, or the twenty-five years war.

Q. What is the national power of France ?

A. France takes rank in Europe next to Great Britain.

Q. What is the language ?

A. The French, like the Italian language, is a mixture of the Latin and German, rendered the most fluent, and best calculated for free, social intercourse, of any other language : it is spoken in all the courts of Europe.

Q. What is their national character ?

A. The French are brave, active or sprightly, polite and ambitious. They have striven for centuries to excel all nations in literature, arts, and arms ; and are proud of their nation.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. France stands unrivalled in Europe. The Sorbonne, in Paris, is at the head of 28 or 30 universities, which have rendered France illustrious in the arts and sciences.

Q. Which are the islands of France ?

A. Ushant, Belle-Isle, Isle of Rhe, Isle of Oleron, &c. : but Corsica is the principal, and lies off the coast of Italy.

Q. What is the character of this island ;

A. Corsica is rough and mountainous ; it is noted for its valuable forests, fisheries and minerals ; but the people are poor and ignorant. Corsica is famous for the nativity of the emperor Napoleon.

Q. Which are the chief towns of Corsica ?

A. Bastia and Ajaccio ; the latter is the birth place of the emperor Napoleon.

Q. What other foreign possessions belong to France ?

A. Martinique and Guadaloupe, in the West Indies ; Cayenne, in South America ; Goree and the Factories of the Senegal, in Africa ; the Isle of Bourbon, in the Indian ocean ; and Pondicherry, &c. in Hindostan.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of France ?

A. France, in the early ages, was inhabited by numerous hordes of barbarians, the principal of which were the Gauls : these were conquered by the Romans, from time to time, until they were fully subdued by Julius Cæsar, about the year 50 before Christ, when he entered Britain. The Romans possessed Gaul, as a province, until Rome was subdued by the Goths and Vandals, in the 5th century.

---

QUESTIONS.—Who were the first people of France, and what was their character ?

When and by whom were they conquered ?



At the same time, the Franks came out from Germany, under Pharamond, their chief, and settled in Gaul: Clovis, their first king, extended his conquests over the Gauls, Burgundi, and other clans, which commenced the kingdom of France, 486.

Charlemagne, king of France, in the 8th and 9th centuries, conquered Germany, and all the neighbouring clans, and extended his empire into Spain and Italy, and was crowned, at Rome, emperor of the west, by Pope Leo III. in 800. After the death of Charlemagne, his empire was divided among his family, which involved France in civil wars, for several centuries: and the west of Europe became a theatre of wretchedness and slaughter, for more than 500 years. Since the discovery of gunpowder, and the use of fire arms, in the 14th century, their wars have been less barbarous and sanguinary, as well as less frequent; but they have continued longer. To recount all the wars in which France has been engaged, and the insurrections and massacres, with which she has been harassed, and distressed, would fill volumes; her restless ambitious spirit has seldom been quiet.

France has been careful to remember, that she was once mistress of the west, and has never ceased in her efforts to become so again. To effect this, Italy and Germany have been the theatre of her wars, for more than 1000 years.

Her last efforts to recover her ancient dominions, commenced with her revolution, in 1789, and involved all Europe in a twenty-five years war, in which the emperor Napoleon acquired all the powers of the ancient Charlemagne, with an extent of dominion much greater. The sum of national power which France acquired in this war, far surpassed her ancient glory, under Charlemagne; and the emperor Napoleon became the richest, and most splendid conqueror, since the days of Alexander and Cæsar.

The expedition of the emperor Napoleon into Russia, is

When were the Romans expelled? what clan commenced the kingdom of France? how and when?

Which of the kings of France became emperor of the west? how and when?

What were the consequences to Europe after his death?

What changes took place in their wars in the 14th century, and why?

What has been the character of France generally?

When did her revolution commence, what was the object, and who became the modern Charlemagne?

What was the comparative character of their dominions?

the year 1812, ruined his empire; and the battle of Waterloo, in 1815; ruined the emperor. He became soon after a captive of the British, and was banished by the allied sovereigns of Europe, to the island of St. Helena, where he died in 1821.

From the battle of Waterloo, France recovered her legitimate government, and has maintained her tranquility to this time, under her former limits.

#### REMARKS.

The Franks under Pharamond, and Clovis, began the kingdom of France about the same time that the Saxons, under Hengist and Horsa, began the kingdom of England. The two nations have grown up together as rival neighbours, and the strife of ambition to extend their powers, by commerce, and by conquest, has never ceased for a moment. France availed herself of the discoveries of Vasco de Gama, in India, and Christopher Columbus in America, at the close of the 15th century, and extended her settlements and commerce into those regions, with England, and the other great maritime powers of Europe, and held a fair competition with her neighbours. This strife held a very even balance between her, and her great rival, until the successes of Great Britain, in the old seven years war, turned the scale against France, in India, and America, at the peace of Paris, 1763. Since that time Great Britain has gained an ascendancy, that enabled her to check and control the ambition of France, in her last revolution. France is no longer the naval and commercial rival of Great Britain: but France stands at the head of all the powers upon the continent of Europe.

---

What causes ruined the emperor Napoleon and when?

When and where did he die?

What is the present state of France?

## SPAIN.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Spain?

A. Spain lies upon the south-western section of Europe, and is bounded on the N. by the bay of Biscay and the Pyrenean mounts; E. by the Mediterranean sea; S. by the Mediterranean, Atlantic, and the straits of Gibraltar; and W. by the Atlantic ocean and Portugal. It is 460 miles from east to west, and 500 from north to south, and contains about 148,000 square miles.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population ?

A. Spain is divided into fourteen provinces. Population 11,000,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. Spain is mountainous ; intersected by broken ranges, which give rise to several large rivers, that fertilize the rich vallies, and give the country a pleasing variety.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Pyrenees on the north, and the Cantabrian, which extend from the Pyrenees to the western coast, south of Cape Finisterre ; the whole chain being about 500 miles long.

The mountains that extend through the middle of Spain, and include the black forest, together with the rock of Gibraltar, are of some celebrity.

Q. What are the soil and climate ?

A. The soil in the vallies is fertile ; the mountains are best adapted to grazing, and on which are fed large flocks of sheep. The climate is hot, but not sultry : the mountains of Spain give a salubrious temperature to the air in the interior, and the coast is refreshed by the sea-breezes.

Q. What are the productions ?

A. Spain produces all the various kinds of grain, and fruits of the temperate zone, and many of the tropical fruits.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Gold, silver, copper, lead, quick-silver, emeralds, amethyst, porphyry, and jasper ; with chrystal, marble, alum and sulphur.

Q. Which are the Spanish Isles ?

A. Majorca, Minorca, and Ivica ; they are thinly peopled, but in general well cultivated. Port Mahon is a noted harbour on the island of Minorca, the resort of foreign ships.

Q. Which are the principal lakes ?

A. Lake Benevena, and Salt Lake : in the latter, salt is made by evaporation, as in the West Indies.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Tagus, Duero, Ebro, Guadelquiver, Guadiana, Xucar, and Minho.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Madrid is the capital ; it stands upon the Tagus ; is an inland city, and was formerly rich and splendid ; but is now on the wane. Seville, on the Guadelquiver, is one of the most flourishing manufacturing cities ; it is noted for its oranges. Gadiz, situated upon the island of Leon, on the south of Spain, is the great mart for her foreign commerce, and her principal naval port. Valencia is a manufacturing city, noted for its

university. Barcelona, Carthagena, Bilbao, Malaga and Alicante, are all cities of some note. Corunna is noted for its harbour, as well as the defeat of the British, under the French invasion, in the year 1809. Ferrol is also a valuable naval port. Saragossa is famous for its sieges. Granada was the ancient Moorish capital. Salamanca has valuable literary institutions. Badajos, Murcia, Toledo and Cordova, are among the most valuable ancient cities of Spain.

Q. What is the state of agriculture?

A. The agriculture of Spain declined from the time the treasures from the mines of Mexico and Peru began to flow in upon her; and she has been for several centuries dependant on her neighbours for a supply of bread.

Q. What is the state of commerce and manufactures?

A. They are as low as her agriculture; she suffers other nations to be her carriers, and depends upon them for her principal manufactures.

Q. What is the government?

A. Absolute monarchy.

Q. What is her national character?

A. The Spaniards are an ignorant, indolent, haughty, jealous, superstitious people, who are poor in one of the finest countries of Europe.

Q. What is the national power of Spain?

A. It has been upon the decline since the reign of Charles V. in the 15th century, and has now become very low.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. This is also very low; she has never become a literary nation; but the mass of her population has ever been sunk in ignorance.

Q. What is the religion of Spain?

A. The Roman Catholic, enforced by an inquisition.

Q. What is the character of the inquisition?

A. The inquisitors, or judges of the inquisition, are unknown; they sit at stated periods, unless called together upon some special emergency. Their place of sessions is a prison, as well as judicatory; replete with racks, gibbets and dungeons; inaccessible to any but themselves, and such as are called before them. Their power is absolute. They sit in private; and thousands are summoned before this tribunal, put to the most cruel torture, condemned, executed, or imprisoned for months, for years, or for life, without even public inquiry. Silence broods over the whole proceedings of this tribunal; and the dread of it overawes the nation. Their pimps and spies are in every family; and to be an informer,

against heretics, is with them deemed an act of saving grace. No degree of severity is too severe ; no degree of cruelty is too cruel : no degree of torture is too distressing for this court to exercise, in order to enforce the Catholic religion, and suppress heresy, or toleration.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Spain ?

A. The Gauls Phœnicians, Grecians, Carthagenians, and the Romans, all possessed Spain, in succession, from the earliest ages, down to the time of the great Roman revolution in the 5th century. Spain was then subdued by Alaric, king of the Goths, and by other barbarous tribes. The Visigoths became the most numerous of the barbarians of Spain, and claimed the dominion, about the year 467. The Saracens, or Moors, overran Spain in the 8th century, and built Granada for their capital.

In the year 1236, Ferdinand III. king of Spain, expelled the Moors ; but the several kingdoms, or states of Spain, were never united, until the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella, in the 15th century. Since that time, she has been under the dominion of one crown. Under this reign, Columbus discovered America.

The Spanish adventurer Cortez, conquered Mexico, in N. America, in 1521, and the Spanish adventurer Pizarro, conquered Peru, in S. America, in 1540. These conquests opened to Spain the vast treasures of the New World.

The mines of America filled Spain with money, which inflated her national pride, but enervated, and gradually destroyed her national character.

Spain in the 16th century, under the reign of Charles V. who was at the same time Emperor of Germany, and sovereign of the Netherlands, or low countries, was the richest and most powerful monarchy in Europe. Philip II. his son and successor, by his despotic government, caused the seven united provinces of Holland, (the northern section of the Netherlands,) to revolt and shake off the Spanish yoke. Phil-

QUESTIONS.—Who possessed Spain in the early ages of Europe ?  
What hordes subdued Spain in the 5th century ? And in the 8th century ?

When and by whom were the Moors expelled from Spain ?

When and by whom was Spain united, and what memorable event then took place ?

When and under whose reign was Spain in her zenith ?

ip, during this rebellion invaded England with the most formidable fleet then ever known; the expences of which, in connection with the war in the low countries, and the loss of Holland, greatly deranged the finances of Spain. From that time Spain has continued to decline,

Early in the 17th century, Philip III. banished from Spain all the Morescoes, or descendants of the ancient Moors, about 1,000,000 of hardy industrious citizens, which greatly weakened the national character.

Spain was conquered by France in the year 1808, and governed by Joseph Bonaparte, as king, about five years. He gave to Spain a free constitution, and abolished the inquisition, 1812. King Joseph was expelled by the English, under the Duke of Wellington, in the year 1813 and Ferdinand VII, king of Spain, was restored to his government. He abolished the constitution, and restored the inquisition.

The Spanish people attempted to abolish the inquisition, and restore the constitution of 1812, by a revolution, in the years 1819—20; but the Holy Alliance of Europe interfered: the Duke de Angouleme entered Spain, at the head of 100,000 Frenchmen, and suppressed the revolution, in 1822. *Spain is now under her old monarchy, and inquisition.*

No one kingdom in Europe has passed through greater changes or more distressing scenes; than Spain. Her fields have been fattened with human blood, from the earliest ages, down to the present time.

Spain has been enriched by her American possessions since the discoveries of Columbus, and the conquests of Cortes and Pizarro in the 16th century; but she is now deprived of the whole of that wealth, by her American colonies having become free and independent, from the years 1810 to 1825.

- 
- When and under what reign did Spain begin to decline, and what were the causes?
- When was Spain under the government of a French king, and what were the consequences?
- When were the liberties of Spain restored, and by whom?
- When did Spain attempt to recover her constitution of 1812, and what were the consequences?
- What has been the character of Spain, and what is her present situation?

## PORTUGAL.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Portugal?

A. Portugal lies upon the south west corner of Europe, and

is bounded on the N. and E. by Spain ; and on the S. and W. by the Atlantic ocean. It is 300 miles long and 150 broad

Q. What are its civil divisions and population ?

A. It is divided into 6 provinces, and contains a population of 4,000,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The mountain ranges of Spain, extend into Portugal, which give a rugged aspect to the country, and divide it into mountains and vallies ; the height of land is about 8000 feet.

Q. What are the climate, soil and productions ?

A. The climate is mild and salubrious ; the soil in the vallies is rich and fertile, and the productions the same as in Spain. Portugal, like Spain, has to buy her bread.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The same as in Spain.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Lisbon, Oporto, and others. Lisbon is the capital ; it stands at the mouth of the Tagus ; is a large and flourishing city, with about 200,000 inhabitants ; it was destroyed by an earthquake in the year 1775 ; but has been rebuilt with white stone, which gives it a neat and handsome appearance. Oporto is a flourishing commercial city, which furnishes the famous Port wine.

Q. What are the state of agriculture, manufactures and commerce ?

A. Such as in Spain ; agriculture and manufactures are low, and their commerce is carried on by other nations, principally.

Q. Which are the principal exports of Portugal ?

A. Wines, salt and wool.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. There are four colleges in Portugal ; one particularly for the nobility ; a military and marine academy, and a geographical institution ; but the peasantry are very ignorant

Q. What is the religion of Portugal ?

A. Roman Catholic ; she has two inquisitions.

Q. What is the government ?

A. Absolute monarchy.

Q. What is her national power ?

A. Small ; like that of Spain.

Q. What are the curiosities ?

A. Some ancient Moorish castles, Roman walls, and aqueducts. The church and monastery of Lisbon, where the royal family are interred, are dug out of the solid rock, with great taste. The chapel of St. Roch surpasses all others in style and splendour, particularly in its paintings.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Portugal ?

A. Portugal, like Spain, was first peopled by the Gauls in the early eages : these were overrun by the Phœnicians, Carthaginians, and Romans, in succession ; by the last, about 150 years before Christ. About the middle of the 5th century, the Romans in Portugal, were subdued by the Goths from Spain : these were subdued by the Moors or Saracens, from Africa, in the 8th century, who erected Portugal into a kingdom, under Alphonzo Henriquez, in 1139.

Vasco de Gama discovered the East Indies, in the reign of Emanuel I. in the year 1497. Alvarez de Cabral discovered Brazil in the year 1500, and extended his voyage into India. These two voyages commenced the commerce of Europe with the East Indies.

Portugal was conqueréd and added to Spain, under the reign of Philip II. in the year 1580 ; but she recovered her liberty and independence, under the duke of Braganza, in 1640.

Portugal was invaded by the French in 1807, but they were driven out by the duke of Wellington, at the head of an English and Portuguese army, in 1811 ; and Portugal has since been free.

The royal family removed to Brazil at the time of the French invasion, in 1807, and returned again in 1821. Since which time, Portugal, like Spain, has attempted to establish a free government by revolution and failed.

---

QUESTIONS.—By whom was Portugal explored  
 What were the revolutions of Portugal down to the year 1139 ?  
 Under what reign, and by whom was India discovered ?  
 When and by whom was Brazil discovered ?  
 What were the effects of these discoveries ?  
 What were the subsequent revolutions of Portugal, down to the year 1821 ?

## ITALY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Italy ?

A. Italy lies south of Switzerland ; is bounded on the N. by Switzerland and Austria ; E. by the gulf of Venice ; S. and W. by the Mediterranean sea, and France. It is about 600 miles long, and from 25 to 400 broad.

---

1 The king settled the government of Brazil, by a constitution, upon his eldest son, and the government of Portugal upon his eldest daughter, and died in Brazil, before the family embarked.



Q. What are the civil divisions and population ?

A. Italy is at present divided into nine independent states, as exhibited in the following table :

<i>States.</i>	<i>Sqare miles.</i>	<i>Population.</i>
1. Kingdom of Sardinia,	27,100	3,994,000
2. Dominions of Austria,	18,290	4,014,000
2. States of the Church,	14,500	2,346,000
4. Republic of San Marino,	40	7,000
5. Kingdom of the Two Sicilies,	43,600	5,618,000
6. Grand Duchy of Tuscany,	8,500	1,180,000
7. Duchy of Parma,	2,280	377,000
8. Duchy of Modena,	2,060	370,000
9. Duchy of Lucca,	420	138,000
Total,	117,090	19,044,000

Q. Which are the mountains of Italy ?

A. The Alps on the north, which divide Italy from Austria, Switzerland and France ; and the Appenines, which extend through the centre ; mount Vesuvius in the south, a noted volcano : and mount Algidus, famous in Roman story.

Q. What are the climate and soil ?

A. The climate is peculiarly mild and salubrious, except the pestilential Maremma, and Pontine marshes, in the vicinity of Rome ; this in an extensive district that is rendered almost uninhabitable from its noxious vapours. It is said that this infected region is extending gradually, and that it has already reached a part of the city of Rome, and threatens to depopulate it, in time.

Q. What are the productions of Italy ?

A. Italy yields all the productions common to the temperate zone.

Q. Which are the islands ?

A. The Italian islands are, Sicily, Sardinia, Malta, Corsica, Elba, and the Lipari Isles ; the volcanoes of which, are Etna and Strombolo.

Q. Which are the lakes ?

A. Maggiore, Lugano, Como, &c.

Q. Which are the straits ?

A. Messina and Bonifacio.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Po and the Tiber ; the others are small.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Rome, once the mistress of the world, is nominally, the capital of Italy ; but in reality is only the capital of the Pope's dominions ; it still abounds with splendid monuments of Roman greatness, such as triumphal arches, magnificent buildings, paintings, statues, columns, &c. particularly those of the

Pantheon, Trajan's Pillar, Vespasian's Amphitheatre, which covered nearly 6 acres of ground, and could accommodate 100,000 spectators to view the combats of gladiators, &c. The church of St. Peter is the most magnificent edifice in Europe; it was begun in 1510, and finished 1620; is 720 feet long, 510 broad, and 500 to the top of the cross.

Q. What is the general state of agriculture, arts, commerce, and manufactures?

A. These are all in a flourishing situation.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. The arts and sciences were transferred from Greece to Rome, before the christian era, where they flourished in great perfection, until the great revolution, in the 5th century, when they were all destroyed by the barbarians. They began to revive in the 12th and 13th centuries, and have now recovered their ancient splendour; particularly the fine arts.

Q. What are the language and religion?

A. The language of the Italians, like that of the French, is formed from the Latin; remarkably fluent, easy, and familiar. Their religion is Roman Catholic, in its most rigid superstitions.

Q. What are their curiosities?

A. The Italian curiosities are the remains of Roman antiquities, emblems of her greatness, and too numerous to be described.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Italy?

A. The history of Italy is interesting and important. In the early ages of the world, and soon after the flood, Italy, in common with the other parts of Europe, was settled by numerous hordes of barbarians. When the Romans came into Italy, 1147 years before Christ, they found the kingdom of Latium, and the nation of the Sabines, the most powerful of the Italian tribes. In what manner, or upon what terms, they dwelt among these people, is not known; but a period of about 400 years elapsed before the Romans laid the foundation of the city of Rome, which was in the year 753 before Christ. This city flourished, and extended its conquests over the neighboring tribes and nations, until it subdued the kingdoms of Carthage and Greece; then the kingdoms of Egypt, of Judea, Syria, Babylon, and all the west of Asia, and the south of Europe, and became the nursery of arts and arms, and the mistress of the world.

About the middle of the 4th century, the emperor Constantine removed the seat of government from Rome to Byzantium, in Greece, and called it Constantinople. From this time, Rome, or the Roman empire, began to decline.

Rome in her turn, became a prey to the barbarians of the north, the Goths, Vandals, Allans, Huns, and Suevi, &c. in the early part of the 5th century; and in the year 450 Rome was sacked by Attila, with his Huns, and every vestige of the western Roman empire was destroyed, and the dark ages commenced. The bishops of Rome assumed a spiritual sovereignty over this night of ignorance and superstition, and Rome became the capital of the empire of the church universal. Under this dominion all the kingdoms of Europe grew up, until the commencement of the reformation under Wickliffe in the 14th, and Luther in the 16th centuries; since that time the dominions of Rome, or of the Pontiffs of the church universal, have been steadily diminishing, until they are now reduced almost to the limits of Italy, or even Rome herself.

It is probable that the number of people that have been destroyed in the rise and fall of Rome Pagan, and Rome Christian, would exceed the whole population of Europe at this day; and it is generally believed that the greatest half have fallen under Rome Christian.

- 
- QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Italy first settled?  
 When did the Romans first settle in Italy?  
 When did they found the city of Rome?  
 What was the character of this city?  
 When and by whom was the seat of government transferred to Byzantium in Greece?  
 What were the effects upon the empire?  
 When and by whom was the western Roman empire subverted?  
 What spiritual power rose up in the western empire?  
 When and by whom was this spiritual power checked?  
 What is the comparative character between Rome Pagan and Rome Christian?

### Italian States.

#### SARDINIA.

- Q. What portion of Italy comprises this kingdom?  
 A. The northern section, with the island of Sardinia.  
 Q. What is the face of the country upon the continent?  
 A. The northern, western and southern parts, are mountainous, and too rough for cultivation; but where Sardinia extends into the basin of the Po, it is level and fertile.

The province of Savoy extends so far among the Alps, as to include Mont Blanc, the highland of Europe, 16,000 feet above the level of the sea; but the plains of Piedmont are rich in their productions, and form a striking contrast. In Piedmont is situated the district of Fignerol, or the four Valleys, rendered famous for the persecutions of the Waldenses, in the 17th century.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Turin is the capital; it is an elegant city, and noted for its silks. Genoa is the most commercial city in Italy. Alexandria is a strongly fortified town, in the interior. Nice is one of the most pleasant cities of Sardinia, and is famous for the salubrity of its climate, and the resort of foreigners.

Q. What is the state of agriculture, commerce, and manufactures?

A. These are generally flourishing.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. The higher classes are well informed, but the poor are ignorant; some attention begins to be paid to their improvement.

#### ISLAND OF SARDINIA.

Q. What are the situation and character of this island?

A. The island of Sardinia is situated about equally distant from Italy and Africa; possesses a mild climate, and a fertile soil; and might produce many of the fruits of the torrid zone, if they were properly cultivated.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. It is level near the coast; but mountainous in the interior.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Cagliari is the capital, and the residence of the viceroy or governor. Sassari is a place of some note.

Q. What is the character of the people?

A. The higher classes are wealthy, and well informed; but the peasantry are poor and ignorant; and their state of depression renders them indolent. The shepherds of the mountains are but half civilized, and are independent in their laws, and habits of life.

*The other states in the north of Italy are now subject to the House of Austria, and will be considered in connection with that empire.*

## STATES OF THE CHURCH.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the States of the Church?

A. The States of the Church are situated in the centre of Italy, and are very limited in their extent.

Q. What are the face of the country, climate, and productions?

A. The country is level near the coast, but mountainous in the interior. The climate is mild; and the productions such as are common to Italy. The pestilential Maremma, and Pontine marshes, extend along the coast, nearly from Naples to Leghorn; and where they will admit of improvement, are devoted to pasturage.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Rome is the capital; it is but the shadow of what it formerly has been; the fine arts still flourish. Bologna and Ferrara are noted for their universities. Ancona, upon the gulf of Venice, is a place of some trade. Ravenna, formerly the seat of the Exarchs is no longer a seaport.

Q. What is the government?

A. An ecclesiastical despotism. The Pope and his clergy are rich; the people are ignorant, and generally poor.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of the States of the Church?

A. Soon after the emperor Constantine removed from Rome to Byzantium, or Constantinople, in the year 330, the bishops of Rome began to assume a temporal, as well as a spiritual power.

In the year 726, the bishop of Rome, in connection with the senate, dissolved the power of the eastern, or Greek emperors, (at Constantinople) and Pope Gregory II. applied to Charles Martel, king of France, for support against the encroachments of the Lombards. Charles complied, and became the guardian of the Church, in 731. Pepin, son of Charles, by the advice of Pope Zachery, seized on the kingdom of France, by dethroning his brother Childeric III.; and to reward his spiritual benefactor, marched an army into Italy, and humbled Astulphus, king of the Lombards, who was besieging Rome. Pepin repelled Astulphus; besieged him in Pavia, his capital; took possession of Commachio, and oth-

---

QUESTIONS.—When did the bishop of Rome dissolve the powers of the eastern emperors at Rome?

To whom did he then apply for protection, and what were the consequences?

er parts of his dominions, and conferred them upon the Church, or the successors of St. Peter : viz. the Exarchate of Ravenna, Emilia, now Romagna ; Pentapolis, now Marca de Ancona, with all the cities therein, to be held by them forever ; reserving to the kings of France, as patricians, an ideal superiority. Thus was the sceptre added to the keys of St. Peter, the sovereignty to the priesthood, and the Popes enriched with the spoils of the Lombard kings, and the Roman emperors.

Charlemagne, son and successor of Pepin, when he was crowned emperor of the west, by Pope Leo III. confirmed to the Church all the grants made by his father, and at the same time put an end to the kingdom of the Lombards, which secured the peace of the Church. The foundation of the temporal dominions of the Church thus being laid, the Popes took advantage of the ignorance of the dark ages, to exercise a spiritual dominion that brought under subjection all the kingdoms of modern Europe, and extended throughout the world, wherever the Catholic religion prevailed.

---

When and by whom was Charlemagne crowned emperor of the west, and what were the consequences ?

### ST. MARINO.

Q. What are the situation and character of this republic ?

A. This republic lies among the Apennines, within the limits of the Roman states, and contains about 40 square miles ; and a population of 7000. They are a brave, industrious people, and have maintained their independence for more than 1000 years. St. Marino is the capital.

### KINGDOM OF THE TWO SICILIES, OR NAPLES.

Q. What portion of Italy comprises this kingdom ?

A. The southern section, and the island of Sicily.

Q. What is the face of the country upon the continent ?

A. It is intersected by the range of the Apennines ; the western section is mountainous ; but the eastern section is generally level.

Q. What are the soil, productions, &c. ?

A. The soil in the vallies is fertile, and capable of the highest improvements. The productions are wheat, maize, barley, rye, pulse, rice, cotton, flax, hemp, vines, olives, melons, almonds, dates, figs, lemons, pomegranates, &c. Agriculture is in a low state.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Naples is the capital, and the most splendid and delightful city in Europe ; it rises from the port in the form of an amphitheatre, and is extensive and spacious ; possessing a numerous population. The climate of Naples is the purest in Italy, or perhaps in the world ; but she is sunk in dissipation. Bari, Reggio, and Capua, are also cities of some importance.

Q. Which are the volcanoes of this kingdom ?

A. Mount Vesuvius, near the city of Naples ; mount Etna, upon the island of Sicily ; and Strombolo, on the Lipari Isles.

Q. What are the comparative size of mounts Vesuvius and Etna ?

A. Vesuvius is 30 miles in circumference ; and Etna, 180. Vesuvius ejects lava 7 miles, and Etna often 30 miles.

Q. What are the antiquities and curiosities of Naples ?

A. The ruins of Herculaneum and Pompeii, two ancient cities that stood between the city of Naples and mount Vesuvius, and which were buried 70 feet beneath a torrent of lava and ashes, that issued from mount Vesuvius, A. D. 79. These cities remained buried in oblivion more than 1600 years, and would have continued so, had not Herculaneum been accidentally discovered by sinking a well, in the year 1689. In the year 1711, further discoveries were made, and in 1738, adventurers became engaged in exploring the recesses of Herculaneum, and have since cleared whole streets, and drawn forth from its hidden recesses, statues, vases, lamps, &c. ; all of elegant workmanship. More than 1600 Greek and Latin MSS. have been found in Herculaneum, many of which have been unrolled and found legible. Discoveries continue to be made annually.

Pompeii was not discovered until about the middle of the 18th century. More than one fourth of the city is now cleared. In Pompeii were found paved streets, theatres, temples, &c. ; but the houses are generally of one and two stories only.

#### ISLANDS.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the island of Sicily ?

A. It is separated from Italy by the strait of Messina, the noted Scylla and Charybdis of the ancients. It is 160 miles long and 112 broad : famous for its volcano mount Etna.

Q. What are the soil and productions of Sicily ?

A. The same as the south of Italy.

Q. Which are the chief towns of Sicily ?

A. Palermo, the capital, was formerly a rich and flourishing city ; but it is now on the wane ; it presents a delightful view

to the mariner. Messina is a city of some note, on the straits of Messina. Catania, at the foot of the great volcano mount Etna, is noted for its having been several times destroyed by earthquakes, and volcanic eruptions ; it is now a handsome city. Marsala is famous for its *Sicily Madeira wine*. Syracuse was the ancient capital, and is now of some importance.

Q. What other isles belong to Naples ?

A. The 12 Lipari isles belong to Naples ; noted for the perpetual volcano, Strombolo ; termed the light-house of the Mediterranean.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Naples ?

A. The kingdom of Naples, (the ancient Capua and Campania of the Romans) commenced in the year 1020. The Etruscans possessed the country in ancient times, and built the cities of Nola and Capua. It has undergone various revolutions. Roger, count of Sicily, became the first king, in 1127. Pope Clement IV. a Frenchman, caused Corodin, the rightful heir to the throne of Naples, to be murdered, at the age of 16, and then conferred the crown upon Charles, (count of Anjou, of the royal line of France) 1266. Charles was invited soon after to accept the crown of Hungary, with which he complied : but was murdered, by order of the Queen Regent, as soon as he was crowned : she was soon after taken out of her carriage by the populace, and drowned in the river Boseth.

The crown of Naples then passed into the House of Aragon, under Alphonso, who united to his kingdom the island of Sicily ; and the kings of Naples have since that time, held the title of "king of the Two Sicilies," 1442.

In the year 1700, Naples was taken by the emperor Leopold I.

In 1734, the Spaniards re-conquered Naples ; and in 1736, Philip V. king of Spain, conferred it upon his son Don Carlos. He in his turn conferred it upon his third son, Ferdinand, 1759. The French seized upon Naples, 1799, and compelled the king to retire to Sicily ; but they restored it again the same year.

In 1806, Joseph Bonaparte became king of Naples ; but in 1808—9, he was removed to the crown of Spain, and Naples was governed by the viceroy of the emperor Napoleon, until it was restored at the peace of 1814.

Q. What is the history of Sicily ?

A. Sicily was settled in the early ages of Egypt, Phœnicia,



and Greece, and was noted for its despotic government under Dionysius the elder, and Dionysius the younger, tyrants of Syracuse, about 350 years before Christ. It was often the theatre of wars, between the Carthagenians and Greeks, and between the Carthagenians and Romans, and vibrated between those rival states, until Carthage was destroyed by Scipio, about 146 years before Christ : it then was confirmed to the Romans. Since the destruction of the Roman state, Sicily has been possessed by France, Spain, and Austria ; but is now attached to the kingdom of Naples.

The French were expelled from Sicily at the noted massacre of the Sicilian vespers, in the year 1282. Every French inhabitant was slain.

- 
- QUESTIONS.—When did the kingdom of Naples commence, and what changes took place down to 1442 ?  
 What have been the subsequent changes ?  
 When was Sicily first settled, and what became the character of its government ?  
 What changes have been common to Sicily ?  
 When and by what means were the French expelled ?

## GRAND DUTCHY OF TUSCANY.

Q. What are the situation and character of Tuscany ?

A. Tuscany is bounded N. by Modena, and the States of the Church ; E. and S. E. by the States of the Church ; W. by the Mediterranean ; and N. W. by Lucca. Besides the country included in these boundaries there are several small detached territories.

Tuscany is among the richest and most flourishing states of Italy. Its agriculture, commerce, and manufactures, are all flourishing ; and the cities of Florence and Leghorn, its two capitals, are among the most commercial and splendid cities in Italy. The city of Siena is one of the most ancient cities ; it was built about the time of Mantua.

Q. What island lies off the coast of Tuscany ?

A. Elba, famous for the residence of the emperor Napoleon

## DUTCHY OF PARMA.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Dutchy of Parma ?

A. The Dutchy of Parma is bounded N. by the Lombardo-Venetian kingdom ; E. by Modena ; S. by a detached portion of Tuscany ; and W. by Sardinia. The soil is fertile and well cultivated. Parma, the capital, has a university.

By the treaty of Paris, in 1814, this Dutchy was given to the ex-empress of France, Maria Louisa ; and on her death it will devolve to Spain. The revenue is £160,000.

### DUTCHY OF MODENA.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Dutchy of Modena ?

A. The Dutchy of Modena is bounded N. by the Lombardo-Venetian kingdom, from which it is separated by the river Po ; E. by the States of the Church ; S. E. by Tuscany and Lucca ; S. W. by the Mediterranean ; and W. by Parma. The southern part of the territory is intersected by the Apennines ; the northern part has a gentle undulating surface, with a fertile soil. This Dutchy is possessed in full sovereignty by a lateral branch of the House of Austria, the archduke Francis D'Este.

### DUTCHY OF LUCCA.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Dutchy of Lucca ?

A. The Dutchy of Lucca is bounded N. by Modena ; E. and S. by Tuscany ; and W. by the Mediterranean. Two-thirds of the surface of this territory are supposed to be covered by defiles ; the remainder comprises the delightful plain around the city of Lucca, and a number of fertile vallies. The hills are covered with vines, olives, &c. ; and the low grounds are laid out in meadows, and rich pastures ; corn, and various fruits are produced in great abundance : but silk, and olive oil, are the most important articles of commerce. It was erected into a Dutchy by the congress of Vienna, in 1815, and given to the infanta of Spain, Maria Louisa.

## SWITZERLAND.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Switzerland ?

A. Switzerland is the country of the Alps, and is bounded on the N. by Germany ; E. by Austria ; S. and W. by France. It is 180 miles long and 140 broad.

Q. How is Switzerland divided, and what is the population ?

A. The Helvetic League consisted of 13 Cantons ; and was divided into 7 Catholic, and 6 Protestant. In 1803, the number was increased to 19 ; at the late pacification in Europe, three others were added—total 22. Population 2,018,252.

Q. What is the climate?

A. It is as variable as the regions of the torrid, temperate, and frigid zones. The summits of some of the mountains are locked in perpetual frost and ice, whilst those of others admit of a mild temperature; but many of the vallies are scorched with excessive heat; all this subjects them to frequent and sudden changes.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. Switzerland is rough and mountainous in the extreme.

Q. Which are the principal mountains, and what is their elevation?

A. The Alps, which give rise to the numerous mountain chains of Europe. Mount St. Gothard is the principal; the summit of which, Mont Vischiora, is about 10,000 feet above the level of the sea, covered with perpetual ice and snow. The glaciers of these mountains are said to cover more than 1000 square miles; and to surpass every thing of the kind in the world.

Q. What are the productions of Switzerland?

A. It abounds in pasturage and cattle; and produces all the various kinds of grain common to Europe.

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. The lakes of Constance, Geneva, Lucerne, Zurich, and Neufchatel.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The mountains of Switzerland give rise to many of the great rivers in the south of Europe; and yet the rivers of Switzerland are nothing more than small streams.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Berne is considered as the capital. Lausanne, Zurich, Lucerne and Basil, have each a college; Scuffhausen, upon the Rhine, is a place of some trade.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. Switzerland supports five colleges, and boasts of a more enlightened population, than any state in Europe.

Q. What is the government?

A. A confederated republic; or rather aristocracy.

Q. What are the character and habits of the Swiss?

A. The Swiss are enlightened, brave, hardy, temperate, frugal, and industrious; attached to liberty, and their country.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Switzerland?

A. The Swiss were subject to the House of Austria, until the renowned William Tell headed his countrymen in one

grand insurrection, in the year 1308. The Swiss seized all the Austrian governors, and conducted them to the frontier, and dismissed them, with a promise never to return.

Q. What was the immediate cause of this insurrection ?

A. Grisler, one of the Austrian governors, ordered William Tell to strike off an apple from the head of his own son, to shew his dexterity with his bow and arrow. Tell took his stand to obey the command, and struck off the apple ; but his cloak blew open and disclosed another arrow, which he had concealed. Grisler hastily inquired of Tell, what was the design of that arrow : Tell replied, “ to have pierced your heart, had I killed my son.” Grisler instantly ordered him to perpetual confinement. The indignant Swiss rose in arms, rescued their countryman, and expelled all the governors. The House of Austria made repeated attempts to subdue the Swiss, but to no effect.

The armies of France overran Switzerland, in the year 1797, and she remained under the yoke of France, until the expulsion of the emperor Napoleon, and the restoration of the Bourbons, in the year 1814. Switzerland is now free.

QUESTIONS.—When and by what means did the Swiss liberate their country from the dominion of Austria ?

What cause led to this event ?

When did France conquer Switzerland, and when did she recover her liberty ?

## GERMANY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Germany ?

A. Germany is bounded on the N. by the North sea, Denmark, and the Baltic ; E. by Poland and Austria ; S. by Switzerland, and the Alps, that divide it from Italy ; and W. by France, and the Netherlands. It is 600 miles long and 500 broad.

Q. What are its civil divisions ?

A. Germany was formerly divided into 10 great circles, or electorates, and these contained about 300 independent sovereignties, and free cities ; but by the confederacy of 1815, it is now divided into 39 departments, styled the “ Confederation of the sovereigns, and free towns of Germany.” The names of the States, the number of votes to which each is entitled in the general assembly, and the population of each, are given in the following table :

Names of States.	No. Votes	Population from the official return, 1818.	Names of States.	No. Votes	Population from the official return, 1818.
Austrian dominions in Germany,	4	9,482,227	Oldenburg,	1	217,769
Prussian dominions in Germany,	4	7,923,439	Anhalt-Dessau,	1	52,947
Saxony, kingdom,	4	1,200,000	Anhalt-Bernburg,	1	37,046
Bavaria,	4	3,560,000	Anhalt-Kothen,	1	52,454
Hanover,	4	1,303,351	Schwartzburg-Sondershausen,	1	45,117
Wurtemberg,	4	1,395,463	Schwartzburg-Rudolstadt,	1	53,937
Baden, grand duchy.	3	1,000,000	Hohenzollern-Hechingen,	1	11,500
Hesse-Cassel,	3	540,000	Lichtenstein,	1	5,546
Hesse-Darmstadt,	3	619,500	Hohenzollern-Sigmaringen,	1	35,500
Holstein and Lauenburg,	3	360,000	Waldeck,	1	51,877
Luxemburg,	3	214,058	Reuss-Greiz,	1	22,250
Brunswick,	2	209,600	Reuss-Lobenstein,	1	52,205
Mecklenburg-Schwerin,	2	358,000	Hesse-Homburg,	1	20,000
Nassau,	2	302,767	Schauenburg-Lippe,	1	24,000
Saxe-Weimar,	1	201,000	Lippe-Detmold,	1	69,062
Saxe-Gotha, dutchy.	1	185,682	The free town of Lubbeck,	1	40,650
Saxe-Cobourg,	1	80,012	—Frankfort,	1	47,850
Saxe-Meinungen,	1	54,400	—Breinen,	1	48,500
Saxe-Hildburghausen,	1	29,706	—Hamburg.	1	123,800
Mecklenburgh-Strelitz,	1	71,769			30,094,950

The diet is permanent, and the sessions are held at Frankfort, on the Main. The members are equal in rights, but Austria presides. In all ordinary concerns, the eleven largest states are each entitled to one vote, and the smaller states are divided into six classes, and each class has one vote. But when the fundamental laws are to be enacted, and in some other questions of prime importance, the diet resolves itself into the General Assembly, in which each state has the number of votes mentioned in the table. The military contingent of the federative body, in time of peace, is 120,000 men. In war, the contingent is one in 100 on the population, making a total of 301,011, with a reserve force of one in 200. —The great fortresses essential to the defence of the empire, Mentz, Luxemburg, and Landau, are declared to belong to the confederation. The revenue of the confederation derived from the individual states, each paying a fixed sum, in proportion to its population, amounted in 1818, to £18,646,000.

Q. What is the climate of Germany?

A. It is cold in the north ; temperate in the middle ; and mild, like France, in the south.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The northern section is level ; but the southern is undulating, and in some parts mountainous.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Alps, the Sudatic chain, and Hartz mountains.

Q. What are the productions of Germany ?

A. The same as in France, and in great abundance ; the wines upon the Rhine are excellent.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Silver, copper, tin, iron, lead, sulphur, cobalt, bismuth, vitriol, and nitre ; also coal, fuller's earth, porcelain clay, and precious stones.

Q. Which are the mineral springs ?

A. Germany contains more than 1000; but those of Aix-la-Chapelle, Toplitz, Carlesbad, and Seltzer, are the principal.

Q. Which are the principal lakes ?

A. Constance and Brigetz ; the lake of Bavaria, and the Zirmitzer-see, that passes through remarkable changes.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Danube, Rhine, Oder, Weser, Maine, Elbe, &c.

Q. What is the state of manufactures ?

A. They are flourishing, particularly in their linens.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. It is various in the different states ; but generally much below that of France.

Q. What is the inland navigation ?

A. See the several states.

Q. What is the government of Germany ?

A. It is a confederacy, with powers defined by the confederation, and in whose councils Austria presides.

Q. By what titles are the sovereigns of the small states distinguished ?

A. The sovereigns of the small states of Germany are styled Arch Dukes, Dukes, Landgraves, Margraves, Princes, &c. The ecclesiastical sovereigns are styled Arch-bishops.

Q. What is the national power of Germany ?

A. If the physical or natural strength and resources of Germany had been consolidated under one independent government, her national power would have given law to the continent of Europe ; but the rival states of Austria and Prussia, so far control the minor states, as to preserve a balance of rival interest between those two great powers, that has greatly diminished the national power of the Germanic body, and kept

it down. The nations of Europe have promoted this rival interest, between Austria and Prussia, in order to strengthen the general balance of power in Europe.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. The higher classes of people possess great literary advantages. Germany boasts of 28 universities : of which Göttingen, Weimar, Leipsic, Halle, Jena, and Heidelberg, are the principal, or most celebrated ; the whole number contain 3 or 9,000 students ; but the poor, or lower classes of people are ignorant, and without the means of instruction.

Q. What animal is peculiar to Germany ?

A. The glutton : he is the most voracious of all animals, and requires the most food.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Germany ?

A. Ancient Germany comprised a great number of barbarous hordes or clans, much like the aborigines of North America. These were hardy, brave and warlike ; and withstood all the power of Rome, and the talents of Julius Cæsar, in their attempts to subdue them, in the century preceding the Christian era.

In the year 290, the Romans were wholly expelled from Germany.

In the year 430, the Huns, from Asia, took possession of Hungary, and joined the German, and northern tribes, in their depredations upon the Roman empire. In the year 450, they sacked Rome, and before the 5th century closed, the barbarians laid waste, and destroyed the whole western Roman empire.

In the 8th and 9th centuries, Charlemagne, king of France, subdued the German hordes, and established a permanent government. In 800, he was crowned by the Pope, emperor of the west, and established the feudal system in Germany. This was a military government, in which the chiefs were styled Dukes, Princes, Landgraves, Margraves, &c. ; and governed their independent sovereignties ; many of which continue to this time.

---

QUESTIONS.—What was the character of the ancient Germans ?

When did they wholly expel the Romans ?

When did the Huns first possess Hungary, and what was their character ?

When and by whom was Germany first conquered, and what was his character ?

In the year 814, Lewis I. son of Charlemagne, took the title of king, and rendered Germany independent of France.

In the year 841, Lothario took the title of Emperor.

In the year 899, Lewis, styled the infant, died, and the family of Charlemagne became extinct in Germany.

In the year 912, Conrad, of Franconia, was elected emperor.

In the year 1054, the heir apparent to the imperial throne was crowned king of the Romans, by the Pope, which commenced an immediate connection between the Papal and Imperial governments.

In the year 1273, Rodolph, of Hapsburg, was elected emperor, which commenced the Imperial reign of the House of Austria.

In the year 1338, Lewis V. dissolved the connection with the Pope, rendered the empire independent, by establishing an electoral college. In 1356, Charles IV. fixed the number of the electoral college, by a golden bull, to 7.

In 1378, Wincellaus succeeded his father, Charles IV. ; but he became so notoriously corrupt that he was deposed in 1399, and Robert, Count Palatine of the Rhine, was elected emperor. During this reign, the reformation commenced under John Huss, and Jerome of Prague, and the church of Rome began to be distracted with the *grand schism of the west*.

In 1453, the Turks took Constantinople, which put an end to the eastern Roman empire, and Germany became involved in a succession of bloody wars with the Turks, down to the peace of Carlowitz, 1689, when the boundaries between the two empires were settled as they now stand.

In 1519, Charles V. king of Spain, grandson of the emperor Maxamilian, was elected emperor of Germany. The *grand schism of the west* was now supported by Martin Luther, which involved not only Germany, but all Europe in

When and by whom did Germany gain her independence of France? Who became their first emperor, and when?

When did the line of Charlemagne become extinct in Germany?

Who was first elected emperor, and when?

When did the heir apparent to the throne become king of the Romans, and what were the consequences?

When and under whom did the imperial reign of Austria commence in Germany?

What changes took place down to the year 1519?

What important event then took place, and under whose reign?

What important events followed, down to the year 1815?



the bloody controversy, to the peace of Passau, in 1552. In the twenty-five years war of the French revolution, Germany suffered more, in the loss of men, money, &c. by the invasions, and ravages of the French, than at any other period of her national existence. At the close of the war, in 1815, the sovereigns of Europe, in a grand congress at Vienna, gave a new constitution to Germany, by which the whole empire was re-organized upon a new plan, with great and important changes. Since that time Germany has continued quiet. The present emperor is Francis II! grand-son of Francis I.

## AUSTRIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Austria?

A. Austria is situated upon the south-eastern section of Germany; and is bounded on the N. by Saxony, Prussia, and Russian Poland; E. by Russia and Turkey; S. by Turkey, the gulf of Venice, and middle Italy; and W. by Piedmont, Switzerland and Bavaria. It is about 1000 miles long and 700 broad, including Bohemia, Hungary, Northern Italy, and Austrian Poland.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population?

A. See the following table:

	Counties.	Square miles.	Population.
Austria Proper.	1. Lower Austria,	15,422	1,832,405
	2. Inner Austria,	8,778	763,820
	3. Upper Austria,	12,286	741,319
	4. Illyria,	13,508	741,319
	5. Bohemia,	20,922	3,183,364
	6. Moravia,	12,122	1,868,252
	7. Austrian Silesia,		
	8. Hungary,	about 135,000	about 11,000,000
	9. Transylvania,		
	10. Croatia,		
	11. Slavonia,	8,340	2,982,000
	12. Dalmatia,		
	13. Gov. of Milan,	9,950	1,932,000
	14. Gov. of Venice,	32,521	3,750,000
	15. Galicia,		
Total in round numbers,		270,000	28,000,000

Q. How is the circle of Austria bounded?

A. It is bounded N. by Bohemia and Moravia; E. by Hun

gary ; S. by the Dutchy and gulf of Venice ; and W. by Switzerland. Population 4,442,700.

Q. How is the Arch Dutchy of Austria bounded ?

A. It is bounded N. by Bohemia and Moravia ; E. by Hungary ; S. by Stiria ; and W. by Salzburg and Bavaria. Population 1,665,862.

Q. What is the capital ?

A. Vienna, situated upon the Danube.

Q. What is the climate of Austria ?

A. It is mild and temperate throughout ; the Danube is never frozen.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. It is varibus ; Austria Proper, with the kingdom of Hungary, is situated within the basin of the Danube, and inclosed by lofty and extensive ranges of mountains, and watered by numerous tributary streams.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil is generally fertile, and the productions such as are common to the north of France, and Germany, generally.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. It is much below that of France.

Q. What is the state of commerce and manufactures ?

A. Austria has but little commerce, and her manufactures fall short of her domestic consumption.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. Austria has eight or ten universities in her dominions ; but they are not very celebrated.

Q. What is the government of Austria ?

A. It is absolute monarchy.

Q. What is the military and naval strength ?

A. Land forces, 276,000 ; naval strength, 12 frigates.

Q. What are the finances ?

A. The national debt exceeds \$400,000,000. The revenue is about \$60,000.

Q. What states belong to the house of Austria ?

A. Bohemia and Austrian Poland on the north, Hungary &c. on the east, and Austrian Italy on the south. (See the Table.)

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Austria ?

A. The Dutchy of Austria had its rise under the feudal system, early in the dark ages, that succeeded the subversion of the western Roman empire, and partook in the wars that

distressed Europe at that age. The dukes of Austria entered with zeal into the several crusades, that distracted Europe, in the 11th, 12th and 13th centuries. Leopold, duke of Austria, shared with Richard I. king of England, in the glory of their conquests in the Holy Land, in the year 1192.

The next year, as Richard was returning home in disguise, through Austria, Leopold seized him, and sold him to the emperor Henry VI. of Germany.

The next year Richard obtained his ransom, for the sum of £300,000 sterling, and returned into England. With the ransom of Richard, Henry built the walls of Vienna.

In the year 1282, Rodolph of Hapsburg was chosen emperor, and he annexed Austria to the electoral college, which laid the foundation of the empire of Austria. In 1291, Rodolph died, and in 1292, the Archbishop of Mentz, crowned Albert, duke of Austria, and son of Rodolph, emperor of Germany. From that time the oldest male heir of the dutchy of Austria, became king of the Romans, and emperor of Germany. Thus the empire of the west, which was founded by Charlemagne, passed into the House of Austria, at the close of the 13th century. This gave to Austria the power, not only of extending her dominions, but of forming such confederacies with England, and other powers, as to regulate the balance of power in Europe, down to the commencement of the French revolution, in 1789, about 500 years. In this time, Austria had passed through a succession of wars, too numerous for the limits of this work, and had enlarged her dominions, nearly to their present extent.

In the year 1806, the emperor Napoleon entered Vienna in triumph, and dictated a peace to the emperor of Germany.

In the year 1809, the emperor Napoleon again entered Vienna, as a conqueror, and dictated an inglorious peace to the emperor of Germany, which stripped him of his Germanic crown, and reduced him to the powers and title of emperor of Austria, and deprived him of all his Italian, as well as his southern German dominions.

QUESTIONS.—When did the Dutchy of Austria commence, and what was its character?

When and by what means were the walls of Vienna built?

When and by whom was Austria annexed to the electoral college?

Which of its dukes became the first emperor of Germany, and what were the consequences?

When and by whom was Vienna taken, and what were the consequences?

When and from what causes did Austria recover her dignity?

Austria continued in this humiliating situation until the battle of Leipsic, and the expulsion of the emperor Napoleon, in the year 1814, when Austria regained her dignity, and the Germanic crown was restored.

### BOHEMIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Bohemia?

A. Bohemia is bounded on the N. by Saxony and Prussia; E. by Moravia, S. by Austria Proper; and W. by the States of Germany. It is about 160 miles long and 140 broad. (*For the square miles and population, see table, page 277.*)

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. Generally level; but surrounded by a lofty chain of mountains.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Elbe rises in Bohemia, and several of the tributary streams of the Danube but the Muldau is the principal river.

Q. Which are the minerals?

A. Gold, silver, copper, lead, quick-silver, tin, iron, sulphur, and salt-petre.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Prague is the capital, upon the river Muldau: it is a splendid city, and contains about 80,000 inhabitants.

Q. How many cities does Bohemia contain?

A. About 280.

Q. What are the language and state of literature?

A. They speak the German language, and have but one university; the state of learning is very low.

Q. What are the manufactures?

A. Linens, woollens, glass, silk, leather, &c.

Q. What is the religion.

A. They are Catholics and Protestants, with a free toleration.

### MORAVIA, INCLUDING AUSTRIAN SILESIA.

Q. What state on the E. lies contiguous to Bohemia?

A. The Marquisate of Moravia, including Austrian Silesia.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil and productions?

A. It is mountainous: yet rich and productive; and yields all the variety of grain common to Bohemia and Germany.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Olmutz, Brunn, and Troppau.

Q. What memorable event distinguished Olmutz?

A. The imprisonment of the Marquis La Fayette, wife and daughters, in the time of the French revolution.

Q. What memorable battle was fought in Moravia, in the year 1805?

A. The battle of Austerlitz, between the emperors Napoleon and Alexander.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Bohemia?

A. It was, like the states of Germany, as late as the 10th century, entirely barbarous, and mostly Pagan; and continued to be the theatre of distressing wars, from its early settlement, until it was annexed to the House of Austria, in the 13th century; since that time it has enjoyed more tranquility.

The emperor Otho I. compelled the Bohemians to embrace Christianity, in the year 937.

Bohemia was rendered famous for the reformation commenced by John Huss, and Jerome of Prague, in the 15th century; soon after Wickliffe commenced the reformation in England.

The remainder of the history of Bohemia may be seen in connection with the House of Austria.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is the early history of Bohemia? when and by whom was Christianity introduced? for what did it become famous in the 15th century?

### HUNGARY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Hungary?

A. It is bounded on the N. by the Carpathian mountains; E. by the same mountains and Turkey; S. by Turkey; and W. by Moravia and Austria. It is about 400 miles long and 300 broad. (*For the square miles, population, &c. see table, page 277.*)

Q. What are the face of the country, and climate?

A. Hungary is cold and mountainous, on the north; hot and level, on the south.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Carpathian mounts inclose the northern, and in part, the eastern limits of Hungary.

Q. What are the productions?

A. All the varieties of Europe abound in Hungary; with tobacco, and the famous Tokay wine, which is considered equal to Madeira.

Q. What are its minerals ?

A. Gold, silver, lead, iron, quick-silver, antimony, orpiment, sulphur, vitriol, marcasite, or mundick, cobalt, salt, salt-petre, load-stone, marble, alabaster, precious stones, and zinnopel.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Danube, with its numerous tributary streams.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Tokay, and Debreczen, are the capitals of Upper Hungary ; Presburg and Buda, of Lower Hungary.

Q. What is their language ?

A. The Latin is generally spoken, with the Greek, Sclavonic, and others.

Q. What is the religion ?

A. The Hungarians are both Catholics and Protestants, and admit a free toleration.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. The Jesuits govern their colleges, and learning is low ; the poor are ignorant.

Q. What is the government ?

A. Elective monarchy, restricted to the House of Austria. They give the title of king, both to male and female sovereigns.

Q. What is the military strength ?

A. About 100,000.

Q. What are the curiosities ?

A. A bridge over the Danube, 5 miles long ; and a cave extending into a solid rock, that has never been explored.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Hungary ?

A. The Huns, in connection with the Goths and Vandals, and other barbarians, overran, and laid waste the western Roman empire, in the 5th century ; and under Attila their chief, sacked the city of Rome, about the year 450. From that time, through the dark ages, they were engaged in frequent and bloody wars with Germany, and Austria, until the Turks subdued the eastern Roman empire, and took Constantinople, in the year 1453. After that time Hungary was under the necessity of uniting with Germany, Austria, and the christian powers of Europe, generally, to repel the aggressions of the Turks ; and thus became the theatre of distressing and bloody wars, until the Turks were confined to their own limits, and

---

QUESTIONS.—What is the general history of Hungary, from the early ages down to the present time ?

Hungary had become united to the dominions of the House of Austria. Since that time, for about two centuries, Hungary has enjoyed more repose than any other christian state in Europe.

## TRANSYLVANIA, SCLAVONIA, AND CROATIA.

Q. What other provinces within the limits of Hungary, belong to the House of Austria?

A. Transylvania, Slavonia and Croatia.

### TRANSYLVANIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Transylvania?

A. It is situated on the S. E. of Hungary, bordering upon Turkey. It is 160 miles long, and 150 broad. Transylvania, like Bohemia, is inclosed by a chain of mountains.

Q. What are the productions of this province?

A. It yields corn, and wine, with all the productions common to Europe.

Q. What are its minerals?

A. The precious metals, and various other minerals.

Q. Which is the chief town?

A. Hermanstadt is the capital.

Q. What are the population and general character?

A. The population is 1,600,000. The nobility are rich, and the peasants are in ignorance, and slavery. This province yields to the House of Austria a revenue of about 1,500,000 florins.

Q. What is their religion?

A. Like that of Hungary with a free toleration.

### SCLAVONIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Slavonia?

A. It is situated on the south of Hungary, between the rivers Save, Drave and Danube. It is 100 miles long and 60 broad.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Posega, the capital; Essick, Waradan and Peter Waradan; these were once strongly fortified against the Turks.

Q. What is the religion?

A. The same as that of Hungary, with a free toleration.

Q. What is their language?

A. It is the root, or basis of the languages of Hungary, Bohemia, Poland and Russia, as the Latin is the root, or basis, of the languages in the south of Europe.

## CROATIA; INCLUDING MORLACHIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Croatia ?

A. It lies on the S. W. of Hungary ; is about 150 miles long, and 50 broad ; and is connected with Slavonia.

Q. What are the face of the country, climate, soil, productions, and population ?

A. The face of the country is generally level, the soil is good, and the productions, such as are common to Hungary. The population is about 800,000.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Carlstadt is the capital ; Fiume, and Kostainitz, are handsome towns.

Q. *What other provinces belong to the House of Austria ?*

A. The kingdom of Illyria, and Dalmatia.

## KINGDOM OF ILLYRIA.

Q. What are the situation and character of this province ?

A. It is situated upon the south of Austria Proper, near the head of the gulf of Venice ; and includes the territories of Carinthia, Carniola, the vicinity of Trieste, Austrian Friuli, the canton of Cividal, Venetian Istria, and a part of Croatia.

Q. How is it divided, and what is its population ?

A. It is divided into the governments of Laybach and Trieste. Population is about 1,000,000.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, climate, and productions ?

A. The face of the country is mountainous ; the soil in the vallies is fertile ; the climate is mild and salubrious ; and the productions, such as are common to Austria and Hungary. Hydria is noted for its mines of quicksilver, which are said to be the most productive in the world.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Trieste and Laybach. Trieste was the only commercial port of Austria, until Venice was annexed to the empire.

## DALMATIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Dalmatia ?

A. Dalmatia is situated upon the eastern border of the gulf of Venice. It is bounded N. by Croatia ; E. by Turkey ; and W. by the gulf of Venice.

Q. What is the character and population of Dalmatia ?

A. The interior is mountainous, and covered with forests. The country near the coast is level, and produces wheat, corn, grapes, olives, &c. ; and the people resemble the Ital-



ians in their religion, manners and customs ; but the inhabitants of the interior are Morlachians ; rough, and half civilized. The population is about 350,000.

## AUSTRIAN ITALY.

Q. How is Austrian Italy bounded ?

A. It is bounded N. by Switzerland and Austria ; E. by Carniola ; S. E. by the Adriatic ; S. by the States of the Church, Modena, and Parma ; and W. by Piedmont.

Q. How is Austrian Italy divided ?

A. Into the governments of Venice and Milan. (See the following table.)

<i>Government of Venice.</i>			<i>Government of Milan.</i>		
<i>Delegations.</i>	<i>Sq. m.</i>	<i>Pop.</i>	<i>Delegations.</i>	<i>Sq. m.</i>	<i>Pop.</i>
Venice	620	427,000	Milan	670	427,000
Padua	860	270,000	Como	1,230	299,000
Verona	1,330	285,000	Pavia	320	117,000
Vicenza	950	311,000	Lodi	390	141,000
Treviso	1,310	295,000	Cremona	680	205,000
Udina	2,880	269,000	Mantua	380	214,000
Belluno	1,460	125,000	Brescia	1,200	306,000
Rovigo	540	63,000	Bergamo	1,700	292,000
			Sondrio	1,270	81,000
	<hr/>	<hr/>		<hr/>	<hr/>
	9,950	1,932,000		8,340	2,882,000
				9,950	1,932,000
				<hr/>	<hr/>
			Total in Austrian Italy	13,290	4,014,000
			in 1819, stated at		4,121,660

## VENICE.

Q. What are the situation and character of the state of Venice ?

A. The republic of Venice is situated at the head of the Adriatic sea, or gulf of Venice ; it took the lead in commerce of all the cities and states of Italy, in the 11th, 12th, 13th and 14th centuries, at the time of the crusades ; and her citizens became the carriers between the cities of Tyre in Asia, Alexandria in Egypt, and the states of Europe. The state or republic, soon became enriched by this commerce, and took the lead in Europe, in wealth, arts, and splendor.

Q. What is the capital of this republic ?

A. The city of Venice ; it stands upon 72 islands, at the head of the gulf of Venice, which are connected by 50 bridges. The city is built upon spiles, like Amsterdam, and many of its streets serve as canals ; particularly the main-street, which

extends through the city. It is one of the great commercial ports of Austria.

The prosperity of the republic excited the displeasure of the Roman Pontiff, Julius II.; and he formed a grand coalition of the neighboring potentates against her, styled the league of Cambray, about the first of the 16th century. Julius threw his keys into the Tiber; drew his sword, and entered into the confederacy. Venice sued for peace, and obtained it, by concessions; and the league was turned against Louis XII. king of France.

After the discovery of the mariners compass, about the first of the 15th century, Venice began to decline, and the commercial states of Europe began to rise. Venice continued to decline, until she was annexed to the House of Austria, at the close of the 18th century.

#### MILAN.

Q. What is the situation of the Dutchy of Milan?

A. The Dutchy of Milan is delightfully situated in the north of Italy.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil and productions?

A. The face of the country is mountainous, except in the basin of the Po, and near the Adriatic. The soil is remarkably fertile, and produces all the variety of grain and fruits common to the temperate zone.

Q. What is the capital of this Dutchy?

A. Milan; it is one of the richest and most splendid cities of Italy, in commerce, arts and manufactures.

Q. What other city of distinction, in the ancient kingdom of Lombardy, belongs to the House of Austria?

A. Mantua: this city was built in the time of the Romans; destroyed in the 5th century; and re-built soon after the first crusade in the 11th century; and is famous for the birth place of the ancient poet, Virgil. Mantua, like Milan, has been a city of sieges in the wars of Italy: they were taken by general Bonaparte, in the year 1797: re-taken by the Austrians under general Suwarrow, in 1799, and confirmed to Austria, at the peace of 1814.

Q. What is the state of agriculture?

A. It is generally good.

Q. What is the state of literature and the arts?

A. There is no portion of Europe where literature and the arts have been carried to higher perfection, than in the Milanese; and they flourish generally in Austrian Italy.

Q. What is the religion?

A. The Roman Catholic religion is the principal.

Q. What is the government ?

A. It is subject to the House of Austria, and governed by a viceroy, who is one of the imperial family.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Austrian Italy ?

A. Austrian Italy has been one of the greatest theatres of action in Europe ; and embraces the whole field of history, both ancient and modern. (See the history of Rome.) It was first settled by barbarians, like the other parts of Europe. The Gauls built Milan, about 400 years before Christ. It was conquered by the Romans about 200 years before Christ, and formed a splendid section of the Roman empire. It was conquered by the Huns, and other barbarians, in the 5th century, and was principally included in the kingdom of the Lombards, until that kingdom was overthrown by Charlemagne, who gave it to the Pope, at the commencement of the 9th century.

This country, in common with the north of Italy, has been the theatre of almost all the wars in the south of Europe, from the league of Cambray, in the early part of the 16th century, down to the present time.

The Duchy of Milan has vibrated between the kings of France, and emperors of Austria, from the time of Charles VIII. king of France, in the 15th century, to this time ; and it is now in quiet possession of Austria.

---

QUESTION.—What is the general history of Austrian Italy, from the early ages down to the present time ?

### AUSTRIAN POLAND, OR GALICIA.

Q. Which are the Austrian provinces of Poland ?

A. Galicia, Lodomeria, a part of Little Poland, Podolia and Bukowine.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, and productions ?

A. The face of the country is covered with mountains, and extensive plains, and forests ; the soil is rich, but not very productive.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. The precious metals, and other minerals are found here ; but the salt mines of Wielitzka, are among the wonders of the world.

Q. What is the extent of these mines ?

A. They extend several miles ; are of great depth, and

peopled with a race of miners, who dwell there and enjoy their own religion and society, with their little villages and churches. Annual products, 600,000 quintals.

Q. What is worthy of notice in these mines ?

A. In one of them, are found two rivers : the one fresh, and the other salt.

Q. When was this division of Poland confirmed to Austria ?

A. By the grand partition between Austria, Prussia and Russia, in the year 1795 ; and by the congress of Vienna in 1815.

Galicia bears the title of kingdom, and is governed by a viceroy, who resides at Lemberg. Population 3,750,000.

## PRUSSIA.

Q. Which is the next great power of Germany ?

A. The kingdom of Prussia.

Q. How is this kingdom formed ?

A. Prussia occupies the north of Poland, and a great part of the north of Germany, consisting of two parts, entirely separated from each other. The eastern part forms the main body of the kingdom, and comprises the first seven provinces in the following table ; the western portion lies in the west of Germany, on the Rhine, and includes the three last provinces. It is 800 miles long, and from 70 to 300 broad.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population ?

A. It is divided into 10 provinces ; see the following table :

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Sp. miles.</i>	<i>Pop. 1817.</i>	<i>Chief-Towns.</i>	
East Prussia	15,115	870,000	Konigsberg.	
West Prussia	10,000	580,000	Grumbinnen.	
Brandenburg	14,939	1,200,000	Berlin.	
Pomerania	12,363	680,000	Stralsund.	
Silesia	14,861	100,000	Breslau.	
Posen	11,261	790,000	Posen.	
Saxony	8,492	1,180,000	Magdeburg.	
Westphalia	} 9,565	1,000,000	Munster.	
Juliers-Cleves-Berg		3,639	930,000	Cologne.
Lower-Rhine		6,432	1,000,000	Aix-la-Chapelle.
Total	104,656	10,330,000		

The Swiss canton of Neufchatel, (population about 50,000) acknowledges also the sovereignty of the House of Brandenburg.

Q. What are the face of the country, climate, and productions of Prussia ?

A. The face of the country is generally level ; the climate

is mild, except in the eastern parts adjoining Russia ; these are cold. The productions are such as are common to Germany.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Vistula, Elbe, Oder, Niemen, and Pregel.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Berlin is the capital of Prussia ; Breslau, Konigsburg, Posen, Potsdam, Halle, Magdberg, Frankfort, Munster, Cologne, and Aix-la-Chapelle, are places of great distinction. Potsdam is noted for its magnificent palace ; Magdenburg for its fortifications, and Frankfort for its manufactures.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. It is various in the different parts of the kingdom ; but in general, not very flourishing. Prussia exports some grain.

Q. What is the state of manufactures ?

A. Manufactures are more flourishing than agriculture, but principally confined to the large cities.

Q. What is the commerce ?

A. Prussia has but little commerce, and this is confined to a few commercial cities.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. Prussia supports six universities ; and the higher orders of the people are well informed ; but the peasantry are both poor and ignorant.

Q. What is the religion of Prussia ?

A. In German Prussia, the inhabitants are mostly Lutherans ; and in Polish Prussia, chiefly Catholics.

Q. What is the government of Prussia ?

A. Absolute monarchy.

Q. What is the military strength of Prussia ?

A. The crown of Prussia generally supports about 200,000 foot, and 40,000 horse.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Prussia ?

A. About the first of the 14th century, the knights of the Teutonic Order seized on the city of Dantzic, and purchased Pomerania, of the duke of Brandenburg, which laid the foundation of the kingdom of Prussia.

About the first of the 18th century, the duke of Brandenburg, became grand master of the Teutonic knights, and annexed Polish Prussia to his dominions in Germany ; and Louis XIV. king of France, conferred upon him the title of king, to express his approbation of the measure ; and he commenced the dynasty of the House of Prussia, under the title of Frederic I.

In the year 1713, Frederic I. was succeeded by his son Frederic William, under the title of Frederic II. He was a wise and prudent prince, who had a steady eye upon the best interest of his kingdom ; to secure which, by the most rigid economy, he kept an army of 60,000 men, in time of peace, and laid up in his treasury a very great sum, as a permanent fund.

In the year 1740, Frederic II. was succeeded by his son Frederic III. who, like Alexander of Macedon, was heir to a wise and prudent father, and knew equally well how to improve the inheritance. Frederic III. found a full treasury, and an army trained to his hand. Lewis XV. was then upon the throne of France, and Charles VII. of Bavaria, upon the throne of Germany ; and Maria Theresa, queen of Hungary, upon the throne of Austria.

In 1741, the king of Prussia commenced an attack upon the province of Austrian Silesia, and made himself master of Breslau, its capital, which led to a war with Austria. The king of Prussia was supported by Lewis XV. king of France, who sent their armies into Austria and Bohemia, at the same time, under a joint confederacy, to divide the Austrian dominions.

In 1742, the king of Prussia obtained of the empress, by the treaty of Breslau, the cession of Upper and Lower Silesia, with the county of Glatz, and took a neutral stand in the war. This treaty was confirmed by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, between France and Austria, in the year 1748. This proved an important acquisition to Prussia.

In the year 1755, France and Austria entered into a confederacy to divide the dominions of the king of Prussia. Francis I. of Lorrain, husband of Maria Theresa, was then upon the throne of Germany, in right of his wife ; Charles VII. having died in the year 1745.

The king of Prussia anticipated the views of France and Austria, and marched at the head of a powerful army, into Bohemia, and began the war. This movement opened upon Prussia the old seven years war, in which Spain, Sweden, Denmark, and Russia, became confederates with France and Austria, to divide the dominions of Prussia. Great Britain supported the king of Prussia through the war ; and at the peace of Paris, 1763, he retained all his possessions.

In the year 1795, the king of Prussia, then Frederic IV., the emperor of Russia, and the emperor of Austria, made war upon Poland, and divided the kingdom between them. This gave another important acquisition of territory to Prussia.

In the year 1806, the king of Prussia, Frederic V. confederated with the emperor of Russia, and the king of Great-Britain, against France; the emperor Napoleon entered Prussia with a powerful army, and overran the kingdom; and in 1807, he humbled the king of Prussia, by the peace of Tilsit, in which Napoleon assumed the style of conqueror.

In 1812, the king of Prussia joined the confederacy against Russia, and furnished the emperor Napoleon with his quota of troops, &c. to take Moscow and Petersburgh.

In 1813, the king of Prussia confederated with the powers of Europe against France; defeated the emperor Napoleon in the battle of Leipsic; took him prisoner in Paris, and banished him to the island of Elba, May, 1814.

In the year 1815, the emperor Napoleon, who had recovered his throne, met the Prussians and English, at the battle of Waterloo. Napoleon was beaten, and fled into France, where he resigned his crown to his son, and soon after delivered himself up to the captain of an English ship of war. The allies, in a congress at Vienna, banished him for life, to the isle of St. Helena.

In 1815, the congress of Vienna confirmed to the king of Prussia the partitions of Poland, in 1795, with a reduction of 23,000 square miles. (See the table under Poland.)

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was the kingdom of Prussia founded?

When and by whom was it annexed to Germany, and under what title did the dynasty commence?

What were the characters of Frederic II. and Frederic III. and when did they commence their reigns?

When did Frederic III. commence war with the House of Austria, and who were upon the thrones of Austria, Germany, Bavaria, and France at this time?

Who became the Prussian ally in the war, and what was the result?

What war followed the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle? who were the belligerents? what was the object, and what was the result?

When and by whom was Poland divided?

What confederacy was formed in 1806, and what was the result?

What confederacy was formed in 1812, and what was the object?

What confederacy was formed in 1813, and what was the result?

What were the memorable events of 1814?

Q. What other IMPORTANT SOVEREIGNTIES belong to the Germanic body?

A. Saxony, Bavaria, Hanover, Wirtemberg, Baden, Brunswick, Mecklenburg, Hesse-Cassel, Anhalt, and the Hans-towns, or Free Cities. (See the table of Germany, page 273.)

## SAXONY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the kingdom of Saxony?

A. Saxony lies N. W. of Bohemia, and S. of Brandenburg, in the eastern section of Germany. It is 75 miles long and 50 broad; and contains 7,476 square miles.

Q. What are the climate and general character of Saxony?

A. The climate is mild; the northern parts are rich and fertile; and produce the various kinds of grain common to Europe; and the southern parts are rich in minerals. Great improvements have been made in the arts and manufactures.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Silver, tin, bismuth, manganese, cobalt, &c.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Dresden is the capital; a city strongly walled and fortified; and celebrated for its literature and manufactures; especially porcelain. Leipsic is famous for its great fairs, and for the defeat of the emperor Napoleon, in the year 1813.

Q. What are the population and revenue?

A. The population in 1818, was about 1,200,000; the revenue was estimated at £850,000 sterling.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. It is very flourishing; the universities of Leipsic and Jena, are of great celebrity; common schools have become general, and the poor are well instructed.

## HISTORY.

Q. What historical facts are worthy of notice in Saxony?

A. Saxony was taken by Charles XII. king of Sweden, in the year 1706; and Frederic Augustus, the elector or duke, then king of Poland, was deposed from the throne of Poland, and Stanislaus Leczinski was crowned king of Poland. Saxony was the general theatre of the Prussian seven years war of 1756 to 1763.

Q. What memorable fields of conflict are found in Saxony?

A. The field of Lutnez, rendered famous by the death of Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, in protecting the Protestant cause in Germany, 1632; and the field of Leipsic.

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Saxony taken? when and of what war did it become the theatre?

What memorable fields of action are in Saxony, and why?

## SAXON STATES.

Q. Which are the Saxon States?

A. Saxe-Weimar, Saxe-Gotha, Saxe-Cobourg, Saxe-Mein-



ungen, and Saxe-Hildburghausen. (See the table of Germany, page 273.)

Q. What are the situation and character of these states?

A. They are a collection of small principalities that lie contiguous to Saxony, on the south-west, and south of Prussian Thuringia; they are so small, and so nearly resemble Saxony, and the adjoining states, that it is needless to give them a particular description. They have each a capital of their own name. Weimar is celebrated for its valuable library.

Jena, one of the principal towns, holds a university in common with the Saxon States, which is much celebrated. It is also famous for the battle of Jena, which commenced the Prussian war, in 1806, and in which the emperor Napoleon was victorious. Prince Lewis of Prussia was killed.

Q. What other SMALL STATES are found in Germany?

A. Reuss-Greiz, Reuss-Lobenstein, Schwartzburg-Rudolstadt, and Schwartzburg-Sonderhausen; but they, like the Saxon States, are too small to need a particular description; and do not present any one feature worthy of particular remark.

## HANOVER.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the kingdom of Hanover?

A. Hanover lies on the N. W. of Germany; E. of the Netherlands; and W. of Brunswick and Brandenburg; and extends to the sea, embracing nearly the whole extent of the river Weser. (See the atlas.) It contains 14,600 square miles.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into 13 provinces, and contains a population of 1,303,100.

Q. What is the general character of this kingdom?

A. The face of the country is variable; interspersed with fertile plains, and barren heaths, but not mountainous. The climate is also very variable, hot in summer and cold in winter. The Hartz mountains, in the southern section, are rich in minerals.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Hanover is the capital; Gottingen is noted for its university, as being one of the first in Europe; Emden is the principal commercial port.

Q. What is the state of commerce, agriculture, and manufactures?

A. These, taken together, are very inconsiderable; but are improving.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. Literature has been very low among the middling, or lower classes of the people, but is rising ; schools are becoming common.

Q. What is the government ?

A. It is governed by a viceroy from the king of Great-Britain.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Hanover ?

A. Hanover held its own rank among the states of Germany, until the death of queen Ann, of England, in 1714. At that time, the elector of Hanover was called by the English nation, to fill the throne of Great Britain, under the title of George I. but he retained his electoral powers in the Germanic body.

At the congress of Vienna, in 1815, Hanover was erected into a kingdom, with a very considerable addition of territory. The king of Great Britain is king of Hanover, and the government is conducted by a viceroy.

### BRUNSWICK, OLDENBURG, AND OTHER SMALL STATES.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Dutchy of *Brunswick* ?

A. Brunswick is situated upon the rivers Ems and Weser ; is nearly surrounded by Hanover, and is intersected on the south by the Hartz mountains. The other parts are under good cultivation ; and the Dutchy is generally flourishing.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. It is mild and salubrious.

Q. What are its minerals ?

A. That section which lies within the mountains, abounds in minerals.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Brunswick is the capital ; and is particularly noted for its fairs. Wolfenbittel, the former residence of the dukes, is celebrated for its castle.

Q. What is the style of its sovereign ?

A. Duke of Brunswick-Wolfenbittel.

Q. What are the situation and character of *Oldenburg* ?

A. It lies within the western section of Hanover : is a low country, like Holland, interspersed with marshes, and sand barrens ; and is not very productive.

Q. What are the principal sources of support ?

A. Grazing and fishing.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Oldenburg is the only town of any note in the Dutchy ; it is strongly fortified, and is the cradle of all the royal families in the north of Europe.

Q. What are the situation and character of *Lippe-Detmold*, and *Lippe-Schaumburg*?

A. They lie south of Hanover, upon the river Weser, and contain nothing of importance that deserve notice. Detmold is the capital of the principality of Detmold.

Q. What other small states lie in the north-west of Germany?

A. *Lauenburg* and *Holstein*. (See the atlas.) These states lie between the Elbe and Baltic, and are owned by the king of Denmark.

Q. What FREE CITIES are there in this territory?

A. *Hamburg* and *Lubeck* : the former is an ancient commercial city, and has the most extensive trade of any city in Germany. Lubeck is situated upon a river that divides Holstein from Lauenburg, and derives its trade from the navigation of the Baltic. (See the atlas.) It formerly took precedence among the cities of the Hanseatic league, and was the seat of their councils.

#### DUTCHIES OF MECKLENBURG.

Q. What other states are situated in the north-west of Germany?

A. The Dutchies of *Mecklenburg-Schwerin*, and *Mecklenburg-Strelitz*.

Q. What is the character of these Dutchies?

A. They are, like Oldenburg, low and undulating ; and interspersed with swamps and sand barrens, or covered with forests. Agriculture is their chief employment ; and even this does not flourish.

Q. Which are their capitals?

A. *Schwerin* and *Strelitz*.

#### PRINCIPALITY OF ANHALT.

Q. What are the situation and character of this principality?

A. It is situated in the circle of Upper Saxony ; and is one of the most illustrious principalities in Germany.

Q. How is it divided?

A. Into *Anhalt-Dessau*, *Anhalt-Bernburg*, and *Anhalt-Kothen* ; subject to three independent princes.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil and productions?

A. The face of the country is level ; the soil is generally

good, and produces all the various kinds of grain and fruits, common to Germany, with some tobacco.

Q. Which are its rivers?

A. It is watered by the Elbe, and its tributary streams.

Q. What is its capital?

A. Anhalt.

Q. What are its population and revenue?

A. Its population is about 100,000; and its revenue is about 600,000 rix dollars.

#### HESSIAN STATES.

Q. Which are the Hessian States, and how are they divided?

A. Hesse-Cassel, Hesse-Darmstadt, and Hesse-Homburg. They are situated south of Hanover, and near the borders of Western Prussia.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Cassel, Hanau, Marburg, Fulda, Darmstadt, Mentz, Worms, and Homburg. These are all rich and flourishing towns.

Q. What is worthy of notice as a historical trait of Hesse-Cassel?

A. The prince of Hesse-Cassel sold 15 or 20,000 of his subjects to the king of Great Britain, who served against America in the war of the revolution.

#### COUNTY OF WALDECK.

Q. How is this state situated, and what is its character?

A. It is situated among the Hessian States; is very small, and requires no particular description.

#### HANS-TOWNS, OR CITIES OF THE HANSEATIC LEAGUE.

Q. By what other name are these cities distinguished?

A. They are generally termed Free Imperial cities.

Q. Which is the largest city of this league?

A. Hamburg, the first commercial city in Germany.

Q. What gave rise to this league?

A. From the death of Frederic II. emperor of Germany, in the year 1250, great discord and factions arose in the empire, under the reign of his son Conrad, who died in the year 1256. From this time factions and civil wars continued to distract the empire, down to the year 1273, when Rodolph, of Hapsburg, was elected emperor, who laid the foundation of the House of Austria.

During this interregnum of 17 years, Germany was without a head, and almost without law; all was anarchy, discord, and confusion. To regulate trade and secure property, the

commercial cities of Lubeck, Cologne, Brunswick, and Dantzic, formed a municipal kind of government, and united for their defence against the great lords, by a famous association, called the Hanseatic League ; and these towns were afterwards joined by 80 others, belonging to different states, which formed a kind of commercial republic, that continued down to 1630, when it was dissolved. Four towns only remain, viz. Hamburg, Bremen, Lubeck, and Frankfort.

POMERANIA.

Q. How is this Dutchy situated, and what is its character ?

A. Pomerania lies upon the shores of the Baltic, in Upper Saxony ; it is 60 miles long and 13 broad.

Q. How is it divided ?

A. It is divided into German and Swedish Pomerania.

Q. How is Swedish Pomerania divided ?

A. It is divided into the county of Stralsund, with Stralsund for its capital ; and the principality of Rugen, which comprises the island of Rugen ; the principality of Bath, 10 miles long, and 6 broad ; also the counties of Glutzhov, Barony, and Wolgart ; all comprising a population of 160,000, with a revenue of 240,000 rix dollars.

The whole Dutchy of Pomerania now belongs to Prussia, with a population of 670,000. It exports corn, cattle, timber, wool, flax, and fish.

Q. Which are the STATES OF SOUTHERN GERMANY ?

A. Bavaria, Wirtemberg, and Baden.

BAVARIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the kingdom of Bavaria ?

A. Bavaria lies upon the Danube, with Austria and Bohemia on the east and south ; Wirtemberg and Baden on the west ; and the small German states on the north. It is about 250 miles long, and 120 broad.

Q. How is Bavaria divided, and what is its population ?

A. It was formerly divided into Upper and Lower Bavaria, and the Palatinate ; but it is now divided into 8 circles, by the new constitution of Germany, of 1815. Population 3,500,000.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. Two branches of the Alps extend into Bavaria ; one is called the Black Forest, the other Alp ; which, with the Alps of Switzerland, give rise to the river Danube.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil and productions ?

A. The face of the country in Upper Bavaria is mountainous : but it is level in Lower Bavaria. In the latter, the soil is good, and yields all the productions common to Europe.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Munich, the capital of Bavaria, is a handsome city, but formerly full of beggars. Ratisbon is commodiously situated upon the Danube, and a place of some trade. Augsburg was rendered famous for the league of Augsburg, in the time of the reformation, in the 16th century.

Q. What is the state of agriculture, arts, manufactures, commerce and literature ?

A. They are all low, but rising ; Bavaria has one university, and an academy of sciences ; the Bavarians are better soldiers than scholars.

Q. What is the government ?

A. It is absolute, and hereditary.

Q. What is the military force in time of peace ?

A. About 40,000.

Q. What is the revenue ?

A. About £2,600,000.

Q. What is the religion ?

A. Roman Catholic, but a free toleration is now enjoyed.

Bavaria has been a rival state to Austria, and given several emperors to the Germanic body.

## WIRTEMBERG.

Q. What are the situation and character of the kingdom of Wirtemberg ?

A. Wirtemberg lies on the south-western section of Germany, between Austria and Baden. It is both mountainous and populous. It has a population of 1,395,463 ; and a revenue of about 1,500,000 florins.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Stuttgard is the capital ; Ulm and Tubingen, are large cities ; the latter is noted for its university, and law school.

Q. What are its agriculture, manufactures, climate and productions ?

A. Its agriculture and manufactures are flourishing, and improving ; its climate is mild and salubrious, and its productions are abundant. Its mountains are rich in minerals.

Q. What is its military establishment ?

A. In time of peace about 3,000.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. It is fast improving, under the patronage of the king.

Q. What small states are connected with Wirtemberg :

A. The *Principalities of Hohenzollern, and Hohenzollern Sigmaringen*, are within the limits of Wirtemberg. *Lichtenstein* lies upon the south-east shore of the lake of Constance.

BADEN.

Q. What are the situation and character of Baden ?

A. It lies upon the south-western extremity of Germany, upon the confines of Switzerland and France ; and has the Bavarian circles of the Rhine for its western boundary. (See the atlas.) Its character, strength and resources, are about the same as those of Wirtemberg.

Q. What is the capital ?

A. Baden, noted for its strong castle, upon the summit of a mountain ; often the safe retreat of the Margrave. Carlsruhe is the seat of government, and the residence of the court. Mannheim is an elegant city, noted for its literary institutions. Freyburg and Heidelberg are noted for their universities.

NETHERLANDS.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the kingdom of Netherlands ?

A. It is situated upon the north-west of France, and bounded W. and N. by the North sea ; E. by Germany ; and S. by France. It is about 220 miles long, and from 100 to 200 broad.

Q. How is Netherlands divided and what is its population ?

A. It is divided into 18 provinces—the 7 Dutch provinces of Holland, viz. Holland, Utrecht, Zealand, Gelderland, Overyssel, Friesland, and Groningen ; 1 German, viz. Luxemburg ; the other 10 Belgic, formerly called Belgium, Flanders or Netherlands. For population, see the following table :

<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Population.</i>	<i>Provinces.</i>	<i>Population.</i>
Holland,	750,000	Gelderland	244,000
East Flanders,	602,000	Luxemburg,	226,000
West Flanders,	521,000	Friesland,	177,000
Hainault,	334,000	Namur,	157,000
South Brabant.	366,000	Overyssel,	148,000
Liege,	355,000	Groningen,	136,000
Limburg,	293,000	Zealand,	112,000
North Brabant.	252,000	Utrecht,	103,000
Antwerp,	250,000	Drenthe,	47,000

5,175,000

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Hague and Brussels, are the residence of the court ; but Amsterdam, Antwerp and Rotterdam, are the great commercial cities.

Q. What is the government ?

A. It is a limited, hereditary monarchy ; the constitution was formed in 1814, upon the plan of the system of Great Britain.

Q. What is the religion ?

A. The Dutch provinces, or Holland, are Calvinists ; but the Belgic provinces, or Flanders, are Catholics, with free toleration.

Q. What are the finances ?

A. The revenue and expenditures, are each £7,000,000. The national debt is about £140,000,000, at 2 or 2-12 per cent.

Q. What is the military force ?

A. Land troops about 500,000 : marine force 12 sail of the line, and 24 frigates.

Q. Which are the islands ?

A. The principal are Walcheren, South Beveland, North Beveland, Tholen, Schouwen, Overflakkee, Goree, and Texel.

Q. Which are the foreign possessions ?

A. Those of Asia, are Java, Amboyna, Banda, Ternate, Malacca, Macassar, and Factories on the Coromandel coast, and in Persia ; in Africa, 13 small forts ; in South America, and the West Indies, Surinam, and the isles of Curacoa, St. Eustatius, and St. Martin.

Q. What is the general character of this kingdom ?

A. This can be best understood under a description of the ancient divisions.

## FLANDERS, OR NETHERLANDS.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the 11 provinces of Netherlands or Flanders ?

A. They are situated upon the southern section of the kingdom, and are bounded N. by Holland ; E. by Germany ; S. by France ; and W. by the North sea ; are 200 miles from east to west, and 70 from north to south.

Q. What is the face of the country and climate ?

A. The face of the country is gently undulating ; and the climate is mild and salubrious, excepting near the coast.

Q. What are the soil, productions, and state of agriculture ?

A. The best in Europe.



Q. What are the minerals?

A. Copper, lead, iron, brimstone, coal, marble, &c.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Sambre, Meuse, and Scheldt.

Q. Which are the principal canals?

A. Those of Brussels, Ghent, and Antwerp, with many others.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Ghent, Brussels, Antwerp, Leyden, and many others.

Q. What is peculiar to these several towns?

A. Ghent the capital, is ten miles in circumference, and walled; it has a population of about 60,000; it is famous for 300 bridges over its numerous canals; and also for the treaty of peace, between Great Britain and the United States, in 1815. Brussels is celebrated for manufactures, particularly its laces. Antwerp is a rich commercial city, but was formerly eclipsed by Amsterdam, on the independence of Holland, and by the obstruction of the river Scheldt. Leyden is noted for its university.

Q. What are the commerce and manufactures?

A. These commenced early, and were highly prosperous, until the Dutch checked their commerce by obstructing the navigation of the Scheldt, about the middle of the 17th century: this ruined the commerce of Antwerp until the conquest of the French, and the reign of the emperor Napoleon, who restored the navigation of the Scheldt, and revived the commerce of Antwerp. Their manufactures have continued to flourish.

Q. What is their religion?

A. Roman Catholic, with free toleration.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. Literature flourished early in Flanders, or Netherlands and its universities have produced some great men, particularly those of Leyden, Ghent, and others.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Netherlands?

A. Netherlands, like Venice, early took the lead in agriculture, commerce, and wealth; but it has been the theatre of long and distressing wars, between the rival states of Europe: particularly England, France, Holland, and Austria. It was conquered by France, in the early period of her revolution, 1794. At the close of that revolution, it was united with Holland, under the title of the kingdom of the Netherlands, by the congress of Vienna, in 1814. It is rendered fa

amous for the battle of Waterloo, that decided the fate of the emperor Napoleon, 1815.

### HOLLAND.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Holland?

A. Holland is situated between Germany, on the east; Flanders or Netherlands, on the south; and the German sea, on the north and west. It is about 200 miles long and 150 broad.

Q. How is Holland divided, and what is its population?

A. Holland is divided into seven provinces, viz. Holland, Overyssel, Zealand, Friesland, Utrecht, Groningen, and Gelderland. For the population, see the table, page 299.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. Holland is one dead level, and in many parts lower than the sea; it is secured against inundations by large banks, or dykes.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Amsterdam, upon the Zuyder Zee, is the capital of Holland; one of the first commercial cities of Europe, and has a population of about 250,000; it is built upon spiles, like Venice, and stands in the midst of the water, with large and deep canals for its principal streets, which admit the free passage of ships, &c.; these canals are bordered upon each side with foot walks, adorned with rows of trees, which give a delightful appearance to the town; the Stadthouse is considered equal, if not superior, to the royal palace of Berlin. Rotterdam, upon the Meuse, is next to Amsterdam in size, wealth, and commerce; it contains a population of about 40,000. Hague is the seat of government, and the residence of the court; it is a handsome city, and contains a population of about 40,000. Haerlem contains a population of about 20,000. Middleburg and Flushing, on the island of Walcheren, are handsome commercial cities.

Q. What is the state of agriculture, commerce, and the arts?

A. These have flourished beyond example in Holland.

Q. What is the character of the people, and language?

A. The Dutch are remarkably industrious, temperate, frugal and neat in their affairs. The mass of the people speak Low Dutch; the French language is spoken in genteel circles.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Holland?

A. Holland was formerly a part of the 17 provinces of the Netherlands or Flanders; peopled by the ancient Belgæ

who were conquered by the Romans 47 years before Christ. Thierry, count of Holland, founded the first sovereignty, in the year 368, which continued until 1417, when it was surrendered to the duke of Burgundy. Oppressed by the bishop of Utrecht, they transferred themselves to Spain, in the reign of Charles I. [Charles V. of Germany,] 1534.

Oppressed by the tyrannic government of Philip II. son and successor of Charles, the Seven United Provinces of Holland formed the Union of Utrecht, and threw off the Spanish yoke, by a revolution, with William, Prince of Orange, at their head, in the year 1579. This sanguinary struggle continued until the year 1609, when they obtained a truce with Spain, under the title of the Seven United Provinces.

During this struggle, the Prince of Orange was elected stadtholder, or president, and the government continued in his family. In the year 1747, the office was made hereditary, in the male and female branches of his family.

In the year 1793, Holland was invaded by the French, and in 1795, it was taken; and in 1806, it was erected into a kingdom, and Louis Bonaparte placed upon the throne. In 1812, the kingdom of Holland was incorporated with the French empire.

In 1814, Holland recovered her liberty, and the stadtholder was restored: the same year it was united to the kingdom of the Netherlands, with the House of Orange upon the throne, by the Congress of Vienna.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is the history of Holland down to the year 1534? What is their subsequent history to 1609? What took place in 1747? What were the changes from 1793 to 1812? What changes took place in 1814?

## DENMARK.

Q. What constitutes the kingdom of Denmark?

A. The peninsula of Jutland, Sleswick, Holstein, and Lauenburg; and the Danish Islands, viz. Zealand, Funen, Lolland, and others. Amount of population about 1,565,000.

Q. What are the situation and extent of continental Denmark?

A. It is situated upon the peninsula of Jutland, on the north west of Germany: is bounded N. by the Scagar Rack; E. by the Baltic sound; S. by Germany; and W. by the north sea. It is 220 miles long and 150 broad,

Q. What are the face of the country, climate, soil and productions?

A. The face of the country is generally level, and in some parts sandy; the climate is mild and healthy; the soil is generally good, and produces all the various kinds of grain of Europe: it also abounds in pasturage; and the Dutchy of Holstein produces excellent horses.

Q. Which are the principal rivers and lakes?

A. The Eyder, that unites with the canal of Kiel, that connects the north sea and Baltic, is the only river of importance in Denmark; but it abounds in small lakes.

Q. Which are the chief towns of the kingdom of Denmark?

A. Copenhagen, upon the island of Zealand, is the capital of Denmark: it is one of the strongest and best built cities of the north, and possesses great commercial advantages. Wiburgh, Sleswick, and Gluckstadt, are considerable towns. Altona, on the Elbe, is next to Copenhagen in commerce. Elsinore, at the western extremity of the island of Zealand, has a good road, and all nations pay toll to Denmark, here, on passing the sound. Kiel is the capital of Holstein, and celebrated for its university. Odensee, upon the island of Funen, has a handsome college.

Q. What are the religion and government?

A. The religion is Lutheran, with a general toleration. The government is absolute and the people slaves.

Q. What are the language and literature of Denmark?

A. The Danes speak the old Gothic and Teutonic. They have one university at Copenhagen well endowed; and many literary societies and institutions; yet Denmark has produced but few learned men. The celebrated astronomer, Tycho Brahe, stands at the head of the literati of Denmark.

Q. What are the land and naval strength of Denmark?

A. Denmark keeps but few troops in time of peace. She has about 20 ships of war.

#### DANISH ISLES.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the island of Zealand, Funen, &c.?

A. They are situated in the Baltic sound, and are separated by the Great Belt; the former is 65 miles long, and 60 broad, and contains a population of 310,000: it produces large crops, and has excellent pastures; Copenhagen, the capital of Denmark, is situated upon this island. Funen is 35 miles long, and 30 broad; population 112,000; Funen also yields large crops of corn, and exports about 100,000 barrels annually. Odensee is the capital.

Langeland is situated in the south part of the Great Belt, between Laaland and Funen, 30 miles long, and from 3 to 5 miles broad; it is more fertile than Funen. Population 11,200. Rudkioping is the capital.

Laaland lies contiguous to Langeland; is 60 miles long, and about 12 upon an average broad. It is as fertile as Funen, and produces excellent wheat and peas. Population 38,000.

Falster is situated south of Zealand, and separated by a narrow strait; 60 miles in circumference; is very fertile in grain and fruit; and is termed the orchard of Denmark.

The other Danish Isles are too small to need description.

#### FAROE ISLES.

Q. How are the Faroe Isles situated?

A. The Faroe isles lie off the coast of Norway, and are subject to terrible storms.

Q. What is their number and population?

A. There are 24; the largest of which is Stromoe, 17 miles long and 8 broad; the others are comparatively small. They contain a population of 5 or 6000.

Q. What is the general character of these isles?

A. They are mountainous, abounding in pasturage and sheep; and are the resort of numerous sea-fowl.

#### ICELAND.

Q. What are the situation and character of Iceland?

A. Iceland is situated near the Arctic ocean, is 280 miles long and 240 broad. Population 48,063.

The inhabitants are generally Lutherans; and divided into 134 parishes, which contain about 300 churches, under the superintendence of one Bishop.

The soil is stony and barren, generally; no corn is raised; but potatoes have been cultivated. No woods are seen, except a few shrubs, 5 or 6 feet high. The pasturage is good in the vallies; but the people subsist principally upon fish. They are attentive to education, and accustomed to read; are generally religious, and strongly attached to their country.

Iceland is noted for its volcano, *Mount Hecla*, one mile high.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Denmark?

A. Denmark claims an antiquity of 3000 years; and boasts a line of kings from Dan, their first king, 1050 years before

Christ.; this exceeds the antiquity of Scotland about 700 years. But Denmark has no authentic history beyond Gormo, their first king 714. The kings of Denmark before that time, were only such chiefs of clans, as invaded, and overran, the Roman empire in the 5th century.

The Danes invaded England, with various success, through the 9th and 10th centuries; and Canute conquered England in the year 1017; and established the Danish dynasty upon that throne. Queen Margaret conquered Sweden in 1394, and acquired the appellation of the Semiramis of the north.

Denmark confederated with Russia and Poland against Charles XII. king of Sweden, in the year 1700, but was soon compelled to sue for peace.

Denmark was a confederate against Prussia in the seven years war, that closed with the peace of 1763; since that time she has been generally quiet.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is the early history of Denmark? What is their history from the 9th to the 14th centuries inclusive? What subsequent confederacies took place in Denmark, and what is her present situation?

## NORWAY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Norway?

A. Norway lies on the north-west of Europe. It is bounded on the N. by the Northern ocean; E. by the Dofrafield mountains; S. by the Scagar Rack; and W. by the N. Atlantic. It is about 1300 miles long, and from 80 to 280 broad.

Q. How is Norway divided, and what is its population?

A. Norway is divided into five governments, viz. Aggerhus, Christianand, Bergen, Drontheim and Norland. Population is estimated at 930,000.

Q. What are the face of the country, climate and productions?

A. The face of the country is rough and mountainous; the climate is various: in the south it is mild in winter, and hot in summer: the cold is very severe in winter, in the northern parts. Their summers are short, and warm throughout. The soil affords some pasturage; but very little corn. They have some cattle and sheep.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The Dofrafield chain, which divides Norway from Sweden.

Q. What are the forests and animals ?

A. The forests abound with lofty pines, and firs ; as well as fierce wild beasts, such as bears, wolves, lynxes, &c. ; together with the all-devouring rat, called the lemming.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Silver, copper, iron, lead, cobalt, magnet. or loadstone, and marble.

Q. What is the character of the Norwegians ?

A. They are brave, industrious, and hospitable ; and are generally well informed. They manufacture their own clothing, implements of husbandry, &c. They depend on their mines, forests, and fisheries, principally, for their support.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. The face of the country does not admit of much cultivation ; they are dependent on a foreign market, chiefly, for grain.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Wardhuys, Drontheim, Bergen, Christiana, and Fredrickshall ; the latter is famous for the siege and death of Charles XII. king of Sweden, December, 1718.

Q. Which are the islands of Norway ?

A. The Lofoden isles, which are famous for the vortex called the Maelstrom. This whirlpool extends several miles in diameter ; is of vast depth, and the sound of its whirl is heard many miles. Ships are often drawn in, in time of calm, and become the victims of this whirlpool of the deep, are swallowed up, and lost among the rocks below.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Norway ?

A. The settlement of Norway commenced with the settlement of Sweden and Denmark, by numerous barbarous clans. In 1412, they were conquered by the Danes, in the reign of Queen Margaret. Since that time, Norway has vibrated between Denmark and Sweden ; and fell under the government of the latter, in 1813.

## SWEDEN.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Sweden ?

A. Sweden is bounded N. by Lapland ; E. by Russia, the gulf of Bothnia, and the Baltic ; S. by the Baltic sea ; and W. by the Baltic sound, and Norway. It is 1100 miles long, and 360 broad.

Q. How is it divided, and what is its population ?

A. Sweden is divided into Sweden Proper, Gothland, Norland, and Lapland. Population, 2,557,781.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. Sweden abounds in mountains, lakes, rivers, rocks, hills, and plains ; all calculated to delight the eye, rather than to enrich the husbandman. The mountains on the north, are like the Alps of Norway, covered with perennial snow.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. Silver, copper, lead, iron quick-silver, sulphur, loadstone, mother of pearl, amethyst, porphery, vitriol, alum, marble and slate.

Q. Which are the mineral springs ?

A. These are numerous and valuable ; there are more than 800 of all kinds.

Q. Which are the principal lakes ?

A. Lake Wener, 100 miles long and 50 broad ; it is supplied by 24 rivers. Lake Wetter, which is not so large ; but is supplied by 40 small streams, with but one outlet. Lake Melar, which is 60 miles long and 20 broad.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. These are short, and conduct the tributary streams from the lakes to the sea.

Q. What is the state of agriculture, commerce and manufactures ?

A. Agriculture and commerce are flourishing ; but manufactures are small, and insufficient for their own consumption.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. The universities of Upsal and Lund, are celebrated ; primary schools are common, and the mass of the people are well informed.

Q. What are their principal exports ?

A. The productions of their mines and fisheries.

Q. What are the commercial advantages of Sweden ?

A. Sweden possesses more than 2000 miles of sea-coast ; her numerous rivers and lakes give her many advantages of inland navigation ; and a canal is projected from Stockholm, to Gottenburg. She also owns the island of St. Bartholomews, in the West-Indies ; together with several small islands in the Baltic.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Stockholm is the capital of Sweden ; it is built upon seven rocky islands, like Venice, and connected by bridges ; it contains a population of 80,000. Gottenburg has 13,000. Carlscrona has 14,000. Upsal, noted for its university, has 4000.



Q. What are the government and religion ?

A. The government of Sweden is absolute ; but mildly administered. The Lutheran religion generally prevails.

Q. What are the land and naval force ?

A. The land force of Sweden, in time of peace, is about 100,000. The naval force consists of galleys, principally : they have but few ships of war.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Sweden ?

A. Sweden was known to the ancients by the name of Scandinavia, and her numerous independent hordes joined in the destruction of the western Roman empire, in the 5th century. In the year 481, it was united as a kingdom, under one chief. In 829, Sweden became Roman Catholic. In the year 1394, it was added to Denmark, by the conquest of Margaret, the Danish Queen. In the year 1500, Margaret introduced an order of nobility into the government of Sweden. In 1510, they were all massacred by the Swedes.

In the year 1525, Gustavus Vasa delivered his country from the Danish yoke, abolished popery, and introduced the Lutheran religion. In the year 1544, he rendered the crown hereditary. In 1633, queen Christiana began to reign : she turned Catholic, and resigned her crown to Charles Gustavus X. in 1654 ; repaired to Rome, and died, 1689. Charles XII. ascended the throne 1700 : he conquered Poland in 1705 ; invaded Russia 1708 ; lost the battle of Pultowa 1710 : and fled to the Turks, where he was protected three years, and then returned home in 1713. Invaded Norway, and was killed before Frederickshall 1718 ; and his sister, Ulrica, succeeded to the throne.

Counts Brahe, and Horn, were executed for conspiracy, in the year 1756. The government became absolute in the year 1772. Gustavus III. was murdered by count Ankerstrom, 1792. Gustavus IV. was deposed 1809. General Bernadotte, a French general, under the emperor Napoleon, was elected Crown Prince in 1810, and now fills the throne.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is the early history of Sweden down to the year 1510 ?

What is their history from thence down to 1689 ?

What from thence down to 1718 ?

What from thence down to 1810 ?

What from thence down to the present time ?

Q. What is the national character of Sweden ?

A. The Swedes were a brave, hardy, frugal and industrious people ; and until the death of Charles XII. the most warlike nation of the north ; but his rash and distant enterprises exhausted the resources of his country, and exalted his rival, Peter, of Russia, at the expence of Sweden. Since the death of Charles, Russia has continued to rise, and Sweden to decline.

## LAPLAND.

Q. What are the situation and divisions of Lapland ?

A. Lapland lies upon the northern extremity of Europe. It is divided between Norway, Sweden, and Russia. (See the atlas.) Population estimated at 60,000.

Q. What are the climate, face of the country, and productions ?

A. In Lapland, the winters are long, and the climate severely cold ; but the perpetual day of summer, renders the climate intensely warm. The face of the country is level, where it is not intersected by the eastern chain of the Dofrafield mountains ; but it abounds with lakes ; & forests of pine and fir. The productions are very few. The inhabitants depend upon the rein-deer, for food and clothing, as well as means of transportation ; they are accustomed to the harness, and travel in their sledges with great speed and safety.

Q. What are the minerals ?

A. The same as those of Sweden, and Norway.

Q. What is the general character of the Laplanders ?

A. They are a dwarfish, sluggish people, generally ignorant of letters, and the arts ; were never independent as a kingdom ; but retain the idolatry, & manners and customs of their ancestors, with some knowledge of christianity. They dwell in wigwams ; and the parents contract marriages for their children. They possess nothing of that rude taste for music, which was common to the ancient Irish and Scots.

## RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the empire of Russia ?

A. Russia is situated upon the north of Europe and Asia. It is bounded N. by the Frozen ocean ; E. by the sea of Kamischaika ; S. by Chinese Tartary, Independent Tartary.

Persia, Turkey, and the Black sea ; and W. by European Turkey, Austria, Poland, Prussia, the Baltic, and Sweden. It is about 5570 miles long and 1500 broad.

European Russia is the most important ; but Asiatic Russia is the most extensive.

	<i>Sqr. miles.</i>
European Russia contains	1,493,000.
Asiatic Russia	5,736,000.
	<hr/> 7,229,000.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population ?

A. Russia is divided into 52 governments. Population, 41,692,000. Hassel, Malte Brun, and others, differ from this statement of the population of Russia, and estimate it from 41 up to 56,000,000. The latter is now considered as the most correct.

Q. What is the government ?

A. The government of Russia is absolute, yet mild ; with no capital punishments, except for high treason. The punishment of the knout is now abolished. The emperor has of late given a written constitution to Russia.

Q. What is the state of the finances ?

A. The revenue is estimated at about £15,000,000 sterling. The national debt is about £35,000.

Q. What are the land and naval forces ?

A. The land force in 1819, amounted to 600,000. The navy, to 30 ships of the line, 20 frigates, 15 sloops, and 200 galleys.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. See Russia in Europe, and Russia in Asia

### RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Russia in Europe ?

A. Russia is bounded on the N. by the Frozen ocean ; E. by Asia ; W. by Sweden, the Baltic sea, Prussia, Poland, Austria, Turkey ; and S. by Turkey and Austria. It is 1600 miles long and 1000 broad.

Q. What are its divisions and population ?

A. It is divided into 46 governments. Population is estimated at about 38,995,000.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The Ononets mountains, a branch of the Norwegian chain, wind down through Lapland, and extend nearly to Petersburg. South of this are the Vudai Hills, that extend down into Poland ; the latter are of very considerable height.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. In the interior and south, it is generally level ; but on

the north it abounds with extensive forests, bogs, and marshes ; intersected with bleak and dreary mountains.

Q. What are the soil and climate ?

A. Russia embraces all the variety, from the soil and climate of Turkey, to the soil and climate of Lapland, and Spitzbergen.

Q. What are the productions ?

A. All the various kinds of grain common to Europe, abound in Russia, particularly in the interior and south. The north abounds with furs of all kinds.

Q. What are the minerals of Russia ?

A. Gold, silver, copper, lead, iron, quick-silver, sulphur, jasper, marble, granite, and salt.

Q. Which are the islands of Russia in Europe ?

A. Spitzbergen and Novazembla.

Q. Which are the principal lakes ?

A. Lake Onega, 150 miles long, and 30 wide ; Ladoga, 70 miles long, and 30 broad. Lake Peypus is the source of the Neva. White Lake, and lake Seliger, &c. are the sources of the Wolga.

Q. Which are the principal seas ?

A. The White sea, Black sea, sea of Azof, and Baltic sea.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Wolga, which rises in Europe, and after a course of 2000 miles, falls into the Caspian sea, at Astracan. The Don, which runs 1000 miles, and falls into the sea of Azof. The Dneiper, which runs 1200 miles, and falls into the Black sea. The Niester and Bog, also fall into the Black sea.

Q. What rivers fall into the White sea, and Arctic ocean ?

A. The Petchora, Mezen, and Dwina.

Q. What rivers fall into the Baltic ?

A. The western Dwina, Neva, &c.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Petersburg is the capital of European Russia. This city was founded by Peter I. styled the great, with incredible labor and expense, in the years 1703—4 ; like Amsterdam and Venice, some parts of it are built upon spiles, in the marshes of the gulf of Finland. In the year 1705, Petersburg could boast of a population exceeding 200,000, and a port full of foreign ships ; at the very time when Charles XII. was changing the dynasty of Poland

Q. What is the present state of Petersburg ?

A. Petersburg is one of the most beautiful and flourishing commercial cities in Europe ; built in the highest modern style, and inclosed with a wall 14 miles in circumference. Cronstadt, upon the Baltic, is its great naval port.

Q. Which was the ancient capital of Russia ?

A. Moscow ; it stands upon the river Moskwa, one of the sources of the Wolga ; it is in the heart of Russia in Europe, and the great inland mart of the empire.

Q. What is the size of Moscow ?

A. Moscow is 26 miles in circumference : contains about 13,000 houses, 1800 churches, and about 300,000 inhabitants. Nearly all the city was burnt by the Russians, to defeat the views of the emperor Napoleon, in the autumn of 1812, who then held possession of Moscow. The French were literally burnt out.

Q. What distinguished Moscow ?

A. The citadel of Moscow, styled *Kremlin*, the cradle of all the Czars of Russia, was nearly destroyed by the emperor Napoleon, when he abandoned the city. Moscow was also famous for its great bell, that weighed 216 tons.

Q. Which are the other cities of importance in European Russia ?

A. Archangel, on the northern Dwina, near the White sea, Riga, on the southern Dwina, near the Baltic ; Nicholaef, upon the Bog, near the Black sea, are all rich commercial cities. Novogorod is one of the ancient capitals, and a city of some respectability. Tula is noted for its iron works, and for its manufacture of fire-arms, &c. ; it is the Birmingham of Russia : the imperial fabric, in 1500, employed 6,000 workmen. Kiev is famous for its extensive catacombs. Abo, the capital of Finland, and noted for its university. Odessa upon the Black sea, is a new and flourishing city, famous for the wheat trade.

Q. What is the state of manufactures ?

A. These are almost wholly domestic ; there are very few manufacturing establishments.

Q. What is the commerce of Russia ?

A. The commerce of Russia is very extensive. Such is the internal navigation of Russia, that Petersburg not only communicates with the Baltic, but with the Black sea, Caspian sea, White sea, and with China, by her numerous canals, and navigable rivers.

Q. Which are the principal exports ?

A. Iron, duck, hemp, flax, tallow, grain, furs, peltry, leather, &c.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. The agriculture of Russia is very low, particularly in the northern parts. The Russians, like their progenitors, the Tartars, are devoted to pasturage and cattle.

Q. What is the language of Russia?

A. A mixture of the Polish, Sclavonic, and the modern Greek.

Q. What is the state of literature?

A. Peter I. reared the temple of science in the midst of barbarism, and taught it how to flourish, and it still continues to flourish. Russia has three universities; and the imperial academy of sciences, at Petersburg, ranks among the first in Europe. Still there is no part of Europe where learning is so low among the common people as in Russia, not excepting Poland and Ireland. The emperor Alexander attempted many improvements; but a great length of time must, and will elapse, before much can be effected.

Q. What is the state of roads in Russia?

A. The roads between the large cities in Russia are tolerably good; but in general, they are in a rough state.

Q. What is the national character of Russia?

A. The national character of Russia is the most diversified of any in Europe; it is a compound of numerous nations and languages, who are mostly in a state of ignorance and slavery. A few of the large cities are in a high state of refinement; but the mass of the population is in a state of barbarism.

Q. What is the female character?

A. Such as is always to be found among a rude, half-civilized, and barbarous people; in a state of degradation and slavery.

Q. What is the religion of Russia?

A. The Greek church is the prevailing religion, with a free toleration.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Russia?

A. It was blended with the history of Great Tartary, until the reign of Ruric, grand duke of Novogorod, who attempted to take Constantinople, in the year 846. Wolidimer, one of his successors, embraced christianity in the year 981. Andrew I. laid the foundation of Moscow, in the year 1158. About the middle of the 16th century, the Muscovites discovered and conquered Siberia. At the same time, the commerce of England began to extend into Muscovy. In the year 1559, John Bazilowitz I. asserted the independence of Muscovy, and threw off the Tartar yoke. The Tartars, to revenge this, burnt Moscow, and massacred 30,000 of its citizens, in the year 1571. In the year 1700, Peter I. began to compute time, with the other kingdoms of Europe, and commence the year on the first of January.

In the year 1700, Charles XII, king of Sweden invaded Russia, and fought the famous battle of Narva. Such was the state of military skill and discipline at that time, in Russia, that Charles, with only 8,000 Swedes, routed and destroyed an army of 80,000 Russians, strongly intrenched, and supplied with cannon. In the years 1708 and 9, Charles, after having conquered Poland, and given the Poles a new king, attempted to penetrate to Moscow, and give a new Czar to Russia; but such had been the indefatigable efforts of Peter, that he was then able to meet Charles with nearly equal numbers, and defeat and destroy his army, in the battle of Pultowa, 1710. Charles fled to the Turks, and Peter fixed the permanency of the imperial throne.

In the year 1721, Peter, then styled the Great, took the title of emperor of all the Russias.

In the year 1697, Peter travelled into the south of Europe, for the purpose of obtaining such knowledge of men and things, as he might find requisite to enable him to fill the high station he then held, and bring forward into a state of civilization, the numerous hordes of savages and barbarians, he was destined to govern. He visited France, Holland and England: served in the ship-yards of the latter, as a common laborer, to acquire the art of ship-building: returned into Russia in the year 1700, and commenced with his own hands, the first ship built in Russia. Peter assisted in building a fleet, entered on board as an under officer, and signalized himself in naval combats with the Swedes, until by his merits he rose to the first command. The fleets of Russia soon commanded the Baltic, 1714.

In the year 1703, Peter laid the foundation of Petersburg: in 1714, it had become a flourishing city, and its port was crowded with foreign ships.

In the year 1800, Alexander ascended the throne. He entered the lists with the emperor Napoleon, in the French revolution, and was severely beaten in the famous battles of Austerlitz and Friedland, in the years 1805 and 1807.

In the year 1812, the emperor Napoleon invaded Russia,

QUESTIONS.—What is the early history of Russia, down to the middle of the 16th century?

What from thence to the commencement of the 18th century?

What from thence to the year 1721?

When did Peter I. travel into the south of Europe? what was his object, and what were the consequences down to 1714?

When did Alexander ascend the throne? where did he fight the emperor of France, and what was the result?

and took Moscow, but the Russians burnt him out, and destroyed his army, on their attempting to return into Poland. The emperor Alexander followed up the blow, and pursued into Germany. The next year he co-operated with the allies in the defeat of the emperor Napoleon at Leipsic, pursued him into France, took him in his capital, and banished him to the island of Elba, 1814.

On the 1st of March, 1815, the emperor re-landed in France, at the head of his body guard, marched to Paris, without resistance, and resumed the government.

On the 18th of June, 1815, the emperor Alexander, in connection with the allies, defeated the emperor Napoleon, at the memorable battle of Waterloo, which closed the war of the French revolution. Since that time, Russia has been tranquil.

When did the emperor Napoleon invade Russia, and what was the result?

What were the operations of 1815, and what is the present state of Russia?

## POLAND.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Poland?

A. Poland was formerly bounded N. and E. by the Baltic and Russia; S. by Turkey and Hungary; and W. by Germany and the Baltic. It comprised Great and Little Poland, Lithuania, Masovia, Podlachia, Little Russia, or Red Russia, Volhynia, Podolia, and the Ukraine; and was sub-divided into 34 palatinates. Square miles 284,000. Pop. 15,000,000.

Q. How has this kingdom been divided?

A. In 1772, 1793, and 1795, the powers of Russia, Austria, and Prussia, made three several divisions of the kingdom of Poland; all which had the following result, in 1795, viz:

	<i>Sq. miles.</i>	<i>Population.</i>
To Russia,	168,000	6,700,000
To Austria,	64,000	4,800,000
To Prussia,	52,000	3,700,000
Total,	284,000	15,000,000

In 1815, the congress of Vienna made the following changes, viz.

	<i>Sq. miles.</i>	<i>Population.</i>
To Russia,	170,000	6,900,000
To Austria,	30,000	3,500,000
To Prussia,	29,000	1,800,000
Kingdom of Poland,	47,000	2,800,000
Total,	284,000	15,000,000



Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Warsaw, the capital ; Dantzic, Lemberg, Cracow, Wilna, Brody, Kiev, Posen, Charkov, Mohilev, and Witepsk.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Vistula, Bog, Niemen, Pregel, Dwina, Dnieper, and Dniester.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, productions, &c. ?

A. See the present kingdom of Poland.

### KINGDOM OF POLAND.

Q. What are the situation and character of the present kingdom of Poland ?

A. It comprises what was formerly the Dutchy of Warsaw. It is about 200 miles long, and the same broad ; and contains about 70,000 square miles.

Q. How is it divided ?

A. It is divided into the palatinates of Cracow, Sendomer, Kalich, Lublin, Plock, Masovia, Podlachia, and Augustow. Warsaw is the capital ; the other towns, except Lublin, are small.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, productions, &c. ?

A. The face of the country is generally level ; the soil fertile ; and the productions such as are common to the north of Germany. Agriculture, commerce, manufactures, and literature, are low : the religion is generally Catholic, with a free toleration.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. Vistula, Bog, &c.

Q. What are the government, revenue, &c. ?

A. It is a constitutional monarchy, subject to the emperor of Russia, who governs by a viceroy, and a senate of thirty, ten of whom are bishops, and a diet of 77 deputies. Revenue about £900,000 sterling.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Poland ?

A. Poland was anciently the country from whence the Vandals emigrated, who formed a part of the northern barbarians, that overthrew the western Roman empire, in the 5th century. It was formed into a Dutchy, 694. Otho III. emperor of Germany, erected Poland into a kingdom, and placed Boleslaus upon the throne, 999. The Poles embraced christianity about the same time. Red Russia was added to Poland, 1059. Pomerania, that had been separated 180 years, was again united in 1465. The order of the white eagle was

instituted in 1705. At the same time, Charles XII. king of Sweden, carried on a successful war against Poland, and in 1707, he deposed Augustus, then elector of Saxony, and king of Poland, and placed Stanislaus Leckzinski upon the throne.

In 1717, by a pacification treaty, Stanislaus was deposed, and Augustus restored. A general revolution was effected by the emperors of Austria, Russia, and the king of Prussia; and Poland was divided between those powers, 1772. A counter-revolution restored the throne to the Saxon line, in 1791. A second partition, between the emperors of Austria, Russia, and king of Prussia, removed the Saxon family, 1793. A third partition in 1795, fixed the destinies of Poland, and the king retired upon a pension of 200,000 ducats.

The emperor Napoleon invaded Poland, in 1807; and again in 1812, and attempted to restore the ancient sovereignty; but the failure of his Russian expedition defeated his plans.

The congress of Vienna confirmed the division of Poland, of 1795, with some slight alterations, reserving a nominal kingdom, subject to the emperor of Russia.

So late as the 13th century, the Poles were in the habit of killing all such old people as were unable to procure a support for themselves, and all deformed children.

---

QUESTIONS.—What is the early history of Poland down to the year 1705?

When did Charles XII. invade Poland, and what was the result?

What is the subsequent history of Poland to the year 1795?

What is the subsequent history of Poland down to this time?

What custom was general in Poland, from the early ages down to the 13th century?

## TURKEY IN EUROPE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Turkey in Europe?

A. Turkey in Europe is bounded N. by Hungary, Transylvania, and Russia; E. by the Black sea, the Bosphorus, sea of Marmora, Dardanelles, and Archipelago; W. by the Adriatic, Austrian Dalmatia, and Croatia. It is about 870 miles from the northern extremity of Moldavia, to the southern extremity of the Morea. Square miles, according to Hassel, 184,000; Malte-Brun, 192,000; Cannabich, 197,000; Edinburgh Gazetteer, 200,000. Pop. according to Malte-Brun, 9,500,000.

A statement from the *Novelles Annales des Voyages* by a modern Greek, viz :

Greeks, or people speaking Modern Greek,	4,000,000
People of Slavonian origin,	3,000,000
Turks,	2,000,000
Albanians,	1,200,000
Wallachians, Moldavians, &c.	1,200,000
	<hr/>
Total,	11,400,000

About one third of this population are Mahometans, and the remainder are mostly of the Greek church.

Q. Which are the divisions?

A. Turkey in Europe comprises the ancient countries of Greece, with its islands, in the south; Macedonia, Epirus, and Thrace, in the centre; Mæsia, part of Dacia, Pannonia and Illyria, in the north.

Q. What other division is common to Turkey?

A. A recent division, and such as is common to maps, books of travels, geographies, &c. is into Morea, Livadia, Thessaly, Macedonia, Albania, Romania, Bulgaria, Wallachia, Moldavia, Servia, and Bosnia.

Q. What are more particularly Turkish divisions?

A. The Turkish civil divisions are into two Beglerbegships, viz. Romania, or Rum Ili, and Bosnia, which are subdivided into 34 sangiacats. Constantinople and Adrianople, with their territories, are not included in this last division.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. Hœmus, Rhodope, Athos, Olympus, Pindus, Parnassus, Pelion, and Ossa.

Q. What is peculiar to mount Athos?

A. Athos is a celebrated promontory, and inhabited by thousands of Monks, who possess a great number of churches and monasteries; and practice the severest austerities.

Q. What is peculiar to the other mountains?

A. They are all celebrated in Grecian history, and by their poets.

Q. What are the face of the country and climate?

A. The face of the country is beautifully variegated with mountains and vallies: and the climate is the most delightful in Europe.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. Turkey is remarkably fertile: the productions are wheat, rice, tobacco, cotton, oranges, figs, and various drugs: and all the variety of grain common to Europe, in the highest perfection. The vine flourishes well, and they make excellent wine.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. All the precious metals, and marble, are found in Turkey.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. The Turks are too indolent for agriculture ; it is in a low state.

Q. Which are the principal seas and gulfs ?

A. In Turkey, are the Black sea, sea of Marmora, Archipelago and Mediterranean ; the gulfs of Venice, Salonica, Eugia, and Lepanto ; the two last form the isthmus of Corinth, famous for the ancient *Isthmian Games*.

Q. Which are the principal straits ?

A. The straits of the Dardanelles, or Hellespont, and the straits of Constantinople, or Thracian Bosphorus.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The Danube, Pruth, and Vardar, are the only rivers of importance.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Constantinople is the capital ; it rises from the strait in the form of an amphitheatre, upon an elevation of seven hills, and exhibits the most beautiful view of any city in Europe. It is surrounded with a wall twelve miles in circumference ; and contains a population of 400,000. Adrianople is next in importance to Constantinople. Sophia, Bucharest, and Belgrade, are respectable cities ; the latter is strongly fortified as a frontier post. Jassy and Salonica, are handsome cities ; the latter possesses high commercial advantages.

Q. What is the commerce of Turkey ?

A. The commerce of Turkey is low, compared with their advantages ; and what they have, is principally confined to the Greeks.

Q. What are their manufactures ?

A. The Turks manufacture carpets, silks, and cottons ; but their manufactures, like their agriculture, are low.

Q. What is the character of Turkey ?

A. The Turks possess one of the finest climates, and richest soils in Europe ; but they are too haughty and indolent to improve it : they are sunk in ignorance, luxury, and effeminacy. One third of the population are Greeks, who descended from the ancient owners of the country, and who have been under the most humiliating oppression almost 400 years ; but they have now risen in defence of their rights.

Q. What is the amount of the revenue, army and navy ?

A. The revenue does not exceed 80,000,000 francs, though the Pachas oppress the people with five times that amount. The army is stated at 400,000 ; of which 30 or 40,000 were Janizaries. The navy consists of 15 or 20 ships of the line, 15 frigates, and 60 galleys.

Q. What is their religion ?

A. The Turks are all Mahometans ; but the Greeks enjoy the religion of the ancient Greek church.

Q. What are the antiquities and curiosities ?

A. These are numerous, and consist of the remains of ancient Grecian temples, theatres, palaces, aqueducts, &c. the ruins of ancient greatness.

### TURKISH, OR GRECIAN ISLES.

Q. Which are the Turkish or Grecian Isles ?

A. The Turkish islands are Candia or Crete, once famous for its excellent wheat and wines, mount Ida, the river Lethe, its wonderful labyrinth, and the government of Minos.

Rhodes, once celebrated, as a haven of commerce ; for its colossal statue,† under which ships sailed when they entered the port ; and as the residence of the knights of St. John of Jerusalem, when they were expelled from Jerusalem by the Saracens, in the 13th century.

Negropont and Scios ; the latter is famous for its university, and the late exterminating massacre by the Turks.

The five Cyclades, Andros, Naxos, Paros, Antiparos, and Santorini : all famous in ancient history.

Patmos, Mytilene, Ipsara, and Samos ; the latter is celebrated for its antiquities ; and Patmos for the residence of St. John, in his banishment, at the time he wrote the Revelations. Ipsara has suffered severely in the present Grecian revolution.

Lesbos and Tenedos ; the latter is famous as the place of rendezvous for the Greeks, in the siege of Troy ; also as a land-mark to shew where Troy once stood ; "*opposite the island of Tenedos.*"

Cyprus was formerly a rich and fertile island, and might become so again ; but it is now in ruins. It was famous for the celebrated temple of Venus, at Paphos.

### REPUBLIC OF THE SEVEN ISLES.

Q. What is the situation of these isles ?

A. They extend along the south-western shore of Greece, and were formerly classed among the Grecian isles ; but in 1815, they were placed under the protection of Great Britain, by the congress of Vienna.

† The statue of Apollo was dedicated to the sun. It was 105 feet high ; and was thrown down by an earthquake, 224 years, [B. C.] and weighed 720,000 lbs.

Q. What are the names and character of the Seven Isles.

A. Corfu, Cephalonia, Zante, Santa Maura, Cerigo, Ithica, and Paxo. They are generally rocky and barren, except the plains that are interspersed among the rocks and mountains. The climate is mild; and the productions are corn, vines, olives, currants, cotton, honey, wax, &c. The inhabitants are generally Greeks.

Ithica was the residence of Ulysses, who was famous at the time of the Trojan war.

Q. What is the population of this republic?

A. It is estimated at about 206,000.

Q. What is the government?

A. The government is vested in a senate of 29, chosen from all the islands, but subject to the crown of Great Britain.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Turkey in Europe?

A. Turkey in Europe was first settled by the family of Ion or Javan, a descendant of Japhet, the son of Noah, with several other barbarous clans from Asia, about 2000 years before Christ.

These people were in ancient times called Ionians, Hellenes, or Greeks; the gulf of Venice is still called the Ionian sea.

Greece was also settled about 1200 years before Christ, by several Egyptian and Phœnitian colonies, from whom the Greeks learned the use of letters; and such were their improvements, that Greece became the most splendid theatre of learning, arts, and arms, that had appeared at any former age of the world.

Greece withstood the whole force, and strength of the kings of Persia, and destroyed the armies of Darius and Xerxes, when they invaded her with several millions of men, 4th century before Christ.

Alexander, king of Macedon, styled the Great, revenged upon Persia, her invasions of Greece, by conquering the whole Persian empire, then termed the world; and took the name of conqueror, 329, [B. C.]

---

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Turkey in Europe first settled, and what were they called?

What other colonies came into the country, and when?

What became the character of Greece in arts and arms?

When and by whom was Greece invaded, and what was the result?

What hero rose up in Greece, and became the conqueror of the world?

Greece was conquered by the Romans, about 150 years before Christ, and continued an integral part of the Roman empire, until the year 1453, when Greece, the last vestige of the Roman State, was conquered by the Turks. (See Turkey in Asia.) They erected a despotism upon the ruins of Greece, and the eastern Roman empire, which continued down to the year 1821; then the descendants of the ancient heroes of Greece rose in arms; asserted their liberty and independence, and have maintained them, through a desperate and bloody contest, to this time, against the whole power of Turkey.

---

When and by whom was Greece conquered, in succession, and what were the consequences?

When did Greece assert her independence?

### Grecian Revolution.

Q. What is the history of the Grecian revolution?

A. The Grecian revolution, like that of France, took its rise from an association of respectable literary gentlemen who commenced their sessions at Vienna, in the year 1814. Whatever might have been their motives at the commencement of their sessions, their literary pursuits soon became involved in politics, and the liberties of Greece became a subject of consideration.

In the year 1820, Ali, Pacha of Janina, in Epirus, commenced an insurrection in Greece; but it was a Turkish insurrection, in which the Greeks took no part. At the close of the year, the Sublime Porte had suppressed the insurrection so far, that Ali's army was dispersed, and he driven into his strong hold, where he was closely besieged by Churshid, Pacha of the Morea.

In this state of things, an insurrection commenced in Wallachia, under the direction of Theodore, a native of the province, who put himself at the head of 60 or 70 adventurers, and proclaimed liberty to Wallachia. The flame caught so rapidly, that in a short time, Theodore found himself at the head of about 15,000 men. The spirit spread into the adjoining provinces, and in the month of March, the gallant Greek Ypsilanti, who sprang from an illustrious line of Grecian ancestors, proclaimed liberty to Moldavia. The people rose in arms, flocked in crowds to his standard, and marched towards Wallachia, to support their brethren. At the same

time, another insurrection commenced in Moldavia, at Galatz, on the Danube, and the patriots marched to support Ypsilanti.

The Sublime Porte took the alarm, and threatened a general massacre of the Greeks, at Constantinople, in order to overawe the insurrection.

Such was the spirit of the Greeks, that before the month of March, 1821, had terminated, an insurrection commenced in the Morea; and Germanus, Arch-bishop of Patras, put himself at the head of about 3000 patriots, who drove the Turks into the citadel of Patras.

The senate of Calamata assembled at the same time, and issued their proclamations to their countrymen, calling upon them to rise in the majesty of themselves, and protect the cause; also upon the Turks, promising them peace and safety, provided they would remain tranquil. They also addressed foreign nations in justification of their views and measures, and called upon them to lend their aid in support of suffering humanity, struggling in defence of her dearest rights.

At this eventful moment, Jussuf Selim, lieutenant of Churshid, Pacha of the Morea, commenced an attack upon Patras, carried it by an assault, and put to the sword about 800 Greeks, of all ages, and both sexes. This roused the Greeks to the contest, and Gregory, a monk, like Peter, the hermit of old, erected the standard of the cross, and rallied his countrymen to the contest. In a few days he assembled at Corinth several thousand men.

The principal islands of Greece caught the flame, and roused to the contest, with their fleets and privateers; and even Vovlina, a heroine, to revenge the death of her husband, who had been murdered by the Turks, fitted out three vessels, at her own expense, and took the command in person. This zeal upon the water, gave a general support to the patriot cause,

Pending these movements in Greece, the emperor of Russia, by his influence, effected a counter revolution in Wallachia and Moldavia; and the insurrection was crushed in those provinces.

About the 1st of April, the Turks, at Constantinople, clamoured against the government, and caused the Grand Vizier to be displaced; and the mob put to death Gregory, the patriarch of the Greek church, because he had not suppressed the insurrection in the Morea; and his body was thrown into the Bosphorus: on the same day the bishop of Ephesus, and other prelates were put to death. Such was the rage of the pop-



place, and the alarm of the Porte, that ten days had not elapsed, before the new Grand Vizier was deposed, and executed; the Sultan called upon the whole empire to rally to the contest, and suppress the insurrection. Large bodies of troops were marched towards the provinces of Wallachia and Moldavia, which so alarmed the Russian minister at the Porte, that he remonstrated, and a long negociation ensued. Russia assembled a strong force in Bessarabia, to watch the motions of the Turks, and continued the negociations; the dispersed insurgents of Wallachia and Moldavia kept up a predatory war; but Ypsilanti himself was seized and imprisoned in Austria, where he suffered a long imprisonment.

The Greeks assembled their forces in the Morea, and strengthened their fleet; and the war raged upon the land, as well as upon the water, through the summer, with great severity, and even cruelty; but the Greeks were generally successful.

In the month of November, the Greeks called a convention, to frame a constitution, which was completed and published on the 1st of January, 1822; and Prince Alexander Mavrocordato, was chosen President of the Executive Council of Five. The Greeks next established printing presses, commenced the circulation of newspapers, and began to coin money, levy taxes, &c. All Greece had now rallied to the contest.

The Sublime Porte assembled a powerful army, under the command of the Pacha Churshid, in Albania, with orders to penetrate into the Morea, by the Isthmus of Corinth, where he was to be supported by the Turkish fleet, by the way of the gulf of Lepanto.

The Greeks anticipated these movements, and defeated the whole plan, by cutting to pieces the several divisions, before they could form the proposed junction, at the isthmus of Corinth.

The Turks, enraged at the success of the Greeks, seized on the island of Scio, or Scios, which contained a population of about 150,000 Greeks, with a college, in a most flourishing situation, and enjoyed an extensive trade. They razed the city, and murdered, or carried away captive, the whole Greek population, under the most distressing displays of cruelty, and barbarity. To revenge this wanton, savage act, the Greeks entered the harbour of Scios, with two fire ships, and destroyed the Turkish Admiral's ship, with the Admiral

himself, and one other ship of the largest class, with her whole crew, consisting of more than one thousand men.

The news of this event threw Constantinople into high commotion; the divan was torn with feuds; the people were in confusion, and the Janizaries rose in rebellion. The Sultan ordered a large body of troops, stationed without the city, to march in, and quell the insurrection; a bloody contest ensued; but the Janizaries were overpowered, and subdued; and the survivors were led to immediate execution.

In the month of July, the Turks concentrated their forces, and commenced an attack upon the Morea, by sea and land. They entered the isthmus, took the city of Corinth, about the 1st of August, and penetrated to Argos, where they were met by the Greeks; an action commenced; the Turks were routed, and their Lieutenant General was slain. Churshid, their general, made a hasty retreat out of the Morea; his soldiers deserted his standard in such numbers, that it was with the greatest difficulty he could recover his former position in Thessaly; which closed the operations of his army for this year.

The Turks, upon the island of Cyprus, rose upon the Christians or Greeks, and put to death more than 40,000; razed their churches, and laid waste their country, for the space of more than 40 square leagues. They attempted the same in Candia, or Crete; but the Greeks opposed them successfully, and kept their ground.

Pending these movements, the Turkish Admiral attempted to return with his fleet, within the Dardanelles; but the Greeks pursued, and overtook them off Tenados; commenced another attack with fire-ships, and set fire to the Admiral's ship, which blew up, with the destruction of the Admiral and crew, without the loss of one Greek.

This event gave a new shock to the capital, and in connection with the unpopular measures of the Porte, caused a general insurrection, and the city was repeatedly on fire. The Vizier was deposed, and his head taken off; and Churshid passed through the ceremony of the bow-string. The Greeks, at the same time, seized on Athens, and Napoli de Romani, the strong hold of the Turks in Greece. Thus closed the year 1822.

At the commencement of the year 1823, the Turks held no fortresses of any importance, in the Morea, except Patras; and the castle of Corinth.

The plan of this campaign was the same as that of the preceding year. The first movement of the land army, was an attack upon Missolonghi, in Livadia, near the entrance of the gulf of Lepanto. The Turks commenced an attack on the 6th of January ; but were defeated with great loss. They attempted to move eastward, towards the isthmus of Corinth, but were opposed by the Greeks, at the river Aspropotamo, with so much success, that the whole of the Albanians withdrew from the army, and the Seraskier, or General, was unable to make any important movements.

At this time, the new elections of Greece commenced ; and the elective body met at Astros, in the month of April. Mavrocordato declined a second election, and Mavromichalis was chosen President, and John Orlando was chosen President of the Senate.

At this time, an insurrection of the Greeks commenced at Mount Pelion, and upon the eastern shore of the gulf of Volos ; the Seraskier put his army in motion to suppress it ; but the Greeks made a manful resistance, and maintained their ground.

At the same time, the Capudan Pacha, or Admiral of the Turkish fleet, sailed from Constantinople with seventy ships of war, and thirty transports ; and about the first of June, he appeared off the island of Negropont, and landed a strong force ; drove the Greeks from the island, and penetrated into Attica, as far as Athens, but he was soon obliged to retire to Negropont, to defend his possessions there.

The Seraskier, Mehmet Ali, put his army in motion towards the Morea, and the Capudan Pacha moved with his fleet towards the gulf of Lepanto ; but the Greeks annoyed the Turks so successfully on their march, that the Seraskier halted at the convent of St. Luc, where the Greeks overtook him, routed, and dispersed his army, and rioted in the spoils of the Turkish camp. The Seraskier, with his fugitives, escaped to Carpenitza.

In the mean time, the Suliot chief, Marco Bozzaris fell upon an army of 5000 men, which the Turks had landed at Coudyla, to act in concert with the army of the Seraskier, and cut them to pieces, took them prisoners, or dispersed them as fugitives.

The Greeks now began to collect their troops in force, in order to attack the Turks at Carpenitza ; but finding the place too strong, they abandoned the plan, and listened to the following purpose of Bozzaris.

“ I have with me 340 brave Suliotes ; and I will, at their head, enter the Turkish camp, with no other arms than our sabres and pistols. Do you present yourselves in force, at different points, and commence your fire, when we are recognized, so as to distract the Turks ; and if you second me, we will seize the Pacha, alive, or dead.”

This measure was received with applause, and immediate preparations were made for its execution. At midnight Bozzaris took an additional force, of 100 chosen men, and forming the remainder of the troops into four divisions, he marched off his detachment for the conflict, with this address to the chiefs that remained : “ My friends ; if we scatter you will be sure to find me around the tent of the Pacha.” The adventure succeeded, the Turks were surprised and routed ; the Pacha was taken by Bozzaris himself ; but in the very act, the hero fell mortally wounded : he was borne off by his brave companions in arms ; and as he expired, thus addressed them : “ My friends, to die for liberty is a pleasure, and not a pain. Freedom is never acquired but by great sacrifices : I die content, because I have contributed to the independence of my country.” The Pacha was slain in the conflict.

The Capudan Pacha attempted to seize upon the island of Skiatho, near the entrance of the gulf of Volo, but failed ; which closed the operations of this campaign.

This year, large sums in money, and necessary materials for war, were raised, by way of contribution, in Great Britain, the United States of America, and other parts of Christendom, and forwarded to the Greeks, to aid their cause.

In the month of April, 1824, the friend and patron of Greece, Lord Byron, who left England and embarked in the Greek cause in 1822, fell sick, and died. His services in behalf of this unfortunate country cannot be fully appreciated.

For the campaign of 1824, the Turkish fleet was augmented, by a powerful fleet from Egypt, which threatened the entire destruction of the Greeks ;—but the valor of the Greeks was as fully displayed in this campaign as the last, and with similar success. The capture of the island of Ipsara, by the Turks, and its re-capture by the Greeks, will fully shew the spirit and success of the parties. The scenes of Scios were renewed at Ipsara ; the Turks became masters of the island on the 4th of July ; the Ipsariots killed more than twenty thousand of the enemy before they were overpowered and taken.

On the 23d of July, the Greeks re-inforced their fleet, made a descent upon Ipsara, and carried the island, with a terrible slaughter; the whole Turkish garrison fell in the field, or were put to the sword, to the amount of more than 2000 men. The Greeks at the same time, attacked the Turkish fleet, and took, or destroyed 55 gun boats, eight sloops, a corvette, and three frigates. Total loss of the Turks, in the capture and re-capture of Ipsara, is estimated at twenty three thousand men. The Greeks, were equally successful against the Egyptian fleet, and against the land army of the Turks, that was marching upon Athens.

The following extract of a letter will fully shew the spirit and success of the Greeks in this campaign:—

“Permit me to congratulate you upon the success of the Greeks. They have been victorious in every engagement, both by sea and by land. They now command the Dardanelles. By an account I have lately read, 550 Greeks fought 8000 Turks, at Thermopylæ, from 8 o'clock in the morning, till 6 at night; leaving more than 700 Turks dead upon the field of battle, besides the wounded, and lost but few themselves, not 20. It seems as if the Almighty favoured them.”

The Sublime Porte made early preparations to prosecute the war against the Greeks in 1825; and placed great expectations upon the co-operation of the Pacha of Egypt, who put in requisition all the resources of his dominions.

On the 8th of May, the Pacha appeared off Navarino, with a fleet of 100 vessels; 60 of which were ships of war, and 40 transports; he entered the harbor on the 12th, and landed a strong force; but the Greeks were prepared to receive him. During the night, the Greeks attacked, with fire ships, the fleet of the Pacha, and succeeded in capturing and destroying the whole.

On the same day, the Greeks attacked, with fire-ships, the Turkish fleet in the harbor of Modon, consisting of 40 ships of war and transports, and destroyed the whole. Such European vessels as were in the port of Modon, escaped to Zante, without their anchors, and otherwise much damaged by the conflagration.

The fortress of Navarino, after a long and obstinate resistance, was forced to capitulate to Ibrahim Pacha on the 23d of May, for want of provisions; the garrison, (12,000 men,) marched out with baggage, and every thing excepting their arms.

The naval operations during this campaign, were peculiar

ly glorious to the Greeks; and their naval heroes gained fresh laurels, by their many brilliant achievements.

The successes of the Greeks, by land and sea, had been almost uninterrupted, and had they possessed an undivided union, and a government of energy, and decision, they doubtless might have continued the defence of Navarino, and preserved the place; but failing in those two essential points, they were constrained to suffer Navarino to fall into the hands of the enemy. The capture of this strong hold was a triumph to the enemy, worth the labours of a whole campaign, because it covered his army through the winter, and gave him a commanding advantage, in receiving supplies, and reinforcements, to enable him to open, to the best possible advantage, the campaign of the next season.

The campaign of 1826 was opened with more formidable preparations on the part of the Turks, than either of the former. The Pacha of Egypt penetrated into the Morea with a strong force, and laid waste the country with fire and sword. On the 20th of March, after four successive assaults, he carried the strong fortress of Missolonghi, after a brave and desperate resistance. All the garrison, (1400,) were killed, and a great number of women and children drowned in the neighbouring lakes. Before the attack, the garrison were reduced to four ounces of bread a day. They took the sacrament, and recited the burial service, then repaired to their posts, determined to sell their lives as dear as they could. Before the last attack, they were reduced to 427 fighting men. The Turks were aided by French officers, or they could not have taken the place.

Ibrahim Pacha, it is stated, had given orders to kill all the prisoners, and even unarmed peasants, in order to complete the number of six thousand heads, and pairs of ears, that the Sultan had ordered him to send to Constantinople. It appears that he could not make up this number at Missolonghi.

Ibrahim continued his ravages in the Morea, and the strong fortresses of Napoli de Romani, and Tripolitza fell into his hands, and the same cruelties and horrid barbarities followed as at Missolonghi, and continued through the year 1826.

The siege of Athens commenced in form about mid-summer, and was conducted with vigour and cruelty, but the Greeks were firm and manful in their defence. In the month of Sept. the garrison commenced a successful sortie, drove the Turks from their entrenchments, with great slaughter, and plundered and destroyed their camp. The Turks re-

covered the shock, and renewed the siege, until late in Nov. or Dec. and then raised the siege and withdrew.

The year 1827, opened on the part of the Turks with more formidable preparations for the subjection of Greece, than any former year. Ibrahim drew into his service from Egypt greater forces by land and sea, than those of the last year, and the cause of Greece became so desperate, as to unite the three great Christian powers of Europe; Great Britain, France, and Russia, in a coalition treaty, for the support, and protection of Greece, signed at London, July 1. The result of this treaty has been an armed combined squadron, which entered the Archipelago in the month of Sept. and attempted to check, and suppress the ravages of Ibrahim, by an armistice, until a treaty could be amicably settled with the Sublime Porte; but when they found this to be impracticable, the allies entered the port of Navarino, on the 20th of Oct. and in one of the most memorable naval actions ever recorded, succeeded in destroying the whole Turkish fleet, consisting of more than 60 sail, of all classes.

“The affair at Navarino was known in the Seraglio on the 29th Oct. and so exasperated the Sultan, that nobody dared to go near him for twelve hours. The Reis Effendi, at length, on the 3d of November, sent for the Drogomans of the three powers, and appeared in a state of consternation which is not to be described. Without speaking to them of the consequences of the affair, he asked them the reason of such a breach of faith, and dismissed them, after giving an evasive answer, with forced composure, adding this remarkable declaration,—that the Porte deeply regretted having listened for a moment to the insinuations, and the promises of the three Ambassadors,—that their presence at Constantinople was indifferent to the Porte,—that no advice would be given them either to go or stay,—that they were at liberty to determine what they should do; lastly, that the Sultan had resolved to break off all intercourse with them.”

**ASIA.**

Q. What are the situation and extent of Asia ?

A. Asia is bounded N. by the Arctic ocean ; E. by the Pacific ocean ; S. by the Indian ocean ; and W. by Europe, the sea of Azof, Black sea, and Bosphorus, the sea of Marmora, Archipelago, Levant, the Isthmus of Suez, the Red sea, and straits of Babelmandel. It is 5250 miles from north to south, and 7580 from east to west ; and contains, according to Hassel, 16,728,000 square miles

Q. What are the statistical divisions, and population of Asia ?

A. Asia is divided into the following kingdoms, states, and empires, viz. Russia, including Siberian Tartary on the north ; the Chinese empire, and India beyond the Ganges, on the east ; Independent Tartary in the centre ; Turkey and Arabia, on the west ; Persia, Cabul, and Hindoostan, on the south. Population of Asia is estimated at about 480,000,000.

Q. What is the climate of Asia ?

A. Asia embraces the climate of all the zones.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The principal mountains, are the Uralian on the north-west ; the Altaian on the north ; the mounts of Caucasus, Ararat and Taurus, on the west ; the Belur Tag, in the centre ; the Himmaleh, including the Hindoo Koosh, on the south ; and the Gaults of Hindoostan. (See the atlas.)

Q. Which are the most elevated of these ranges ?

A. The Himmaleh mounts, which are about 27,000 feet above the level of the sea ; and the Yablony mounts, in the Altaian chain, which exceed 10,000 feet ; and Mount Ararat, of the same height.

Q. How are the Uralian mountains situated ?

A. The Uralian mountains divide Asia from Europe, on the north-west, and extend from the shores of the Arctic ocean, in a southerly direction, down to the 50th degree of north latitude, where they divide ; and the eastern branch is separated from the Altaian chain by the steppe of Issim. The Altaian chain extends across the continent, in a circuitous direction, and terminates at the north-eastern extremity, near Beering's straits ; this chain is called the Altaian chain on the western part ; the Yablony, near the centre ; and Stravony, or Mounts of Okotsk, on the eastern part.

Q. How are the mounts of Causacus, Taurus and Ararat situated ?

A. The mounts of Taurus rise near the Thracean Bospho-



rus, and extending along the southern borders of Asia Minor, meet the mounts of Caucasus, which come down from the northern shores of the Black sea, and form the mountains of Ararat, and extend to the southern shores of the Caspian sea. At the western extremity of this chain are Mount Ida, and Mount Olympus. A branch of this chain extends from the passes of Cilicia, down into Syria, and forms the mountains of Libanus, and Anti Libanus. Another branch extends down between the rivers Euphrates and Tigris, and divides the empire of the Turks, from Western Persia.

The Belur Tag is a branch of the Altaian chain, that extends down in a southern direction, through Cabul, to the shores of the Arabian sea; it crosses the Koosh mounts near the centre of Cabul.

The Koosh mounts commence in Persia, and extending through Cabul, become the Himmaylayan chain, upon the southern borders of Thibet, and terminate near the river Burrampooter.

The Karakoorum chain rises in Tartary, and crossing the Belur Tag, extends into Thibet, in a south-easterly direction, and terminates near the city Lessa: The Bogdo chain rises also in Independent Tartary, and crossing the Belur Tag, extends in a circular direction, until it joins the Altaian chain.

The Gauts mounts rise in the southern part of Hindoostan, and extending along the Malabar coast, up to the 20th degree of north latitude, they turn off east, and extend nearly across the peninsula of Hindoostan.

Q Which are the other mounts of Asia?

A. A chain, with several branches, extends along the southern and western coast of Arabia; another along the eastern coast of Tonkin and China; also a short chain lies between China and Thibet. (See the atlas.)

Q. What are the productions of Asia?

A. The productions of Asia are such as are found in all the climates in the world, from the tropical regions of India, to the frozen regions of Siberia.

Q. What are the Asiatic Isles?

A. The numerous isles of the Archipelago and Levant, the principal of which have been noticed under Turkey in Europe; Socotra, in the Arabian sea; the Maldives and Laccadives, in the Indian ocean; the Andaman and Nicobar isles, in the bay of Bengal; the Isle of Sunda; Philippine Isles; Isles of Japan; Australasia; and Polynesia.

Q. Which are the inland seas and lakes of Asia ?

A. The inland seas of Asia, are the Caspian, and Aral. The lakes are best described on the map.

Q. Which are the principal rivers of Asia ?

A. The northern declivity of the Altaian chain gives rise to the numerous rivers that flow through the extensive plains of Siberia, into the Arctic ocean ; but the southern declivity gives rise to the river Amur only ; and this falls into the sea of Okotsk.

The Karakoorum range gives rise to the river Indus, which passes through the Himmaleh mounts, and falls into the sea of Arabia. The same range gives rise to the river Burrampooter, which unites with the Ganges forty miles from its mouth.

The Himmaleh mounts give rise to the river Ganges, Burrampooter, and Indus.

The short chain of Eastern Thibet, in the same range, gives rise to the rivers of China, the Hoang Ho, and Kiang Ho, or Ku ; also, the river Cambodia of Tonkin, and the several rivers of the Burman empire.

The Gaults mountains give rise to the numerous rivers of Hindoostan.

The Caucasian chain, or Ararat, gives rise to the rivers Euphrates and Tigris, that fall into the Persian gulf.

The Ural mounts give rise to a branch of the Wolga, the Ural and Tobol.

The Belur Tag gives rise to the several rivers that fall into the sea of Aral.

[For a description of numerous other rivers, see the map.]

Q. Which are the principal cities of Asia ?

A. The cities of Asia are both ancient and numerous ; and are of the first respectability ; but many of the splendid cities of antiquity are now in ruins : especially those of Persia, Syria, and Asia Minor. The cities of China now claim the first rank in Asia.

Q. What is the state of arts and manufactures ?

A. The arts and manufactures, among some of the half civilized nations, stand high, especially in China, where they excel : they are also in a high state of improvement in India, Persia, Arabia, and Japan.

Q. What is the commerce of Asia ?

A. The commerce of Asia is rich and extensive ; but wholly conducted by foreigners : not one nation in Asia carries on a foreign commerce in its own ships.

The silk and cottons of India : the porcelain, tea, silks, cottons, &c. of China : the carpets, silks, &c. of Persia ; the

embroidery, brocade, tapestry, &c. of Turkey ; and the rich shawls of Independent Tartary, and Cashmere, are among the first articles of commerce in Asia.

Q. How is the internal commerce of Asia conducted ?

A. The internal commerce is very extensive. The empire of China is intersected by numerous rivers and canals, that are navigated by large square built vessels, called *junks*, which render the communication throughout, easy and cheap. From China, an inland navigation extends, by means of navigable rivers and canals, to Petersburg, in European Russia : and branches from this chain extend throughout the Russian empire ; but the commerce of interior, or middle Asia, south of the Altaian chain of mountains, is conducted by caravans. These assemble at particular seasons of the year, and move in large bodies of 10 or 1500 in a company ; which generally go guarded, as a security against robbers. Camels are the only animals used in this mode of commerce, because they alone can sustain the necessary privations of water. This was formerly the only channel of commerce in Asia, before the invention of the mariner's compass, and the discoveries in the Indian ocean, by the Europeans. in the 16th century ; since that time, the commerce of China, India, and southern and western Asia, is carried on in foreign ships, to all parts of the world.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. The state of agriculture, among the half-civilized nations, is various ; but it is not very highly improved in any, excepting China and Japan : there, as far as we have the means of knowledge, it is highly improved. The savage and barbarous hordes have very little knowledge of agriculture.

Q. What are the prevailing governments in Asia ?

A. The governments of Asia, throughout, are despotic ; there is not a limited monarchy, or a free government in Asia.

Q. What is the state of national power in Asia ?

A. The state of national power, except in China and Japan, is low. True national power has for its basis, a free religion. in connection with a free government ; a general diffusion of knowledge, among all classes of the people, founded upon a free, and cheap system of education ; a high state of agriculture, commerce, the arts, and of manufactures. Whatever nation combines all these advantages, with industry and the moral virtues, possesses true national power, whether her dominions be large or small. When all these are wanting, as is generally the case in Asia, national power must be low.

Wherever a free government, free religion, and free education are wanting, there national power will be proportionably weak ; for there the moral virtues will be weak.

Q. What are the religions of Asia ?

A. In Asia, the Pagan and Mahometan religions generally prevail. Christianity is partially known and enjoyed in Asiatic Russia, and British India : but there is not a christian state in Asia.

Q. What is the learning of Asia ?

A. The learning of Asia is very low. Learning, and even a written language, among the savage and barbarous hordes of Siberia, Tartary, and throughout the Moguls' empire, are not known. The half-civilized nations of China, Japan, India, including the Burmans and Siamese, and Arabia, have a written language ; but their modes of printing and transcribing books, are so slow and difficult, as to render them both scarce and dear. Tradition, in both cases, performs much the greater part of the communication of knowledge. Savage and barbarous tribes know not the use of figures ; but the half-civilized nations have long been conversant with arithmetic. The question is not yet settled, whether the Hindoos or Arabians, were the inventors of arithmetical numbers.

Q. What are the means of instruction, and advantages of education in Asia ?

A. The advantages of education among the half-civilized nations, are very considerable, especially among the higher and middling classes of people ; but the poor, in all these countries, are doomed to perpetual ignorance.

In all the Mahometan countries, the mass of the people are taught to read the Koran in Arabic ; but they are not required to understand it, because they are all ignorant of the language, except in Arabia.

Q. What other advantages of education are now enjoyed in Asia ?

A. The advantages of education arising from christian missionaries. Missionary stations, with schools of instruction, are established, and establishing, in every country in Asia ; the bible is translated, and translating, into every language ; and printing presses are circulating copies of the scriptures so rapidly, that it is to be hoped, that all the countries of Asia will in a few years enjoy the advantages of christian instruction and knowledge.

Q. What are the literary institutions of Asia ?

A. Literary institutions are established in all the half-civilized countries of Asia, of various grades and denominations ; but their systems of instruction are very partially known.

Several literary institutions are established in India, by the British government, and by funds arising from private donations; and their good effects begin to be felt. The principal of these, are the college at fort William, in Calcutta; the colleges at Poona, Benares, and Cotym: all which are flourishing.

Q. What is the state of female character in Asia?

A. The female character is low. It has become a fact, clearly understood, that female character, and the rights of woman, rise directly as the state of civil refinement is supported by the knowledge of christianity. In all savage and barbarous countries, woman is the slave of man. In all half-civilized countries, woman is still the slave of man, but in a higher degree, as in China, India, and Arabia. In all civilized countries, where the bible is enjoyed, woman takes her rank in the scale with man, and becomes the polisher of manners and morals, and the ornament of society.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Asia?

A. The history of Asia commences with the creation of the first human pair, from which sprang the whole human family before the flood.

Q. How long was it from the creation to the flood?

A. The creation was about 1655 years before the flood.

Q. What parts of Asia were settled before the flood, and what was the character of the people?

A. The creation of man, and the immediate population of Asia, commenced in the garden of Eden, and upon the rivers Euphrates and Tigris; but how extensively men had multiplied and spread, is not known. All the knowledge that we have of the character of man is, "that the earth was filled with violence," at the time of the flood; and that man had become notoriously corrupt, in consequence of the first transgression. Man had neither science, nor commerce, nor cities; but the whole population was a race of shepherds, and hunters, until they were destroyed by the deluge.

Q. Where was the earth re-peopled?

A. The earth was re-peopled in Asia, and upon the same rivers where man was first created; and again from Asia sprang the whole human family.

Q. Who were the founders of the new race of men?

A. Noah and his family, who were saved from the deluge in an ark.

Q. What became the employment of man after the flood?

A. Husbandry; and that employment continues, and will continue.

Q. When did men begin to build cities?

A. Men began to build the cities of Nineveh and Babylon, about 114 years after the flood; these cities became the capitals of Assyria, and Chaldea, which were the two first kingdoms.

Q. Which were the principal kingdoms of Asia that have followed?

A. The principal kingdoms of Asia, were the Medo-Persian, Grecian, and Roman, among the ancients; together with the kingdom of the Jews, or the twelve tribes of Israel.

Q. What became of those kingdoms?

A. The kingdom of the ten tribes of Israel was destroyed by the Assyrians; the Assyrians were destroyed by the Medes and Babylonians; the Babylonians were destroyed by the Medes and Persians, 70 years after they had carried away to Babylon the *two tribes* of Israel; the Medo-Persian empire restored the two tribes to their own land, about 500 years before Christ; and they in their turn were conquered by the Greeks, about 100 years after; the Greeks were conquered by the Romans, about 60 years before Christ.

In the year of the world 4004. Jesus Christ was born, and commenced the work of Redemption, to save fallen and ruined man. (See the Bible.)

In the 7th century of the christian era, the Saracens of Arabia conquered the Romans in Asia, and extended their empire as far east as the river Indus. (See the history of Arabia.)

In the 14th century, the Turks drove the Saracens out of the Roman provinces in Asia, and laid the foundation of the present Turkish monarchy.

About the middle of the 15th century, they took Constantinople, the capital of the eastern Roman empire, and fixed their capital there, where it now continues. (See Turkey in Europe.)

About the first of the 13th century, Genghis Khan, a Tartar prince, by his conquests in Persia and India, laid the foundation of the Moguls' empire. At the close of the 14th century, Timer Bek, or Tamerlane, extended the conquests, and became Great Mogul.

In the year 1732, Kouli Khan usurped the throne of Persia, broke the power of the Moguls, and carried his conquests into India; which prepared the way for the British East India company to extend their dominions in India.

Russia has been gradually extending her powers and dominions in Asia, since the rise of Peter I. about the first of the 18th century.

The Chinese claim the greatest antiquity of any of the nations of Asia; but there is nothing on record to shew, that their dynasty commenced earlier than the reign of prince Yee, about 2200 years before Christ.

Confucius, the great philosopher, flourished about 550 years before Christ.

Literature was revived, and the art of printing commenced in China, about 200 years before Christ. Sematsian, their first historian, wrote about one century before Christ.

China was conquered by the eastern Tartars, and the emperor and his family killed themselves, about the middle of the 17th century. The same Tartar dynasty is now upon the throne. The emperor passes the winters in China, and the summers in Tartary.

Asia has been the theatre of the greatest events of any other quarter of the earth.

**QUESTIONS.**—When did Jesus Christ appear upon earth, and for what purpose?

What memorable events took place in the 7th century?

What power rose up in the 14th and 15th centuries?

What conquerors rose up in Persia in the 14th century?

What other conquerors in the 18th century, and what were the consequences?

When did Russia begin to extend her power in Asia?

What claims does China make to antiquity, and what is her true history down to the present time?

## TURKEY IN ASIA.

**Q.** What are the situation and extent of Turkey in Asia?

**A.** Turkey in Asia is situated between the Black sea, and Asiatic Russia, on the north; Persia, on the east; the Levant and Arabia, on the south; and the Levant, Archipelago, straits of the Dardanelles, sea of Marmora, and Bosphorus, on the west. It is about 1000 miles long and 800 broad. The population is estimated at about 12,000,000.

**Q.** What are the divisions of this country?

**A.** Turkey in Asia is divided into the following provinces, viz:

<i>Provinces.</i>		<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Natolia.	} Natolia proper, Caramania, Aladulia,	Byrsa, Smyrna, Angora. Satalia, Terasso, Konia. Ajazzo, Maraseh, and Adana.
Turcomania, or Armenia, Curdistan, or Assyria, Diarbec, or Mesopotamia, Irac-Arabia, or Chaldea, Syria, Judea, or Palestine,		Erzerum, Van. Curdistan, and Bethlis. Diarbec, and Mousel. Bassora, and Bagdad. Aleppo, Tripoli, Damascus, and Jerusalem.

Q. What sublime field opens to our view in the geography of this country?

A. The greatest, most interesting, and sublime field, of any other country in the world, is presented in Turkey in Asia; here was the origin of man; here the whole history of the Bible was unfolded; here Jesus Christ was born, suffered, died, rose again, and ascended to heaven; and here was the field of his ministry.

Q. Which are the principal mountains of Turkey in Asia?

A. The principal mountains of Turkey in Asia, are the chain of mount Taurus, that includes the mountains of Ararat, on the east; and Olympus and Ida, of classic fame, on the west; also mounts Hermon, and Lebanon, in Syria and Palestine, so famous in the scriptures.

Q. What are the face of the country and climate?

A. The face of the country is delightfully variegated with mountains and plains, hills and dales. The climate is the finest in the world.

Q. What are the soil and productions?

A. The soil is remarkably fertile, and the productions such as have been described under Turkey in Europe.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The rivers Euphrates, Tigris, Orontes, Granicus, and Jordan; all famous in sacred and profane history.

Q. Which are the principal lakes?

A. The lake of Van, 80 miles long and 40 broad, on the north of Curdistan. The lake Asphaltites, in Palestine, commonly called the Salt, or Dead Sea, or lake of Sodom, 72 miles long and 19 broad; this lake was the site of Sodom and Gomorrah, and the five cities of the plain, that were destroyed by the vengeance of heaven.—Genesis xix. 24.

Q. What is the state of agriculture?

A. Their agriculture is low; and the people are a mass of ignorant, superstitious slaves.

Q. What is the state of manufactures?

A. The same as in Turkey in Europe.



Q. What is their commerce ?

A. This is very extensive ; but conducted altogether by foreigners.

Q. What is the government of Turkey ?

A. The government of Turkey is the most despotic in the world ; it prostrates every thing to its own degrading lust of domination.

Q. How is Natolia or Asia Minor situated ?

A. Asia Minor is situated between the Black sea on the north, the mountains of Cilicia on the east ; the Levant on the south ; and the Archipelago, sea of Marmora, and Bosphorus, on the west. It contains the greatest number of cities, of any country of the same size, in the world : all renowned in sacred and profane history ; but the greater part of them have changed their names, and are in ruins.

Q. Which are the most important of these cities ?

A. The most important upon the western side, was Troy ; rendered famous in classic history, for its 10 years siege : and on the eastern, the city of Tarsus, rendered famous in sacred history, as the birth place of St. Paul.

Q. What cities in Asia Minor, or Natolia, were rendered famous by the ministry of the Apostles ?

A. The cities of the seven Churches of Asia, viz. Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamos, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, and Laodicea ; all celebrated in Grecian, Roman, and sacred history ; but they are all now in ruins, except Smyrna, which is still a place of very considerable trade.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The rivers are generally small ; but the Granicus was rendered famous for the defeat of the Persians, by Alexander.

Q. What is the situation of Armenia ?

A. Armenia is situated at the source of the rivers Euphrates, and Tigris, and is rendered famous for the mountains of Ararat, where the ark of Noah rested, after the flood : also, for the death of Darius, king of Persia, after the battle of Arbela.

Q. What is the situation of Curdistan, or Assyria ?

A. Assyria is situated south of Armenia, and is the country where Noah built the ark, and where he began to re-peopple the earth, after the flood. It is also the theatre of the first city, (Nineveh,) and the first kingdom (Assyria) in the world. Also, the place of the captivity and the ruin of the *Ten tribes of Israel*.

Q. What is the situation of Mesopotamia ?

A. Mesopotamia is situated south-west of Assyria, and includes a part of the kingdoms of Assyria and Chaldea.

Q. What is the situation of Irac-Arabia, or Chaldea ?

A. Chaldea is situated south of Curdistan, upon the rivers Euphrates and Tigris, and is famous for the Tower of Babel, which was built soon after the flood, upon the plains of Shinar, and caused the confusion of language ; also for the renowned city of Babylon, the second city built after the flood, and upon the same plains, which became the capital of the Chaldean monarchy ; and near to which Abraham was born.

Q. Where did Nineveh and Babylon stand ?

A. The former stood upon the river Tigris ; and the latter, near the confluence of the Tigris with the Euphrates ; but the exact sites of those cities are not known. (See the atlas.)

Q. For what are those cities famous ?

A. Nineveh is famous for the captivity and ruin of the Ten Tribes of Israel ; and Babylon for the captivity and bondage of the Two Tribes of Judah and Benjamin, 70 years ; and both are famous for their wonderful destruction, agreeable to the predictions of the Prophets. Babylon is particularly celebrated as the theatre, where were written the prophecies of Daniel.

Q. What nations have rendered this country famous by their wars ?

A. The Medes and Persians, Greeks and Romans, Saracens and Turks. Babylon became the capital of the Medo-Persian and Grecian empires, and of the Roman empire, in the east ; but it was destroyed by the Saracens, about the time they built Bagdad, near the middle of the 8th century. This country is now under the dominion of the Turks.

Q. What is the situation of the provinces of Syria, Judea, or Palestine ?

A. These lie south of Natolia, upon the borders of the Levant. This is the country of Canaan, promised to Abraham, and his posterity ; and the theatre of the Jewish Church and Prophets (see the Atlas) ; the birth place of Jesus Christ, and the theatre of his ministry, sufferings, death, and resurrection. This was also the place where his disciples commenced their ministry, and recorded the truths of the gospel.

Q. What other important events have distinguished this country ?

A. The captivity of the Ten Tribes, by Psalmanazar, king of Nineveh ; the captivity of the Two Tribes, by Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon ; the conquests of the Greeks, the Romans, the Saracens, and the christians of Europe, in their crusades, or holy wars ; and last of all, the conquests of the Turks, who now hold possession.

Q. What rendered the cities of Jerusalem and Antioch celebrated ?

A. Jerusalem was the place where Christ was crucified, and Antioch, where his disciples were first called christians.

Q. What is peculiar to this country ?

A. It was the place where the bible was given to man, and it is now the country where the bible is suppressed by the Koran ; it is now sunk in wretchedness, under the despotic government, and religion of the Mahometan church.

Q. Which are the large commercial cities of Turkey ?

A. Aleppo, on the north of Syria, is the great central mart for the caravans, between Bassora and Bagdad on the east, and Constantinople on the west ; Aleppo is to Constantinople, what Palmyra was to Tyre ; it has a population of about 250,000.

Q. Which are the next most commercial cities ?

A. Damascus, near the centre of Syria, famous for its elastic sword blades ; it has an extensive inland trade, and a population of about 180,000. Smyrna is the great sea-port of Asia Minor, and has an extensive trade ; the plague is often very destructive at Smyrna ; its population is about 140,000.

Bagdad and Bassora are the great commercial cities in the eastern section of Turkey, and connect the commerce of India and Persia, with western Asia. Bagdad is famous for the residence of the Caliphs of the Saracen empire.

Q. What ancient cities in ruins, are worthy of notice ?

A. The cities of Jerusalem and Tyre, are renowned in sacred and profane history ; Balbec the ancient Heliopolis of Phœnicia ; and Palmyra, of the desert.

Jerusalem was the theatre of the most sublime scenes, that ever interested the family of man ; it was the focal point of the Jewish and Christian churches, and is now sunk in Mahometan darkness ; but it shall gain arise and shine with renewed splendour ; *“her light being come ; and the glory of the Lord having risen upon her.”*

Tyre was famous for her wealth and commerce, in ancient days, and for her remarkable sufferings by ancient sieges, as well as for her destruction, agreeable to the predictions of the Prophets.

Balbec, or Heliopolis, is still famous for the ruins of her ancient temple of the sun. Palmyra is situated in the desert of Syria, and was formerly the resting place of the caravans of the desert ; its splendid ruins, bespeak the wisdom of Solomon.

Q. What strong historical probability may be traced from Balbec or Heliopolis, and Tyre ?

A. Heliopolis and Tyre, were the ancient splendid cities

of Phœnicia, which were famous for the idolatrous worship of the sun, and the bloody practice of human sacrifice; the former was celebrated for its splendid temple of the sun, now in ruins. The same idolatrous worship, and splendid temples of the sun, with the bloody rites of human sacrifice, were found in Mexico, in North America, when Cortes, the Spaniard, conquered it, in the 16th century; and the Mexicans are presumed to have originated from this country. (See Mexico.)

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Turkey?

A. The Turkish history commenced with Othman, a Tartar chief, who put himself at the head of his clan, and began to commit depredations upon his neighbours, with such success, that his followers soon became numerous; and he penetrated into the Saracen dominions, took Bagdad, and the cities of the east. The Othmans, or Turks, continued their conquests, until they subdued all Syria and Palestine; they then passed over into Europe, and took Constantinople, in the year 1453, which continues to be the seat of their empire, to this day.

In the year 1525, they conquered Egypt, and continued their conquests, until they had subdued all the states of Barbary, upon the north of Africa.

The Turks, like the Saracens, embraced the religion of Mahomet, and enforced it with the sword.

The Turks have attempted to extend their conquests in Europe, by a succession of cruel and bloody wars; but all Christendom united against the common enemy, and confined them to the limits of ancient Greece, in Europe.

[The history of Turkey in Europe, has been noticed under that part of the empire.]

---

QUESTIONS.—When and with whom did the Turkish history commence?

When did the Turks pass over into Europe? what city did they take?  
When did the Turks conquer Egypt? what further conquests did they make?

### ARABIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Arabia?

A. Arabia is situated between Syria and Palestine, or Tar-

key, on the north ; between Turkey and the gulfs of Persia and Ormus, on the east ; the Arabian sea, on the south ; and the Red sea, and isthmus of Suez, on the west. It is 1500 miles long and 1300 broad. Population 12,000,000.

Q. What are the natural or physical divisions of Arabia ?

A. Arabia is divided into three parts, viz. Arabia Petræa, or Stony Arabia, on the north ; Arabia Deserta, or the Deserts of Arabia, in the middle ; and Arabia Felix, or Arabia the Happy, on the south.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, productions, and climate ?

A. The face of the country, in the two first divisions, is generally a barren, uncultivated waste ; but the third, or southern division, is fertile in a high degree, and produces rice, maize, &c. : and abounds in frankincense, gums, balsams, honey, wax, spices, and all the tropical fruits. Hence the common expression, "the perfumes of Arabia." The coffee of Mocha, near the straits of Babelmandel, is the best in the world. The climate is intensely hot.

Q. What winds are peculiar to Arabia ?

A. The Simoon, or Samuel, which often suddenly overtakes the traveller and causes instant suffocation, unless he throws himself upon the ground, and holds his breath, until it has passed. The camel sticks his nose into the sand until it has passed.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. A chain of mountains rises near the south-eastern coast of Arabia, and following the coast in a circuitous direction, extends up to Mecca, where it shoots off a branch to the east, thence extending up to Medina, shoots off another branch to the east. Near the head of the Red sea, stands Mount Sinai, celebrated for the giving of the Moral Law, to the Jewish church.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. Arabia is almost wholly destitute of rivers ; there is not one stream in the whole country, that deserves the name of river ; they are very small.

Q. Which are the animals of Arabia ?

A. The horse has been noted for his speed and beauty, from the earliest ages. The camel is common to Arabia, and peculiarly useful to carry burdens over the desert, because he can travel six or eight days without water, and can carry 300 lbs. upon his back.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Mecca and Medina ; the former is famous for the birth of Mahomet ; the latter for his death and splendid mosque, in

which he was buried, with its 300 lamps, that still illumine the tomb of the prophet, with their perpetual-light.†

Q. What is worthy of notice in the sepulture of the Prophet?

A. Mahomet is laid in a leaden coffin, under a pall of gold, richly ornamented; and his tomb is the resort of pilgrims, from all parts of the world, as far as his religion extends.

Q. Which are the commercial cities?

A. The commercial cities of Arabia, are Mocha and Aden, near the straits of the Red sea, or Babelmandel; also, Kesem, the residence of the sovereign; Muscat, the great mart of the east; and Suez, at the head of the Red sea. Sana is a city of very extensive commerce, and the most populous city in Arabia. Jidda, the port of Mecca, is a place of some trade.

Q. What is the character of the Arabians?

A. The Arabians of the cities, are half civilized; but the Bedouins, or Arabs of the Desert, are a wandering, plundering race, that traverse the country in troops, and oblige the caravans to go under a military escort, to secure them against their attacks.

Q. What is the government of Arabia?

A. The government of Arabia is despotic, but mildly administered.

Q. What is the religion?

A. The religion is Mahometan; the basis of this religion is the old Jewish patriarchal, with the indulgence of polygamy; enjoining washings and prayer, after the manner of the Pharisees; but omitting sacrifice, and prohibiting wine.

Q. What is the literature of Arabia?

A. The literature of Arabia began to flourish early, and the Arabs preserved the arts and sciences, through the whole period of the dark ages in Europe. One of the Caliphs of Arabia sent a striking-clock to Charlemagne, king of France, in the 9th century; the first ever known in France.

Q. What is the national character and power of Arabia?

A. The national character is low. The Arabians flourished under Mahomet and the Caliphs; extended their conquests; and Arabia has never been conquered; yet they lack all the essentials of national character and power, viz. a free government and religion, with industry, frugality, and the moral virtues.

†The Hegira, or flight of Mahomet, from Mecca to Medina, A. D. 622, is the epoch from whence the Mohometans compute time.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Arabia?

A. Arabia was first settled by Ishmael, the descendant of Abraham, by the bond woman, about 100 years after the flood. It passed through no material changes, until Mahomet, the impostor, published his religion, early in the 7th century, of the christian era, and converted the Arabs into a nation of soldiers; at the head of these, he subdued his own country, and enforced his religion with the sword. His successors subdued Egypt, and the states on the north of Africa; passed over into Europe, subdued Spain, and made an attempt upon France, that failed, about the middle of the 8th century. The Arabians or Saracens, at the same time, pushed their conquests into the east, took Jerusalem, penetrated to Babylon, and destroyed it; made themselves masters of the Roman empire in Asia, as far as the river Indus, and about the year 770, they built Bagdad, for their capital, which signifies the city of peace. This city was famous for the residence of the Caliphs of the east, until they were subdued by the Turks, near the close of the 14th century. In the 15th century, the Turks took the whole of Asia Minor and Syria; in the year 1525, they conquered Egypt, and continued their conquests in Africa; but Arabia remained at peace, and was never invaded.

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Arabia first settled?

What event took place in the 7th century?

What two cities did the Arabians take in the east? what city did they build? and for what was it famous?

## PERSIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Persia?

A. Persia is bounded on the N. by Independent Tartary and the Caspian sea; E. by Hindoostan and the mountains of Thibet; S. by the gulf of Persia and Ormus, and the Arabian sea; and W. by Turkey. It is 1500 miles long, and 1100 broad.

Q. What are the divisions of Persia?

A. Persia was formerly, under the monarchy, divided into eight provinces, but since the death of Kouli Khan, it is divided into East and West Persia; and these divisions are subdivided into many independent sovereignties, which are imperfectly known. The kingdoms of Cabul and Beloochistan, in East Persia, are the most important of these sovereignties.

Q. What is the population of Persia?

A. This is difficult to ascertain, on account of the despotic governments; estimated by Hassel, at 18,000,000.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The mountains of Caucasus, upon the north-west, that unite with the Koosh mounts, and Belur Tag, on the eastern part.

Q. Which are the climate, soil, and productions?

A. The climate is cold near the mountains of Caucasus, or the Caucasian chain; in the middle it is mild and temperate; but hot in the south. Persia produces all the fruits and vegetables of Turkey, with a variety of drugs, particularly the gum arabic. Pearls are found in the Persia gulf.

Q. What are the minerals of Persia?

A. Copper, lead, iron, Turquoise stone, (called Turkey stone,) sulphur, salt-petre, and red, white, and black marble.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The principal rivers are, the Indus, on the east; the Aras, Kur, and Oxus, on the north; the Mend on the south; and a part of the Euphrates and Tigris, on the west; these are the only rivers of any note, in Persia.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. The principal cities of Persia are, Ispahan, Gombroon, Ormus, Shiras, Susa, formerly Shusban, Teheran, Tauris, Derbent, Hamadan or Ecbatana, Cabul, and Cashmere. Ispahan, the ancient capital surpassed all the cities of the east, in its delightful situation, and magnificent palaces, mosques, caravanseras, and other splendid buildings: it contained a population of about 600,000; it is now in ruins, with a population of about 60,000. Herat, Kelat, Peshawur, and Candahar, are all cities of some note. Teheran is the modern capital.

Q. What are the commerce and manufactures of Persia?

A. The commerce of Persia is principally carried on in caravans, across the country: and in foreign vessels: they have no ships. Their manufactures consist of silks, woollens, carpets, leather, &c.; the shawls of Cashmere, which is a city of East Persia, are of superior elegance.

Q. What is their language and character?

A. Their language, like that of the French, is fluent, social, and pleasant; much spoken in the east, and extensively admired. They write, like the Hebrews, from the right to the left. The Persians, like the French, are social, courteous, and hospitable; fond of dress, show and sportive amusements; they are temperate in their habits, yet fond of coffee, tobacco, and opium.



Q. What is the religion of Persia ?

A. The ancient Persians worshipped the sun ; and the two Zoroasters, who attempted to reform their religion, introduced the worship of fire ; and taught them to watch, and preserve the sacred lamps, to render them perpetual. The former Zoroaster flourished about 600 years before Christ. The Saracens introduced the Mahometan religion, in the 8th century which is now the prevailing religion.

Q. What are the curiosities of Persia ?

A. The ruins of the ancient city, Persepolis, particularly of its famous temple of the sun, as at Heliopolis, in Phœnicia. The royal tombs, cut out of the solid rock ; also, a naphtha spring near the Caspian sea, which is of pure rock oil, as clear as water, and highly inflammable.

Q. What is the state of agriculture ?

A. It is very low, and but little attended to.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. The Persian literature, is much like their agriculture very low ; and the people are ignorant.

Q. What is the government ?

A. The government of Persia is in the hands of numerous despotic sovereigns, and the people are slaves.

Q. What is the national power of Persia ?

A. The national power of Persia exists only in name. Persia is destitute of all the essentials that constitute national power ; she has neither union, knowledge, industry, agriculture, or the moral virtues.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Persia ?

A. The history of Persia was very little known, until the reign of Cyrus, and the conquest of Babylon, which laid the foundation of the Medo-Persian empire, about 500 years before Christ. After this time, it gave law to the East and the West, with Babylon for its capital ; and included the kingdoms of Assyria, Chaldea, Media and Persia, with Asia Minor, Syria, and Egypt, embracing an extent of more than 127 provinces. This vast empire was conquered by Alexander, the Greek, about 330 years before Christ, who reigned at Babylon six years and died ; and his empire was divided between his four principal generals. In the first century of the

QUESTIONS.—When and under whose reign was the Medo-Persian empire founded ?

What became the character and extent of this empire ?

When and by whom was it conquered ?

Christian era, the Romans conquered this vast empire, with all its divisions, and held the dominion about 6 or 700 years. It was then conquered by the Saracens, or Arabians, who held the dominion about 600 years. It was then over-run by the Tartars, under Genghis Khan and Tamerlane, in the 13th and 14th centuries, who held the dominion, until they were expelled by Kouli Khan, a Sophi of Persia, in the beginning of the 18th century, when it was divided into a number of independent sovereignties, which still remain. The grand modern division is that of East and West Persia.

The kingdom of Persia never tasted the sweets of liberty.

The Persians, since the late Greek revolution commenced, have made several efforts to rise upon their neighbors, the Turks, and recover some of their ancient provinces, but their want of union has hitherto defeated their attempts.

When and how was the Grecian empire divided, and by whom?

When and by whom was it conquered?

When and by whom was the eastern Roman empire conquered?

Who became the next conquerers, and when?

Who expelled the Tartars? liberated his country? when?

What is the present state of Persia?

## TARTARY.

Q. What was the ancient name of Tartary, and what portions of Asia does it now embrace?

A. The ancient name of Tartary, was Scythia, and the Tartars, by the ancients, were called Scythians, both in Europe and Asia. The whole extent of Northern and Middle Asia, may properly be denominated Tartary, or Scythia.

Q. How is Tartary divided?

A. Tartary is divided into Russian Tartary, Siberia, or Russia in Asia; Chinese Tartary, Independent Tartary, and Thibet.

## RUSSIA IN ASIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Russian Tartary, or Russia in Asia?

A. Russia in Asia is bounded N. by the Frozen ocean; E. by the Pacific ocean; S. by Turkey, Independent Tartary, and Chinese Tartary; and W. by Europe. It is about 4300 miles long and 2000 broad.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population?

A. It is divided into 7 governments. The population is estimated at about 10,000,000.

Q. What is the climate ?

A. The climate is extremely cold in winter, in the north ; but mild and temperate in the south.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The face of the country is broken and mountainous, on the south ; and covered with extensive plains, called steppes, throughout the interior, and in the northern parts.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The principal mountains, are the Ural, on the north-west ; the Altaian chain, on the south ; and the Caucasian chain, on the south-west.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil is various ; and the productions are such as are common to the same latitudes, in Russia in Europe.

Q. Which are the principal islands that belong to Russia in Asia ?

A. The principal islands are the Kurile Isles, which are 22 in number, but only four are inhabited ; also, Beering's and Copper Isles, which are valuable only for their furs.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The capitals are, Tobolsk, on the north ; Astrachan, on the south ; and Irkutsk, on the east.

Q. How are these cities situated ?

A. Tobolsk is situated at the confluence of the Tobol with the river Irtysh ; Astracan upon the Wolga, near its entrance into the Caspian sea ; and Irkutsk is situated upon the lake Baikal.

Q. What is the character of these cities ?

A. Astracan is the next city in importance to Petersburg, and Moscow, in the Russian empire ; and has a very extensive commerce ; with a population of about 70,000. Tobolsk and Irkutsk, are the two inland cities, that connect the trade of Russia in Europe with China ; they have each a population of about 15,000.

Q. What is the government ?

A. The government is subject to the emperor of Russia, and divided into the governments of Tobolsk, Irkutsk, Tomsk, Georgia, Caucasus, Orenburg and Astracan : the three first are in Siberia, and include the greatest part of Russia in Asia.

#### CAUCASIAN RUSSIA.

Q. How is Caucasian Russia divided ?

A. It is divided into Circassia, Georgia, and Mingrelia.

Q. What are the situation and character of *Circassia* ?

A. It is situated upon the north of the Caucasian mounts ; and its character resembles Russian Tartary, generally.

Q. What are the situation and character of *Georgia* ?

A. It is situated upon the south of the Caucasian chain, and its character resembles Turkey, generally. Teflis is the capital of Georgia.

Q. What characteristic feature is peculiar to this people ?

A. They are noted for their fair complexions, and handsome women. The Turks and Persians often seek wives here ; and the Grand Seignor supplies his seraglio principally from this country.

Q. What are the religion and government of Georgia ?

A. The religion is Mahometan, mixed with a corrupt christianity. The government is strictly feudal.

Q. What are the situation and character of *Mingrelia* ?

A. It is an extensive fertile plain, upon the borders of the Black sea ; and its character resembles Georgia.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Asiatic Russia ?

A. The history of Russia in Asia is immediately connected with Russia in Europe. The whole Russian empire was one extensive region of Tartars or Scythians and barbarians, whose history was not known, until the year 862, when Ruric, Grand Duke of Novogorod, at the head of his Scythians, attempted to take the city of Constantinople.

In the year 901, king Wolidamar was converted to Christianity.

In the year 1158, Andrew I. laid the foundation of Moscow.

About the middle of the 16th century, the Russians first discovered and conquered Siberia. About the same time, the English first began their commerce with Russia.

In the year 1571, the Tartars or Scythians, surprised and burnt Moscow, and massacred 30,000 people.

In the year 1721, Peter I. claimed the title of Emperor, which was acknowledged by all the powers of Europe.

From this time, the affairs of Russia took a new turn. Peter devoted his whole attention to the improvement of his empire. He gave the people a new system of laws, which were well calculated to civilize the most barbarous nation in the world ; and he enforced the observance of his laws with the most rigid severity. He contemplated an inland navigation from his new city, Petersburg, upon the Baltic sea, even to China, and carried his arms into the east, until he had subdued all the vast regions of Asiatic Russia ; and then carried into effect his plan of inland navigation, which is now in full operation. The cities of Tobolsk and Irkutsk connect

Petersburg with China ; and the city of Astracan connects Petersburg with Independent Tartary, Persia, and India.

The improvements made by Peter the Great, in his empire, were truly great, and they have been extended under his successors ; and the late emperor Alexander greatly improved the empire, by pursuing the plans of Peter. Alexander gave a constitution to Russia, which has very much softened the despotic powers of the government ; he promoted, as far as possible, every improvement in agriculture, manufactures, commerce, and a general education among all classes of his subjects. His successor, the present emperor Nicholas, is pursuing the same policy, and the barbarians of Scythia are fast changing their ferocity, for the arts of civilized life.

---

QUESTIONS.—When did the history of Asiatic Russia first commence  
By whom was it inhabited at this time ?  
What city did they attempt to take ?  
When did the Russians conquer Siberia ?  
Who was the first emperor ? what improvements did he make ?

### CHINESE TARTARY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Chinese Tartary ?

A. Chinese Tartary is situated between Russian Tartary on the north ; the Pacific ocean on the east ; Corea, the Yellow sea, China, and Thibet on the south ; and Independent Tartary on the west. It is 2000 miles long and 600 broad.

Q. What are the climate and face of the country ?

A. The climate is temperate ; and the face of the country is one vast plain, intersected by extensive ridges of mountains.

Q. What are the soil and productions ?

A. The soil upon the rivers is fertile, and highly cultivated in the eastern parts ; but in the interior it abounds with extensive plains of barren sands : the productions of the eastern parts are such as are common to China ; but in the interior and on the west, the Tartars are merely wandering tribes, without agriculture, or the arts, and lead pastoral lives.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The chief towns are Chenyang, Yarkund, and Cashgar ; the former is the residence of the emperor of China, in summer ; and the latter the residence of his viceroy.

Q. What is the religion of Chinese Tartary ?

A. The religion of the Grand Lama, of Thibet, generally prevails.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Chinese Tartary?

A. The history of this region is very imperfectly known. The western section formed a part of that ancient Parthia, which the Romans attempted, at the expense of much blood and treasure, to erect into an empire, in subjection to Rome, but failed. The middle and eastern parts were peopled with fierce warlike tribes, who were continually harassing the Chinese, until the reign of the emperor Chiho-angtr, who caused the famous Chinese wall to be built, in the 3d century before Christ, which checked the depredations of the Tartars until the year 1635, when they succeeded in breaking over the wall, and in placing one of their princes upon the Chinese throne.

In the 13th century Genghis-khan conquered the western parts, and laid the foundation of the Moguls empire. Near the close of the 14th century, Tamerlane extended his conquests into these regions, and enlarged the Moguls empire.

In the 17th century, the Chinese carried their arms into Chinese Tartary, and broke the power of the Moguls. Since that time, Chinese Tartary has been generally quiet.

---

QUESTIONS.—What nation attempted to erect the western section of Chinese Tartary into an empire?

When did the Tartars succeed in breaking over the Chinese wall? what was the consequence?

When and by whom was the foundation of the Moguls empire laid?

When did the Chinese carry their arms into Chinese Tartary? what were the consequences?

## INDEPENDENT TARTARY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Independent Tartary?

A. Independent Tartary is situated between Russian Tartary on the north; Chinese Tartary on the east; Persia on the south; and the Caspian sea on the west. It is about 700 miles square.

Q. What are the climate, soil, and face of the country?

A. The climate is warm in the south; mild in the interior; but cold in the north, in winter: the soil is fertile; and the face of the country is pleasantly variegated with hill and dale.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The principal mountains are the Belur Tag, on the east, that extends across the country, from north to south; and Hindoo Koosh, that extends from west to east, and unites with the Himmaleh chain.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The principal rivers, are the Jihon and Sihon.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. Samarchand was the ancient capital, but it has greatly declined. Koukan is a large and flourishing city, a place of much trade, and the residence of the Khan, or Sovereign. Bokhara and Yarcund, are large cities, and have considerable trade ; the former is noted for its colleges.

Q. What is the character of Independent Tartary ?

A. They have a mixed character : in the cities they are half-civilized, and possess the arts, and have some excellent manufactures. But in the country, they have both the pastoral and savage character ; they generally tend their flocks and herds, dwell in tents, and lead wandering lives ; they are noted for their fine horses, and have a preference for the flesh of that animal.

Q. What is their religion ?

A. Their religion, like their character, is mixed ; they are generally Mahometans and Pagans.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Independent Tartary ?

A. The history of Independent Tartary shews, that this was the nursery, from whence sprang Genghis-Khan, and Tamerlane, the conquerors of the east ; and Othman the Great, the conqueror of the west.

Q. Why have they not become numerous, and raised up other conquerors ?

A. They have frequent and distressing massacres, and civil wars, which arise out of their weak and disjointed government, and keep down their numbers, and strength. The slaughter in their massacres, often amounts to several hundred thousand.

### THIBET.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Thibet ?

A. Thibet is situated between Chinese Tartary on the north ; China on the east ; Hindoostan, and the Burman empire on the south ; and Persia and Tartary on the west. It is about 1500 miles long, and 600 broad. Population about 30,000,000.

Q. What are the face of the country, climate, soil and productions ?

A. The face of the country is an elevated range of table-land, the highest in the world, and inclosed by ranges of the highest mountains, which give rise to all the great rivers in

the south eastern section of Asia ; the climate is cool and temperate in summer ; but cold and severe in winter ; the soil is various, but generally very indifferent ; and the productions, such as are common to Tartary. The mountains of Thibet abound in minerals.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The chief town is Lassa, the residence of the viceroy, and of the Grand Lama, or God of the east. Lassa is built in the Chinese style ; its temples are numerous and splendid ; and it is the extensive resort of the worshippers of the Grand Lama.

Q. What is the religion of Thibet ?

A. The religion of Thibet is composed of the religion of Brama, and heathen paganism, united in the Grand Lama, as the immediate object of worship.

Q. What are the characteristic features of this religion ?

A. The characteristic features are several, in particular. 1st, The Grand Lama, like the idol of Juggernaut, resides in a most magnificent temple, near Lassa, upon the banks of the Burrampooter, and is secluded from the world. 2d, He is shown only upon particular occasions, and then in some remote part of the pagoda, or temple, seated upon a cushion, cross-legged, clad in the richest apparel, and covered with jewels. 3d, He never speaks, or returns any mark of attention to any of his worshippers, however exalted their rank or character, excepting an occasional mark of his favour, that is sometimes bestowed upon some particular favourites, by laying his hand upon their heads.

Q. What views have his worshippers of his divinity ?

A. They believe him to be immortal ; possessed of all knowledge, and virtue ; and that when he appears to die, he only changes his old body for a young one, and lives again in some young child, which his priests select for the purpose. Such a young child the priests actually do select, upon the death of the Grand Lama, and introduce into the temple, and consecrate to the high office of divinity, with all possible solemnity, pomp, and parade.

Q. Is this divinity known, and worshipped throughout Tartary ?

A. This divinity is not only known and worshipped throughout Tartary, but even the emperor of China acknowledges the divinity of the Grand Lama, and does him homage. Thibet is now tributary to China.

Q. What are the rites of sepulture ?

A. They first burn the bodies of the dead, and then bury their ashes on some chosen eminence. The Grand Lama is



buried in a coffin of gold, amidst the sacred lamps ; and the priests, in their turns, watch, and feed the consecrated fires, after the manner of Persia, that they may never be extinguished.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Thibet ?

A. The kingdom of Thibet formed a grand division of the Moguls empire, under the conquests of Genghis-khan & Tamerlane, until it was conquered by the Chinese, in the 17th century.

### CHINA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of China ?

A. China is situated between Chinese Tartary on the north ; Yellow sea, and Pacific ocean on the east ; Chinese sea, Tonquin, and Burman empire on the south ; and Chinese Tartary, and Thibet on the west. It is about 1400 miles long and 1200 broad.

Q. What are the civil divisions of China ?

A. China is divided into 17 provinces.

Q. What is the population of China ?

A. The population is estimated at about 300,000,000, according to Sir George Staunton ; but the true estimate is supposed to be 180,000,000.

Q. What are the face of the country and climate ?

A. The face of the country is generally level, and the climate is mild and salubrious.

Q. What are the productions of China ?

A. The productions are such as are common to Hindoostan, and the south of Europe ; and the southern parts yield two crops in a year. Rice is very extensively cultivated. The tea plant is peculiar to this country ; the leaves are gathered at certain seasons, and rolled up by hand, and dried : the difference in the seasons of gathering, causes the difference in the quality of the several kinds of tea.

Q. Which are the principal rivers ?

A. The principal rivers, are the Hoang-Ho, and Kiang-Ku, with their tributary streams ; these rivers rise in Chinese Tartary and Thibet, and water a country of about 2000 miles in extent.

Q. What other water communications has China ?

A. The numerous canals, that intersect the country in all di-

rections, and communicate with the great canal, that extends through the country, from north to south, more than 600 miles. These canals form a chain of communication with all the great cities of the nation.

Q. How is the navigation of the canals conducted ?

A. It is conducted in square built vessels, called junks, adapted to the convenience of whole families, who often spend all their days upon the water.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The chief towns are Pekin, on the north, which is the capital, and residence of the court in winter, with a population of about 2,000,000. Nankin, in the centre, which was formerly the residence of the court, and at that time, larger than Pekin. Canton, in the south, is the great mart for foreign trade, with a population of about 2,000,000. Foreigners are not admitted into any of the cities of China, and only into the suburbs of Canton, for the purpose of trade. In the harbour of Canton, are often seen more than 5000 ships of foreign nations, in quest of the productions of China. China boasts of more than 4000 walled cities.

Q. Which are the principal exports ?

A. The principal exports are silks, cottons, nankeens, teas, and porcelain.

Q. What is the state of agriculture and the arts ?

A. The state of agriculture is under the highest possible improvement ; for the more immediate encouragement of agriculture, the emperor celebrates an annual public festival, in the open field, in honour of the plough ; and the arts flourish in China.

Q. What is the state of manufactures and commerce ?

A. The state of manufactures is under very high improvement ; and their commerce is extended throughout the world ; but it is carried abroad altogether by foreigners. The Chinese have no commerce of their own, beyond the limits of their country.

Q. What is the state of literature ?

A. The literature of China is wholly confined to the higher orders of society ; but we have no knowledge of their literary institutions : the poor people are very ignorant.

Q. What is the government ?

A. The government of China is absolute ; yet the emperor is not a tyrant, but the father of his people.

Q. What is the religion ?

A. The religion of China, is the Paganism of the Grand Dama, and of Fo or Budhu ; but all religions are tolerated.

Q. Which are the curiosities?

A. The great wall ranks among the first of the curiosities, it extends about 1500 miles from east to west; it is carried over the highest mountains, and crosses four times the great river Hoang-Ho; this wall is 20 feet high and 15 feet thick, and defended by towers, against the northern Tartars. Next to their great wall may be ranked their numerous canals.

Q. What is the antiquity of this wall?

A. The antiquity is too remote for tradition; it is supposed to be more than 2000 years.

Q. What customs are peculiar to China?

A. The custom of laying a solid wall on the front of their houses, without windows, and placing their windows in the back part of their houses. The higher ranks confine the feet of their females, in infancy, in iron, or wooden shoes, to prevent their growth, which renders it difficult for them to walk at mature age. Polygamy is tolerated, and woman is a slave.

#### CHINESE ISLES.

Q. Which are the Chinese isles?

A. The Chinese Isles are Hainan, Formosa, Leoo Keoo, or Loo Choo Isles, and Macao.

Q. What are the situation and productions of Hainan, and the other isles?

A. Hainan is situated off the coast of Tonquin; it produces gold, lapis-lazuli, &c. The natives are a small, swarthy race, who obtain a scanty support: about one half of the island belongs to the Chinese. Formosa lies off the coast of China, under the tropic of Cancer, and is more valuable; it produces two crops of rice, and other kinds of grain, in a season; it abounds in valuable trees, forests, quadrupeds, &c.; it is owned partly by the Chinese, and partly by independent natives; the capital of this isle is a rich and valuable city, built in the Chinese style.

The Loo Choo Isles are a cluster, 36 in number, tributary to China: they are imperfectly known. The principal of this cluster is the Great Loo Choo. They are an honest, industrious people, who are remarkably nice in their agriculture; but are without money.

Macao is a small island in the harbor of Canton, which was given to the Portuguese in the 16th century, to encourage trade.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of China ?

A. The Chinese value themselves upon their antiquity, and often attempt to trace back their origin, to a period before the flood, and sometimes before the creation ; but the most learned investigation of Chinese chronology, shews their empire to have been founded by prince Yeo, or Yu, about 2200 years before Christ, which now gives them a period of more than 4000 years.

During the early ages of the empire, they were harassed by the northern Tartars, until they built the great wall for their security, about 250 years before the christian era ; but in the year 1635, the Tartars broke over the wall, and subdued China, and placed a Tartar dynasty upon the throne.

To secure the peace of the empire, the emperor resides in Chinese Tartary, at the city of Chenyang, in summer ; and at Peking, in China, in winter.

Q. What has preserved the unity of China so long ?

A. Several important principles in their government : 1st, they exclude all foreigners from their cities and country, unless clothed with some public mission, either civil or religious. 2d, they carry on no foreign commerce, except in foreign ships, and even these are not permitted to enter their cities to trade. 3d, they never emigrate, nor travel abroad, to learn the manners and customs of other nations ; this perpetuates their love of country. 4th, they have never made any foreign conquests, among a luxurious, effeminate people, to corrupt their government and nation ; and have no foreign alliances. 5th, the genius of their government has ever been peace ; the cultivation of the arts, and the improvement of their country. 6th, the vast regions of Tartary and Thibet have protected China from the great conquests from the west and centre of Asia, and left them to enjoy their own tranquillity, until they were conquered by the northern Tartars in 1635.

The Portuguese visited China in the year 1586, and to encourage their trade, the emperor granted to them the island

QUESTIONS.—What are the views of the Chinese of their antiquity—what is their true origin and period ?

When and by whom was the great wall of China built, and for what purpose ?

When did the Tartars break over the wall and conquer China ?

What plan has the emperor pursued to preserve the peace of the empire ?

What has preserved the unity of the empire for so long a time ?

of Macao, in the harbor of Canton, which they hold to this time.

The Pope sent missionaries to China, in the year 1692, of the order of the Jesuits, who met with some apparent success, until they began to meddle with the government; then the emperor expelled them, 1742. The English government attempted to establish a diplomatic intercourse with China, in 1792, and sent lord McCartney for this special purpose; but the imprudence of the mission excited a jealousy which defeated its object.

The United States will doubtless enjoy a free trade with China, from the mouth of the Columbia, in a few years; and rich and flourishing cities will rise up on the western shores of our continent. Before one half century has elapsed, the commerce of China will enrich the cities and villages, that will rise up in the extensive vale of the western Columbia. The productions of China and India, will then come into America through this channel, cheaper than they now come, by the way of the Cape of Good Hope.

When did the Portuguese first visit China, and what favors did the emperor grant them?

When did the Pope send missionaries into China, and what was the result?

When did the British government attempt to establish a diplomatic intercourse with China, and what was the result?

What are the prospects of a commercial intercourse between the western coast of America and China?

## COREA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Corea?

A. It is a kingdom of Asia, bounded N. by Chinese Tartary; E. by the gulf of Corea; S. by the strait of Corea and the Chinese sea; and W. by the Yellow sea. It is about 500 miles long and 150 broad.

Q. What are the civil divisions and population?

A. This peninsula is divided into 8 provinces. Population estimated at 6 or 800,000.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. These are numerous, and are divided into the three following classes, viz. 33 of the first class, called *frus*; 58 of the second class, called *cheons*; and 70 of the third class, called *hien*; besides 40 grand cities, called *kiun*. King-ki-too is the capital.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, productions, and climate?

A. The face of the country upon the north is rough, mountainous and barren; but in the interior and south it is level and fertile. It produces silk, cotton, flax, &c.; and the Koreans raise great numbers of cattle, &c.

Q. What are the government and religion?

A. The government is absolute; but the king is tributary to the emperor of China. The religion of Fo or Budhu is the principal.

## JAPAN.

Q. What are the situation and character of Japan?

A. The empire of Japan is situated upon several islands that lie off the coast of Chinese Tartary; the principal of which, are Nippon, Ximon, and Xicoco, with the tributary isle of Jesso.

Q. What are the dimensions and population of these isles?

A. See the following table:

<i>Islands.</i>	<i>Length.</i>	<i>Breadth.</i>
Nippon,	700 miles	200 miles
Ximon,	200 "	140 "
Xicoco,	90 "	50 "

The population of Japan, according to Cannabich, Hassel, and others, is estimated from 10 to 50,000,000.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, and productions?

A. It is generally rugged and mountainous; some of the mounts are covered with perennial snow; the soil in the valleys is fertile, and highly cultivated; and the productions are rice, barley, beans, &c.; figs, oranges, lemons, and other fruits are common.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Gold, copper, tin, iron, sulphur, coal; also, agates, cornelian, and jasper; pearls, ambergrise and camphor.

Q. Which are the capitals?

A. Jeddo, Meaco, and Nangasaki.

Q. What are their manufactures?

A. They consist principally of silk, cotton, and lacquered, or japanned ware; the latter is varnished with the juice of a tree.

Q. What is the government?

A. Japan is under the government of a spiritual, and a temporal ruler; the former, called the Dairi, resides at Meaco; the latter, called Cubo Suma, resides at Jeddo, has a fortified palace, and a revenue of £28,000,000.

## HINDOOSTAN,

OR INDIA WITHIN THE GANGES.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Hindoostan?

A. It is bounded N. by the Himmaleh mounts, that divide it from Thibet; E. by Assam, the Birman empire, and the bay of Bengal; and W. by the Arabian sea and Persia. It is 1800 miles long and 1600 broad.

Q. What are the civil divisions of Hindoostan?

A. It consists of three grand divisions, the Northern, Middle, and Southern provinces; these are governed by a great number of independent sovereigns.

Q. Why is this country called the Great Peninsula of India?

A. Because the sources of the Ganges nearly unite with the sources of the Indus, which falls into the Arabian sea. (See the atlas.)

Q. What is the climate?

A. It is temperate in the northern parts, but hot in the southern, and subject to periodical rains, of three months duration.

Q. Which are the principal mountains?

A. The East and West Gauts.

Q. What are the productions?

A. In the north it abounds with all the productions common to Persia; and in the south, with all the variety of tropical fruits, such as oranges, limes, lemons, figs, pomegranates, &c.

Q. What are the mines and minerals?

A. Gold and silver, and the diamonds of Golconda, which are famous throughout the world. Upon the southern coast is a noted pearl fishery.

Q. What fierce animal is peculiar to Hindoostan?

A. The royal tiger of Bengal, the most fierce and beautiful of all the animals of the forest.

Q. Which are the principal rivers?

A. The Ganges, Indus, Hoogla, Kistna, and Burrampooter; these all overflow their banks during the rainy seasons; but the inundations of the Ganges and Burrampooter extend more than 100 miles in width.

Q. Which are the principal bays and gulfs?

A. The bay of Bengal, and the gulf of Cambay.

Q. Which is the principal cape?

A. Cape Comorin on the south.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. Delhi, the ancient capital of the Moguls, and formerly

the capital of Hindoostan : Hydrabad, Seringapatam, &c. Calcutta is the capital of British India on the Coromandel coast ; and Bombay on the Malabar coast. Benares, Surat, Madras, Lucknow, &c. are flourishing cities, with a population of 3 to 500,000.

Q. What are the population and character of Hindoostan ?

A. The native Hindoos consist of about 100,000,000, distinguished by their long, black hair ; tall, straight, and genteel persons ; pleasant and agreeable, though dark and swarthy countenances. The Moors, or Mahometans, consist of about 10,000,000, of an indifferent character.

Q. What is the commerce ?

A. Extensive, like China, and conducted upon the same principles. This commerce is carried on in foreign ships and money is the principal article received in payment for the various commodities of India.

Q. What is the government ?

A. This is founded on custom, and their religion ; without written laws ; and what is remarkable, not one lawyer is known in Hindoostan.

Q. What divisions in society are peculiar to Hindoostan ?

A. They are divided into four tribes, or castes ; 1st, Bra- mins ; 2d, soldiers ; 3d, laborers : and 4th, mechanics : and these have a variety of sub-divisions.

Q. What influence does this have upon society ?

A. It regulates the social ranks of life, and prevents all intercourse and intermarriages between the different castes. It also regulates their diet, allowing to the higher castes the use of animal food, but confining the lower castes to the use of vegetable food.

Q. What constitutes the principal food of the lower castes ?

A. Rice, and other vegetables ; they also use milk, and some spices.

Q. What constitutes the amusement and enjoyments of the Hin- doos ?

A. These are generally confined to domestic life ; and al- though their laws and religion tolerate polygamy, they seldom have more than one wife ; and she, according to custom, burns herself upon the body of her husband, if she survives him.

Q. What is the religion ?

A. The religion of Brahm is the religion of Hindoostan. The fundamental doctrine of this religion is, that men at death are changed into those animals, whose natures are most con- genial to their characters in life ; hence the reason why they study to be affable, pleasant, and agreeable : and when they



can attain to a state of perfect innocence, then they are admitted to heaven.

Q. What are their modes of worship?

A. Their idolatry extends to a great variety of animals, figures and forms, like the Egyptians, mixed with the most absurd superstition, yet they acknowledge one Supreme Being, and Brama their head, as next to him in the universe.

Q. What is the style of their temples and worship?

A. Splendid and magnificent; and they support their Bra-  
mins or priests, in great splendor. Their religion regulates all their affairs, both as to dress, fashion and food.

Numerous missionary stations are established in India for the propagation of christianity, and the missionaries, since the year 1800, have translated the bible into about 20 of the oriental languages, and are still pursuing the business with great zeal and perseverance.

#### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Hindoostan?

A. India within the Ganges, or Hindoo-ton, formed a part of the Moguls empire, about three centuries and a half, until the year 1738, when it was overrun by Kouli Khan, the Persian, who dissolved the unity of the empire, and left it at the disposal of a great number of independent chiefs, who rendered the whole country a theatre of civil wars.

In the year 1497, the Portuguese, under Vasco de Gama, explored the Indian ocean; discovered Hindoostan; touched at Calicut, on the Malabar coast, and returned to Lisbon. In the year 1506, the Portuguese commenced the settlement of Goa, where they established an inquisition, that continues to this day.

In the year 1591, the English commenced their discoveries in India, and in December, 1600, the first British East India company was chartered, with a capital of £72,000; and the next year, they made their first India voyage. In 1689, a new company was formed; and in 1700, the first company was

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Hindoostan severed from the Moguls empire, and what were the effects?

When and by whom did the Portuguese discover Hindoostan?

When did they found the city of Goa, and what religious institution did they found?

When did the English commence their discoveries in India, and what have been the consequences?

What other European nations extended their commerce to India? when and what have been the consequences?

re-established, for which they agreed to pay to government the sum of £400,000 for five years. In 1773, Great Britain passed her India bill; and in 1774, she sent out judges from England, to preside over her India possessions.

The Dutch, French, and Danes, all commenced a commerce with India, early in the 17th century, and established India companies, after the manner of the English.

These settlements commenced a rival interest between the English, French, and Dutch, that has raged in India, from time to time, with great severity; but the English have finally triumphed over their rivals, and established an independent sovereignty in India, that includes more than 350,000 square miles, and a population of more than 50,000,000 within the limits of Hindoostan.

### BRITISH INDIA.

Q. What countries are called British India?

A. Bengal, Bahar, part of Allahabad, Orissa, the northern Cicars, Jaghire in the Carnatick, the countries about Calicut on the north of the Malabar coast, Bombay and Salsette; also the Alliances of the Nabobs of Oude, and Carnatick, with Tanjore and Mysore; together with the Rajah of Travencore, and the country of Cochin.

Q. What is the capital of British India, and how is it situated?

A. Calcutta; it stands upon the Hoogly, one of the branches of the Ganges, 100 miles from the bay; the river is navigable for ships of 500 tons to this city, but larger ships stop 50 miles below. It is composed of Europeans and Hindoos, with a mixture of European and Hindoo manners and customs, and houses; and has a population of about 700,000, all forming a most ludicrous variety.

Calcutta is a place of great trade, and the amount of its commerce exceeds £10,000,000 annually.

Q. Which is the next important station on the coast?

A. *Madras*, a post and town of some importance. It is the capital of the presidency of Fort George, or *Madras*, that comprehends nearly the whole of India, south of the river *Thistrah*, and a large province in the *Deccan*, called the northern Cicars; but it is subject to the governor general of Bengal. The population of the presidency of *Madras* exceeds 12,000,000. It has a very extensive trade.

Q. Which are the most important stations on the *Malabar coast*?

A. *Bombay*, *Surat*, *Tellecherry*, *Cananore*, *Goa*, *Calicut*,

and Cochin. These embrace the whole extent of sea coast in Hither India, south of the tropic of Cancer.

Q. What curiosities are found at Bombay?

A. A curious figure of an elephant, cut out of stone; and a stupendous church cut out of a large, coarse rock, containing three figures of gigantic size; the church is 90 feet long, and supported by lofty pillars: the native Hindoos never had the arts.

Q. What particular improvements have been made in British India?

A. In 1690, the English first founded a factory at Calcutta, which they afterwards fortified, and called fort William. In 1758—9, they built a new fort one mile below, upon the bank of the river, to which they transferred the name of the old fort. The marquis of Wellesley established a college at Calcutta; and in 1816, the Hindoos instituted another college, that their sons might acquire European learning. In 1820, a missionary college was instituted, under the direction of the bishop, with very considerable endowments, for the instruction of native Hindoos, to prepare them to become preachers and schoolmasters.

### ISLES OF HINDOOSTAN.

Q. Which are the isles of Hindoostan?

A. Ceylon, the Maldives and Laccadives.

Q. What are the productions of Ceylon?

A. Ceylon produces cinnamon, pepper, cardamom, with various spices; together with great quantities of rice.

Q. Which are the most noted animals?

A. Elephants, tigers, &c.

Q. What are its minerals?

A. Gold, silver, lead, and precious stones. It has also a pearl fishery, worth five million of dollars annually.

Q. Which are the capitals?

A. Candia, for the natives; and Columbo, for the English, who are in possession of the coasts of the island. Trinkomaly is the naval station for this part of British India, and has a most valuable harbor; but Point de Galle is the chief commercial port.

The Portuguese took possession of Ceylon in 1505, and were expelled by the Dutch, in 1618. The Dutch settlements were captured by the British, in 1796, who became masters of the whole island in 1815. Ceylon is now formed into one of the governments of British India. Population 1,500,000. It is one of the great missionary stations,

Q. What is the character of the other isles?

A. They are of little value.

## FARTHER INDIA,

### OR INDIA BEYOND THE GANGES.

Q. What are the situation and extent of this peninsula?

A. It lies between China and Thibet, on the north; the Chinese sea and gulf of Siam, on the east; the straits of Malacca, on the south; and Hindoostan, and the bay of Bengal, on the west. It is 2000 miles long and 1000 broad.

Q. How is it divided?

A. Into 7 independent sovereignties, viz. Birman Empire, Assam, Siam, Laos, Malacca, Cambodiä, Cochin China and Ponquin.

### BIRMAN EMPIRE.

Q. What is the situation of the Birman Empire?

A. It lies upon the western section, and embraces the kingdoms of Ava, Pegu, and Aracan.

Q. What are the productions?

A. Wheat, rice, tobacco, sugar, indigo, cotton, with all the tropical fruits.

Q. What forest trees are noted in this empire?

A. The teek-tree, considered more durable for ships than cedar, or live oak. The teek-ships of Calcutta are highly valued in England.

Q. What are the minerals?

A. Gold, silver &c. in great abundance; also, the ruby of Pegu, and amber, upon the river Irrawady.

Q. What is the capital?

A. The ancient capitals, Ava and Pegu, are fallen into decay, and the new capital, Ummerapoora, on the Irrawady, is a most splendid city, and appears, like Venice, to rise out of the waters of a lake, which is contiguous to it; the gilded spires of their temples, like those of Moscow, give this city a delightful appearance.

Q. Which is the great mart of this empire?

A. Rangoon: and contains a population of about 30,000.

Q. What is the government of this empire?

A. Despotic; and the laws of ancient Persia are in force here, which inflicted punishment upon the wife and children, for the offences of the husband and father.

Q. What is the religion?

A. The religion of Brama; the same as Hindoostan.

Q. What is the character of the Birmans?

A. They are an ambitious, enterprising people, very ingenious, and fond of the arts; but so anxious to increase their population, as to prohibit the emigration of their women.

### SIAM.

Q. How is the kingdom of Siam situated?

A. Between the extensive ranges of two lofty mountains, upon the borders of the river Meinam. It is about 500 miles long, and from 50 to 250 broad.

Q. What are the face of the country and climate?

A. It is a vast and extensive plain; the climate is hot, and is subject to periodical rains, like Hindoostan, which inundate the country, and oblige them to build their houses on the eminences, or spiles. During these inundations, they have their intercourse entirely by boats.

Q. What are the productions?

A. The same as Brama, and Hindoostan.

Q. What is the capital?

A. Siam, situated upon an island in the river Meinam, near the head of the gulf of Siam; this is a large and flourishing city, with an extensive wall.

Q. What is their government?

A. Despotic; the king is the only proprietor of the soil: his will is law, and this he enforces with the sword; he keeps a strong military force.

Q. What is their religion?

A. The religion of Brama: they, like the Birmans, support their temples and priests, in great splendour and magnificence.

### ASSAM.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Assam?

A. It is situated upon the north-west of Farther India; and is bounded N. by Thibet; E. upon regions unknown; S. by Meckley; and W. by Hindoostan. It is 700 miles long and about 70 broad, upon an average.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil and productions?

A. The face of the country is mountainous in the northern parts; the soil is very fertile in the vallies, and produces pepper, cotton, &c. Gold is the principal mineral production.

Q. Which is the capital city ?

A. Ghergong was the former capital, but Jorhat is the present capital. Bungpoor is the principal military station.

Q. Which are the principal articles of commerce ?

A. Gold, ivory, lac, silk, pepper, cotton, &c. ; together with gunpowder, in great quantities.

Q. What is the character of this people ?

A. They are represented as being without religion, or law, indolent, dissolute, ignorant and poor, in one of the most fertile countries in the world.

### MALACCA, OR MALAYA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of this peninsula ?

A. It lies between Siam on the north ; the Chinese sea on the east ; the straits of Malacca on the south-west ; and the bay of Bengal on the west. It is about 600 miles long and 120 broad.

Q. What are the climate, face of the country, and productions ?

A. The climate is not ; the face of the country abounds with forests ; and the productions are rice and pepper, with valuable spices and woods ; also, tin, gold dust, &c.

Q. What is their character ?

A. They are a restless, robbing, treacherous race, often addicted to piracy, in which they are very desperate in their attacks upon foreign ships.

Q. What is their religion ?

A. Mahometan.

Q. What is peculiar to their language ?

A. It is, like the French in Europe, a pleasant, familiar language, and generally spoken throughout the east.

Q. What Europeans enjoy their commerce, and what is their capital ?

A. The English hold possession of Malacca, the capital, and have a general controul of their commerce ; they have a college there.

Q. What *islands* are upon this coast ?

A. Andeman, and Nicobar isles.

Q. What is the character of the great isle of Andeman ?

A. It possesses a rich soil ; abounds with wild hogs, and monkeys ; and has a population of about 2000 negroes, like those of Africa.

Q. What nation is now attempting to settle this island ?

A. The English, by sending their convicts from Bengal to Andeman.

Q. What is peculiar to the Nicobar isles?

A. They are three in number, and produce a bread fruit that will weigh 20 or 30 pounds each.

### LAOS AND CAMBODIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of these kingdoms?

A. They lie upon the extensive river Mecon, with China on the north, and the Chinese sea on the south, skirted on the east and west by two extensive ranges of mountains.

Q. What are the climate, face of the country, and productions?

A. The climate is hot; the face of the country level, and the productions, are rice, benzoin, musk, and gamboge. It also affords ivory, and the valuable woods.

Q. What is the population?

A. They are a mixture of Chinese, Malaysans, &c. : but their number is not known.

### COCHIN CHINA, AND TONQUIN.

Q. What are the situation and extent of these kingdoms?

A. They extend from China on the north, to the Chinese sea, and the bay of Tonquin, on the south and east; and are divided from Laos and Cambodia, by an extensive range of mountains.

Q. What are the productions?

A. The productions, are rice, sugar, &c. ; with all the tropical fruits.

Q. What is their capital?

A. Kesho, upon the river Songkoi, near the gulf of Tonquin; it is a large and populous city.

Q. What is the government?

A. Absolute. The government of Cochin China has united Tonquin to its dominions, by conquest.

Q. What is the character of this kingdom?

A. They are of Chinese extraction, and dwell in bamboo huts, thatched with rice straw. The higher ranks are clothed in silks; but the lower classes wear very little clothing. Their houses in the country, generally, stand in some delightful grove, enriched with spices, and tropical fruits.

### Asiatic Isles.

Q. Which are the islands termed Asiatic Isles?

A. The isles of Sunda, Borneo, Manillas, or Philippine isles; the Celebes, and Moluccas, or Spice islands.

## SUNDA ISLES.

Q. Which are the Sunda Isles

A. Sumatra, Java, Timor, and several others, lying south of India beyond the Ganges.

Q. What is the extent of Sumatra?

A. It is 950 miles long, and from 50 to 180 broad.

Q. What is the face of the country?

A. The interior consists of one vast range of mountains, which extend through the island.

Q. What is the height of this ridge?

A. Where it crosses the equator, it is called mount Ophir, and rises about 14,000 feet above the level of the sea.

Q. What are the productions of Sumatra?

A. Pepper, benzoin, cassia, coffee, and cotton.

Q. What are the mines of Sumatra?

A. Gold is found here; and their mines abound in tin.

Q. What is the language of Sumatra, and its commerce?

A. The language is Malayan, generally. The English carry on the pepper trade, from their settlement at Bencoolen.

Q. What small island lies contiguous to Sumatra, and abounds in tin?

A. The *Isle of Banca*; the mines are considered as inexhaustible; the Dutch enjoy this trade.

Q. What distinguishes the island of Java?

A. The splendid city of *Batavia*, which belonged to the Dutch, and was the centre of their trade in India, until it was taken by the English, in 1811.

Q. What are the productions of Java?

A. The same as Sumatra; but their coffee is superior.

Q. What other islands of importance belong to this chain?

A. *Timor*, which lies upon the east, is held in some estimation by the Dutch. The intermediate isles are of no value.

## BORNEO.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Borneo?

A. It lies upon the equator, and is the largest island in the world, except New Holland.

Q. What is known of this Island?

A. Very little, beyond the sea coast; and even that, very partially. The coast is low, and being overflowed extensively with the tide, subjects the inhabitants to great inconvenience, and obliges them to build floating villages.

Q. What are the productions?

A. The same as Sumatra, with camphor, and edible birds-



nests ; these are constructed with some particular gums by a bird resembling the swallow, and are considered very delicious.

Q. What animal is peculiar to this island ?

A. The Ourang Outang, which walks erect, is 5 or 6 feet high, and ranks next to man, in the animal scale ; his mental powers are superior to those of the elephant.

Q. What is their commerce ?

A. This is confined to China, generally ; the Europeans have no settlements upon this island.

### MANILLAS.

Q. Which is the most valuable of these islands ?

A. Lucon, upon the north, is very rich and productive ; it abounds in rice, sugar, and cocoa, and its cotton is the best in the world. Its minerals, are gold, copper, and iron.

Q. Who own this island, and what is its capital ?

A. It belongs to Spain, with the other Philippines ; and has Manilla for its capital ; this is a regular built city, very populous, and strongly fortified.

Q. What is the commerce of this island ?

A. Its commerce extends not only to Europe, but to the Spanish settlements of North and South America : and particularly to Mexico, by the way of Acapulco, across the Pacific ocean.

Q. How did the Spaniards get full possession of these islands ?

A. By a general massacre of the Chinese population, in the 17th century.

Q. Which is the next island of importance in this cluster ?

A. Mindanao, upon the south.

Q. What are the productions of this island ?

A. Rice, cinnamon, with some gold, are the principal ; also the palm tree that produces sago : the island abounds in buffaloes, and horses.

The intermediate islands are of little value.

### CELEBES.

Q. Which is the most valuable of these islands ?

A. The isle of Celebes, lying east of Borneo.

Q. What are the productions ?

A. The same as Sumatra.

Q. What is the character of this island ?

A. It is inhabited by Malays, who are noted pirates. Its capital is Macassar, possessed by the Dutch, who hold the sovereignty of the whole cluster.

## MOLUCCAS, OR SPICE ISLANDS.

Q. Which are the principal of these islands?

A. Gilolo, Ceram, Banda, and Amboyna.

Q. What are the productions?

A. Cloves, nutmegs, sago, and mace. The nutmeg, when green, is of the size of a small peach, and grows upon a tree; the shell, or outer coat of the nutmeg, forms the spice, called mace. The nutmeg is peculiar to Banda, and under the control of the Dutch, who burn, or destroy the surplusage of the crop, annually, to preserve their value in market.

Q. What spice is peculiar to Amboyna?

A. The clove, which grows upon tall trees, that often produce 20 or 30 pounds.

Q. What is the capital of Amboyna?

A. A town of the same name, which ranks next to Batavia, in the Dutch settlements, in the East Indies.

## AUSTRALASIA.

Q. What islands are included under Australasia?

A. New Holland, New Guinea, New Britain, New Ireland, the Solomon Isles, New Caledonia, the New Hebrides, New Zealand, and Van Dieman's Land.

## NEW HOLLAND.

Q. What are the situation and extent of *New Holland*?

A. It lies south of the Moluccas, is 2700 miles long, and 2000 broad. It was taken possession of, for the English, by Captain Cook, 1770, and they have formed a settlement at Botany Bay, called Port Jackson, where they send their convicts from Great Britain. This colony is now rising fast in its numbers, wealth, and respectability. Sidney and Parramatta, are thriving villages; the former is the seat of the military government, and contains a bank, a free school, &c. the latter has a school for the natives. This island is often ranked among the continents.

Q. What is the character of the natives?

A. They resemble the Hottentots in their colour, form, and manners; are black, and filthy. They are sunk below the arts; have no agriculture, and feed on fish, and animals of the chase.

Q. What are the face of the country, and productions?

A. The country is wild, and uncultivated, and remains unexplored.

## NEW GUINEA.

Q. What are the situation and character of *New Guinea*?

A. It lies on the north of New Holland, is of the same character, and as little known; it is noted for the bird of Paradise, whose plumage is peculiarly beautiful, and much sought for by the Chinese, and other oriental nations.

## NEW BRITAIN, NEW IRELAND, AND SOLOMON ISLES.

Q. What are the situation and character of these Isles?

A. They lie east of New Guinea, and are as little known. The character of the natives is superior to the others; they are not black, but swarthy, and muscular; dwell in huts and feed on fruits.

## NEW CALEDONIA, AND NEW HEBRIDES.

Q. What are the situation and character of these Isles?

A. They lie southward of New Ireland; their natives are similar to New Holland; the face of the country is rocky and barren, producing a few yams, plantain, sugar cané, &c. They were discovered by Captain Cook, 1774.

## NEW ZEALAND.

Q. What are the situation and character of *New Zealand*?

A. They lie south of New Caledonia: they are noted for the lofty elevation of Mount Egmont, which rises 14,000 feet above the level of the sea, and is covered with perennial snows.

Q. What is the character of the natives?

A. They are remarkably tall, of an olive complexion; are cannibals, and devour their prisoners taken in war.

Q. What are the animals of these islands?

A. Rats and dogs, are the only animals known.

Q. When were these islands discovered?

A. By Captain Jasman, a Dutchman, in the year 1642, who lost seven of his men by the natives.

Missionaries of the cross have lately been favourably received among them.

## VAN DIEMAN'S LAND.

Q. What is the situation of *Van Dieman's Land*?

A. It lies south of New Holland, and resembles it in its appearance, and inhabitants. Hobartstown, the capital, is a rising and flourishing settlement.

## POLYNESIA.

Q. Which are the isles termed Polynesia ?

A. The Sandwich Isles, Ladrões or Marian Isles, the Carolines, the Pelew, the Marquesas, the Society Isles, Friendly Isles, and the Navigators Isles, in the North Pacific.

## SANDWICH ISLES.

Q. What are the number and population of these Isles ?

A. There are eleven in the cluster, and the population is estimated at about 400,000.

Q. What are the climate and productions ?

A. The climate is temperate, and the productions are sugar cane, bread fruit, from the taro-root, and bread fruit tree, cocoa, yams, sweet potatoes, &c.

Q. Which is the largest of these islands ?

A. Owyhee is the principal of the Sandwich Isles, and where Captain Cook was killed by the natives. It is about 100 miles long and 60 or 70 broad, and lies under the 20th degree of north latitude.

Q. What is the character of the natives of this island ?

A. They are a kind, affectionate people ; have made some progress in the arts, and agriculture, and have some commerce in their own vessels. Missionaries from the United States have been very successful, in civilizing and christianizing the people. They have abolished their ancient Pagan worship, and Christianity has risen in its place.

Q. What occasioned the murder of Captain Cook ?

A. He imprudently took for fuel for his ship some part of the fence, or railing, that enclosed the place of sepulture for their dead, which incensed the natives very highly.

Q. Did they murder him in the first impulse of their rage ?

A. No : they suffered him to depart, and set sail on his voyage ; but violent head winds compelled him to return into port, and when he went on shore, they revenged the outrage offered to their dead, by taking his life.

The Sandwich Isles will become valuable to the United States, in their future commerce with India, from the western settlements, on the shore of the Pacific ocean. They will soon become ports of refreshment for the western India ships, on their outward and homeward bound passages. The young missionaries, who have bid adieu to their native shores, to go into these remote regions, to christianize the heathen, will soon hold familiar intercourse with the citizens of their dear

native land, from the shores of the west ; this intercourse will render the affairs of the United States, as familiar to them, as they are to the people of the West Indies, at this time.

### PELEW ISLES.

Q. What is the character of the Pelew islands ?

A. They produce the cane, bamboo, cocoa, ebony, and bread fruit. The natives are olive coloured, well made, and peaceable : both sexes go almost, and some entirely naked ; they are noted for their chastity and honesty. Their climate is peculiarly mild. Tattooing is common to the Isles of Polynesia.

### LADRONES, AND CAROLINE ISLES.

Q. What is the character of the Ladrones, and Caroline Islands ?

A. Much the same as that of the Pelew Isles. The former are 12 or 14, and the latter about 30 in number.

### MARQUESAS ISLES.

Q. What is peculiar to the Marquesas Islands ?

A. The natives, like those of the other isles, are of an olive colour, and surpass them in the elegance of their forms ; the women are often almost white, and very beautiful.

### SOCIETY ISLES.

Q. What is the character of the Society Isles ?

A. The inhabitants of these islands are the most refined of all the South-sea Isles, particularly in Otaheite ; their soil is very productive, and yields yams, plantain, cocoa, and bread-fruit in abundance. They have some manufactures, in which they display great ingenuity. Both sexes are fond of ornaments, in which they display some taste, particularly in their garlands of feathers, and flowers in their bonnets, made of cocoa-nut leaves. They, like the Owyheans, have abandoned their idolatry, and become a nation of Christians ; and are fast progressing in agriculture, general knowledge, and the arts. The labours of faithful missionaries have been greatly blessed in this island.

### FRIENDLY, OR NAVIGATORS ISLES.

Q. What is the character of these Islands ?

A. The Friendly Isles surpass all the others in their cultivation, and have provisions in plenty. The Navigators Isles are very populous, and their people are athletic, fierce, and treacherous, like the Malays of India.

One general character formerly pervaded all the islands of Polynesia ; but great efforts have been made, and are now making, to open the way for the introduction of the Gospel, to civilize and christianize these people. They are at present all heathen idolaters, and in a rude, savage state, except Owyhee and Otaheite, and four or five others, where missionary labours have been very successful, and where schools for regular instruction are established, under flattering circumstances.

---

## AFRICA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Africa ?

A. Africa is situated between the Mediterranean sea, on the north ; the Isthmus of Suez, the Red sea, and Indian ocean, on the east ; the Pacific on the south : and the Atlantic ocean on the west. It is 4300 miles long, and 3500 broad.

Q. What are the statistical divisions and population ?

A. Africa may be divided into Northern, Eastern, Southern, Western, and Central. Population according to Hassel —99,000,000.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. It is intersected by several extensive ranges of mountains ; a few valuable rivers ; and covered with vast and extensive deserts.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. Mount Atlas, upon the north, rises near the coast, upon the south-western extremity of the kingdom of Morocco, and extends east, to the confines of Algiers, where it divides : one chain, called mount Jurjura, extends in a north-easterly direction to the coast of the Mediterranean sea, and the other continues east as far as the desert of Barca.

A lesser chain rises near the strait of Gibraltar, and extending through Morocco, meets the Atlaian chain in Algiers.

The great Atlaian chain has an elevation of about 14,000 feet above the level of the sea, in the kingdom of Morocco, and is covered with perennial snows. They do not abound in minerals.

The streams that flow from these mountains into the Mediterranean, fertilize the States of Barbary ; but those that flow from the southern declivity of the great chain, are lost in the vast desert of Zahara.

Another chain rises upon the western coast, a little south

of Cape Verd, called the mounts of Kong, which stretch into the interior, until they are supposed to unite with the range called Jebel Kumra, or mounts of the Moon, which extend nearly across the continent; they are considered much higher than the northern chain; but have never been explored.

These mountains give rise to the Senegal, Gambia, and several other valuable rivers, on the west; also to the majestic Nile, that waters Egypt on the east, and falls into the Mediterranean sea. The mysterious Niger rises under the western extremity of these mounts, and running east, is either lost in vast deserts of the interior, or forms the main branch of the Nile, as the Missouri does of the Mississippi, in North America: the latter is most probably true. The junction of this river with the Nile, will fully account for the vast inundations of the latter, as well as for their duration; and without this, both are difficult to be accounted for.

A branch of the mounts of the Moon extends from Abyssinia, in a northerly direction, along the coast of the Red sea, nearly to the Isthmus of Suez. They are supposed to rise in many parts to an elevation of about 15,000 feet, because they are there covered with perennial snows. These mountains, like those of the north and interior, do not abound in minerals.

Another chain is supposed to extend from Abyssinia, in a southern direction, called the mounts of Lupata, and to give rise to those valuable rivers that water the whole eastern coast of Africa.

In Southern Africa are several ranges of mounts that rise in regular succession, back of each other, at the distance of 50, 80, or 100 miles apart, and extend along the coast, until they terminate near the Cape of Good Hope, in the bluff called Table Mount. The first of these chains is called Lange Kloff; the second, Swarte Bergen; and the third, Nieuw-veld; the latter are covered with perennial snows.

The mounts of the western coast, and of the equator, are too imperfectly known to be described.

The interior of Africa has never been explored; and all that is yet known of it is, that it abounds with savage tribes of negroes, and vast deserts.

Q. What is the inland navigation of Africa?

A. The inland navigation of Africa is very limited, excepting by the river Nile; but upon this river it is carried to great perfection, by means of its navigable waters, and numerous canals. The extent of boat navigation upon the Nile is about 600 miles, up to the cataracts.

The canals of Egypt are too numerous to be described ; and the largest, and formerly the most important one, that connected the Red sea with the Mediterranean, has been in ruins for several centuries. The utility of this canal was destroyed by the invention of the mariner's compass, and the navigation that followed the discoveries in the Indian ocean, in the 16th century.

### HIISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Africa ?

A. Africa was better known to the ancients, than the moderns, and made a conspicuous figure in ancient history.

The kingdom of Egypt was founded 2188 years before Christ, and was the nursery of the arts and moral virtues, until Sesöstris carried his arms abroad, 1500 years before Christ ; this laid the foundation of a train of luxuries, and corruptions, and prostrated the moral virtues, and rendered Egypt an easy conquest to Nebuchadnezzar, king of Assyria, or Chaldea, about 600 years before Christ. This conquest stripped Egypt of all her ancient splendour, and she has continued to decline to this day.

There are many remains of antiquity in Nubia, that may lead us to believe, that she was coeval with Egypt, and flourished in splendour in the early ages. The splendid monuments of antiquity found in both kingdoms, extend far beyond the reach of authentic history, or tradition.

The kingdom of Carthage was founded by queen Dido, at the head of her Tyrian colony, 1257 years before Christ. This was a maritime, or commercial kingdom ; and like the city of Tyre, from whence they sprang, flourished exceedingly, and carried their arms abroad, even to the gates of Rome, under Hannibal, the hero of Carthage ; but Carthage was conquered by the Romans, and their city razed to its foundation, by Scipio, termed Africanus, 146 years before Christ.

The ancient kingdom of Numidia, situated where the kingdoms of Tunis and Algiers now are, flourished, as a cotemporary with Carthage ; and was overrun by the Romans, about the same time.

The present States of Barbary are of modern origin, except the kingdom of Morocco, (anciently Mauritania) which was coeval with Carthage, and known to the Romans as early as 1008 years before Christ. About the year 25 before Christ, the Romans invaded Mauritania, and reduced it to a province about the year 50, of the christian era. This became the des-



any of all the states of Africa, in regular succession. (See their histories.)

The whole continent of Africa had been circumnavigated before the discovery of America, in the 15th century ; but the interior has never been explored, and was as much unknown to the ancients as it is to the moderns.

Great efforts have been made of late by Mungo Park, and others, to explore the interior of Africa ; but hitherto they have not been able to penetrate far. Great efforts are also making to civilize and christianize the settlements upon the coast, at Sierra Leone, Liberia, and elsewhere ; and by those means to gain access to the interior, with a view to meliorate their barbarous condition, & root out the vile practice of human traffic ; but the task is arduous and difficult, and the progress has hitherto been slow. As the christian powers of Europe and America become more united in their efforts, the prospect seems to brighten ; and whenever they can become unanimous, it is to be hoped that they may succeed. The work increases in strength and respectability daily ; and it is to be expected that a few more years will unveil to the christian world the dark recesses of barbarous Africa, and give to those regions the light of the gospel.

- 
- QUESTIONS.—Was Africa known to the ancients ?  
 Which was the first and most important kingdom in Africa, and when was it founded ?  
 What great conqueror rose up in Egypt ? when and what were the consequences ?  
 What other kingdom in Africa was coeval with Egypt, and what are the evidences of it ?  
 When and by whom was the kingdom of Carthage founded, and what is its history ?  
 What ancient kingdom lay contiguous to Carthage, and by whom was it destroyed ?  
 What other kingdom in Africa was coeval with Carthage ? by whom was it destroyed, and when ?  
 What part of Africa had been explored by the ancients ?  
 What efforts have been made by the moderns to explore the interior of Africa, and what are the present prospects ?

## NORTHERN AFRICA.

### EGYPT.

- Q. What are the situation and extent of Egypt ?  
 A. Egypt is situated upon the north-eastern section of Africa ; it is bounded by the Mediterranean sea on the north ;

the Isthmus of Suez, and the Red sea on the east ; Nubia on the south ; and the desert of Barca on the west. It is 600 miles long and 250 broad.

Q. How is Egypt divided, and what is its population ?

A. Egypt is divided into Upper and Lower Egypt ; and the division is made at Grand Cairo. The population is about 4,000,000, which dwell in about 2300 cities, towns, and villages, besides Arabs of the desert.

Q. What is the situation of Upper Egypt ?

A. It is situated between two extensive ranges of mountains, that skirt it upon each side of the river Nile ; and the basin of the river is fertilized by its annual inundations. Siut is its capital, and a place of some trade.

Q. What is the situation of Lower Egypt ?

A. The situation of Lower Egypt is upon one vast plain, stretching along the Mediterranean, from the Isthmus, to the deserts of Barca, with the alluvial country in the centre, called the Delta, and extending up to Grand Cairo.

Q. What are the climate, soil and productions of Egypt ?

A. The climate is hot in summer, and mild in winter. It seldom rains, or is cloudy in Egypt. The soil is remarkably fertile : and the productions are wheat, barley, rice, millet, flax, hemp, beans, sugar cane, figs, olives, oranges, dates, onions, leeks, medicinal plants, &c. ; some parts yield two or three crops in a year.

Q. Which are the rivers of Egypt ?

A. The Nile is the only river of Egypt ; this rises in the mountains of Abyssinia, and by its annual inundations, waters and fertilizes the whole country.

Q. At what period does the Nile overflow its banks ?

A. The Nile overflows its banks, from the middle of June to the middle of October

Q. What parts of the country are inundated ?

A. All the country lying upon the river, both in Upper and Lower Egypt, is overflowed ; and the Delta is wholly overflowed.

Q. How are the other parts of Egypt watered ?

A. The other parts are watered by canals, which extend from the river, and intersect the country in all directions.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The chief towns that now remain, are Cairo, at the head of the Delta, and Alexandria, Rosetta and Damietta, at the mouths of the Nile.

Q. What are the commercial advantages of these cities ?

A. The commercial advantages of Cairo were once very great, when the commerce of the east flowed into the Mediterranean, through the canal, that led from the Red sea, to the

river Nile, at Cairo ; but this has been in ruins several centuries. Cairo now enjoys an extensive trade, up the river, into the interior, as well as by caravans across the deserts, as far as Tombuctoo, on the Niger. Cairo is the great central mart of Egypt for all the commercial nations of the world ; and possesses valuable manufactures, with a population of about 300,000.

Q. What are the situation and character of Alexandria ?

A. Alexandria is situated near the mouth of the western branch of the Nile ; it was formerly a splendid city, built by Alexander the Great, king of Macedon, when he conquered Egypt, about the year 334 before Christ ; but it is now mostly in ruins. Commerce, and the arts and sciences, once held dominion at Alexandria ; but the substance is gone, and the shadow alone remains.

Q. What are the situation and character of Rosetta and Damietta .

A. Rosetta is situated upon one of the western branches of the Nile ; is a modern city, and possesses very considerable commercial advantages.

Damietta is situated upon the Eastern, or Pelusiatic branch of the Nile, and possesses extensive commercial advantages ; but it bears no resemblance to the ancient city of Pelusium, which is now in ruins, near Damietta.

Q. What is the agriculture of Egypt ?

A. The agriculture of Egypt has always been proverbial ; and has given to the whole country the appellation of the garden of the world.

Q. What is the character of the Egyptians ?

A. The Egyptians may be divided into three classes, viz. the Copts, or original stock, which are a swarthy race ; the Arabs and Turks, who have come in from the neighboring countries ; and the Bedouin Arabs, that lead wandering pastoral lives, and are plunderers and robbers.

Q. What is the religion ?

A. The prevailing religion of Egypt is Mahometan ; but a free toleration is enjoyed.

Q. What is the language ?

A. The Coptic, or old Egyptian, Arabic, Turkish and Greek languages are spoken in Egypt.

Q. What is the government of Egypt ?

A. The government is divided into about 25 independent sovereignties, the chiefs of which are called Beys, who are all tributary to the Grand Seignior, at Constantinople ; at the head of this confederacy, is the Pacha of Egypt.

Q. What is the military strength of Egypt ?

A. The military strength is supported by a body of Mamma

Jukes, which each Bey keeps in his service ; these Mama-Jukes are the children of christians, in the north of Turkey, taken as slaves, and trained to arms ; these govern Egypt.

Q. What are the animals ?

A. The animals are such as are common to Europe, with the camel ; the river Nile abounds with crocodiles, aligators, and numerous poisonous reptiles.

Q. What are the antiquities and curiosities of Egypt ?

A. The antiquities and curiosities are too numerous to be detailed in this work ; the principal are the pyramids, whose stupendous structure exceed all other works of art ; the largest is about 600 feet high, and covers about six acres of ground. Near the pyramids is found the labyrinth, comprising a subterraneous city, built of marble, after the manner of the labyrinth of Crete ; it contains numerous houses and palaces, so arranged, as to lead its visitants into such intricate mazes and windings, as to baffle all possible efforts to find the way out, without a guide. Here are the Egyptian mummies, those embalmed dead, which have been preserved more than 3000 years, and which will endure to the latest time.

Q. What other marks of antiquity remain in Egypt ?

A. The Pharos of Alexandria, whose light was visible more than 100 miles. The obelisks of Egypt, some of which were more than 100 feet high, in one shaft. Also, the catacombs, those ancient monuments of the rites of sepulture ; and the ruins of the great canal, that connected the Red sea with the river Nile, &c.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Egypt ?

A. Egypt was founded by Mizraim, the son of Ham, the son of Noah, and by his posterity, soon after the flood. It had become a rich and flourishing kingdom, at the time that Abraham visited it, when he first went out into the land of Canaan. It was the theatre of the bondage of the descendants of Abraham, 400 years, when it is supposed the pyramids were built. Egypt very early became the nursery of arts and of arms.

About the year 1491 before Christ, Sesostris, king of Egypt, carried his arms abroad ; he subdued all the north of Africa, and all Syria, Asia Minor, and Thrace ; and extended his dominions from the Danube to the Ganges of India. At the end of nine years, Sesostris returned into Egypt, and left those conquests as free as he found them.

The conquests of Sesostris led to those emigrations into Greece, under Cecrops, Danaus, and Cadmus, who carried the first letters, as well as the arts and sciences, into Greece.

Before the conquests of Sesostris, Egypt was the nursery of industry, temperance, and all the moral virtues; but those conquests subverted all those pillars of Egypt, and laid the foundation of all her future sufferings.

About 600 years before Christ, Nebuchadnezzar, king of Chaldea, carried his arms into the west, and subdued Egypt. He plundered and sacked the kingdom, and broke the spirit of the nation.

About the year 334 before Christ, Alexander, king of Macedon, conquered Egypt, and built the city that bears his name. About 10 years after this, Alexander died at Babylon, and his empire was divided between his four principal generals. Egypt fell to the lot of Ptolemy; he and his successors were involved in almost perpetual wars with the Seleucidæ, or kings of Syria, until Egypt was subdued by the Romans, in the year 31, after Christ.

Egypt continued a Roman province, until it was conquered by the Saracens, in the 7th century. It continued under the Saracen Caliphs, until the Turks subdued it, in the year 1525. The Saracens introduced the Mahometan religion, and the Turks confirmed it; and at the same time reduced the strength of the kingdom, by dividing the government among a great number of sovereigns, called Beys, who continue tributary to the Sultan of Constantinople.

In the year 1799, Egypt was overrun by the French, under general Bonaparte. In 1801, it was conquered by the English, and in 1803, they restored it to the Turks, who now hold the dominion.

Few countries have undergone greater changes than Egypt.

- 
- QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Egypt founded, and what was its early history?
- What king of Egypt carried his arms abroad? what countries did he conquer, and when?
- What were the moral effects of the conquests of Sesostris upon Egypt?
- What emigrations rose out of these conquests?
- When and by whom was Egypt conquered?
- Who became the next conqueror of Egypt, and when?
- When and where did Alexander die? what was the fate of his empire, and who held Egypt?
- What was the state of Egypt under the Ptolemies?
- Who became the next conquerors of Egypt, and when? what religion did they introduce?
- Who became the next conquerors, and when? what were the consequences?
- When was Egypt conquered by the French?
- When was it conquered by the English, and what was the result?

## COAST OF BARBARY.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the States of Barbary?

A. The States of Barbary extend from the Mediterranean sea on the north ; the desert of Barca on the east ; the Great Desert of Zabara on the south ; and the Atlantic ocean on the west. In extent from east to west about 2000 miles, and of various width from north to south, but generally not exceeding 150 miles.

Q. Which are the principal States?

A. Morocco and Fez on the west ; Algiers and Tunis in the middle ; and Tripoli on the east.

Q. What is the face of the country ?

A. The face of the country is mountainous, excepting near the coast ; but the vallies between the mountains are very fertile.

Q. What are the climate, soil and productions ?

A. The climate, soil, and productions, are much the same as the south of Italy ; the heat of summer is rather more severe.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The chief towns of the kingdom of Morocco, are Morocco and Fez, the capitals, which are large cities, and enjoy some commerce. Mequinez is the largest and most flourishing city ; but Tangier is a place of some trade.

Algiers is the capital of the kingdom of Algiers ; it has a strong and safe port, and enjoys a very considerable trade. Bona is a flourishing commercial port, that is greatly enriched by the coral fishery upon its coast. Constantina is an ancient inland city, noted for its antiquities.

The chief town of Tunis, is Tunis, situated upon the bay of Carthage, and near the ancient capital of that kingdom ; it is a city of some trade.

The chief town of Tripoli, is Tripoli, a rich and flourishing city, that enjoys some considerable commerce.

The Desert of Lybia or Barca, that lies between Tripoli and Egypt, is rendered famous for the expedition of the American general Eaton, in 1805.

Q. What is the state of agriculture and learning ?

A. Their agriculture and learning are both low, owing to their oppressive governments ; they flourish best in Tunis.

Q. What is the general character of the people of Barbary ?

A. The people of Barbary are a tawny race ; hardy and robust in their persons ; good soldiers, and daring, adventurous pirates ; but the women are often fair and handsome.

Q. What are the governments and religion ?

A. The governments are of one character throughout : absolute and despotic, supported by the Mahometan religion. The States of Barbary, like Egypt, are all tributary to the Grand Seignor, and the people are slaves.

Q. What are the animals of Barbary ?

A. The animals are such as are common to the south of Europe ; together with the ass, the camel, and dromedary. In the mountains, are found the tyger, hyena, bear, ape, porcupine, &c.

Q. What bird is peculiar to this region ?

A. The musical sparrow ; it is said to exceed in its note the music of the canary bird ; but it cannot be preserved in any other climate.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of the States of Barbary ?

A. The eastern parts of Barbary were settled by the ancient Numidians ; the middle parts by the Carthagenians ; and the western parts by the Moors or Mauritanians, as early as 10 or 1200 years before Christ. The Carthagenians were the greatest maritime power for several centuries, in which they flourished, and attempted to extend their empire by the conquest of Spain and Italy ; but they were finally conquered by the Romans, and their city and state ruined, about 146 years before Christ.

In the 7th century, the Saracens conquered this country, and established the Mahometan religion ; they crossed over and subdued Spain at the same time, and attempted to subdue France ; but were repelled by Charles Martel, king of France. They retired, and settled themselves in Spain, where they founded a kingdom, that continued 5 or 600 years.

The States of Barbary were next conquered by the Turks, in the 16th century, and have continued to this time tributary to the Grand Seignor at Constantinople.

These states have been the pirates of the Mediterranean for several centuries past, and have carried the vessels and cargoes into their own ports, sold them as good prizes, and delivered their prisoners to the government as slaves. The

---

QUESTIONS.---When and by whom were the States of Barbary first settled ? by whom were they conquered and when ?

When and by whom were they next conquered, and what were the consequences ?

When and by whom were they next conquered ? and to whom are they now tributary ?

Christian powers of Europe, and even America, became tributary to them, by way of presents, to purchase their friendship, or to redeem their property, and prisoners, until the brave general Eaton assembled an army in Egypt, in the year 1805, crossed the desert of Barca, and by the famous victory of Derne, compelled the Bashaw of Tripoli to make peace, and resign up the vessels, with their crews and cargoes, which he had suffered his cruisers to take from the Americans. An American squadron under the command of commodore Preble, bombarded the city of Tripoli at the same time, which was a most powerful means of enforcing the peace with the Bashaw of Tripoli. In the year 1814, the Algerines again captured several American vessels, sold their cargoes, and confined the crews in slavery; but in the year 1815, the American government sent a squadron up the Mediterranean, under commodores Bainbridge and Decatur, that humbled the Dey of Algiers, and compelled him to settle a peace, and deliver up the American property and prisoners, together with those of several European christian powers, then in bondage. Since that time the christian powers have ceased to pay tribute to the Barbary powers.

In the year 1824, Great Britain sent a fleet, and blockaded the ports of Algiers, and compelled the Dey to do justice for the offence which he had committed.

---

What has been their general character?

What American general humbled the Bashaw of Tripoli, and when?

What American naval commanders humbled the Dey of Algiers? when, and for what cause?

What other power has humbled the Dey of Algiers? when, and what has been the result?

## NUBIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Nubia?

A. Nubia is situated between Egypt on the north; the Red sea on the east; Abyssinia on the south; and the Deserts on the west. It is supposed to be about 600 miles square.

Q. How is Nubia divided?

A. Nubia is divided into a great number of independent tribes or kingdoms; the principal of which are, Dongola on the north, and Sennaar on the south.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, productions and climate?

A. The face of the country is an extensive sandy, and rocky desert: the soil is barren, except upon the banks of the Nile, where it is fertilized by irrigation: the principal productions are millet and tobacco, and even these are very



partially cultivated : the climate is very hot, and very unfavorable to longevity, both in man and beast, particularly at, and about Sennaar. Poultry does not live there ; neither dog, cat, sheep, or bullock, can be preserved there through the season ; and no beast of burden will breed at, or about Sennaar ; and no trees but the lemmon flourish near the city.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The chief towns are Dongola, the capital of that tribe ; Derr, the capital of Nubia Proper ; and Sennaar, the capital of Sennaar ; but all these are the abodes of savage tribes, who are without letters and arts, like our Indian villages.

Q. What are the antiquities and curiosities ?

A. The ruins of ancient cities, where are splendid remains of theatres, particularly the temple of Ebsambul, 117 feet wide in front, and 86 feet high, cut out of a solid rock.†

Q. What is the character of these tribes or kingdoms ?

A. The character of Dongola is rude and barbarous ; the people are much like the native Copts of Egypt, and their government is despotic ; but Sennaar is a military despotism of blacks, who subdued the country ; their king is called Melre ; they also are in a savage state.

Q. What is the religion of Nubia ?

A. The religion is Mahometan.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Nubia ?

A. The history of Nubia is lost, and no distinct traces remain. The splendid ancient temples that remain, some of which were excavated from solid rocks, are historical evidence that Nubia was once inhabited by a people who had the arts, and the use of iron, and were devoted to their religion ; but who these people were, and when they flourished, is unknown. The Egyptians were the first people who settled upon the Nile, after the flood ; they became famous for the arts, and it is most probable that they extended their settlements

---

QUESTIONS.---What monuments of antiquity serve to shew that Nubia was once a splendid kingdom, and was coeval with Egypt ? What affinity is there between the ancient temples of Nubia, and the ancient temples of Persia ? what historical facts may be drawn therefrom ?†

---

† There is so striking a resemblance between these excavations, and those of Persia, Hindoostan and Portugal in Europe, as to shew a strong ancient historical connection, and to excite the enquiry ; by what people, and at what age of the world were these works of art constructed ?

into Nubia, and constructed those splendid temples ; and that when their kingdom was conquered by foreigners, the barbarians of the desert overran and destroyed their settlements in Nubia.

### ABYSSINIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Abyssinia ?

A. Abyssinia is situated between Nubia on the north ; the Red sea on the east ; the Mounts of the Moon on the south ; and the kingdom of Darfur on the west. It is about 600 miles square.

Q. What are the face of the country, soil, productions and climate ?

A. The face of the country is mountainous : the soil in the vallies is fertile ; the productions are wheat, millet, and such as are common to Egypt ; bees are extensively cultivated, and honey is a great article of consumption ; their forests abound in almost every variety of trees ; the climate on the high-lands is temperate, but hot in the vallies.

Q. Which are the principal mountains ?

A. The mountains of the Moon extend into Abyssinia, and in the southern borders raise their snow-capped heads above the clouds, and give rise to the majestic river Nile.

Q. How are the seasons divided ?

A. The seasons are divided into wet and dry ; the wet seasons cause the overflowing of the river Nile in Egypt, from the middle of June, to the middle of October, periodically ; but the rains commence in April and end in September.

Q. Which are the chief towns ?

A. The chief towns are Gondar, the capital, with a population of 50,000, who dwell in mud houses, thatched with straw and reeds. Masuah and Adowa, are the most commercial towns. Axum was the ancient capital, but is now in ruins.

Q. What is the character of the Abyssinians ?

A. The Abyssinians, like the Copts of Egypt, are of an olive complexion, and are in a semi-barbarous state, with but few of the arts, and very little knowledge of agriculture. They are corrupt in their manners and morals, and given to great licentiousness. They practice the Jewish rites of circumcision, and the Mahometan indulgence of polygamy, or rather a community of wives.

Q. What is the government of Abyssinia ?

A. The government is despotic. The king is the sole proprietor of the soil ; and barbarous wars are frequent.

Q. What is the commerce ?

A. The commerce of Abyssinia is carried on with the interior, and with foreign countries, and consists principally in the barter of gold dust, ivory, and slaves.

## HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of Abyssinia?

A. The history of Abyssinia is recorded in the ruins of their ancient capital city, Axum. The splendid obelisks of Axum, according to Mr. Bruce, surpass those of Egypt, and show that this was a part of the ancient Ethiopia, where the arts and sciences once flourished; but where they are now in ruins.

## MIDDLE AFRICA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Middle Africa?

A. The situation and extent of Middle Africa are too imperfectly known to be described. The kingdoms or tribes of Darfu, Bornow, Wangara, and Housa, are situated between Abyssinia and Tombuctoo. They are nothing more than so many tribes of savage blacks, without letters and the arts, and with but little agriculture. They all have some commerce with the countries upon the Nile, and with the States of Barbary.

Darfur has Cobbe for its capital, which is the resort of foreign merchants, and often sends abroad into Egypt and the adjacent countries, large caravans for commerce.

The merchants of Fezzan, upon the confines of Tripoli, engross the commerce of the other interior states, principally, and carry their trade into the States of Barbary.

The kingdom of Tombuctoo, has Tombuctoo for its capital, upon the river Niger, which is represented as a large, flourishing, well built city, with an extensive trade to the States of Barbary and Egypt; but Tombuctoo has never been visited by any foreigner who has returned; and all that is known of it, is from vague reports of the natives, which are at best very uncertain.

Mungo Park, the famous traveller, made two attempts to explore this country, but failed in both; in the latter, he was heard from, at Tombuctoo, where he is supposed to have been murdered.

Bambarra is an extensive kingdom, in which the Niger takes its rise, under the mounts of Kong. The natives are a mixture of Moors and Negroes. Sego and Sansanding are its principal towns; the former is said to contain a population of about 30,000; the latter is a place of the greatest trade. Mungo Park explored this kingdom, as far as it extends upon the banks of the Niger; but his sufferings among those savages were very severe, and he could give only an imperfect account of their population, &c.

## EASTERN COAST.

Q. What is the extent of the Eastern Coast, from Cape Guardafui, to the Cape of Good Hope?

A. The distance is about 4000 miles, by the way of the coast.

Q. Which are the principal kingdoms upon this coast?

A. The principal kingdoms are, Adel, Ajan, Zanguebar, Mozambique, Mocaranga, Sofala, and Caffraria, with the Hottentots. (See the Atlas.)

Q. Will you describe the several kingdoms?

A. This can be of little use; they are all in a savage state, with but little agriculture, and few of the arts. In their persons, manners, customs, religion, and government, they so nearly resemble the Nubians and Abyssinians, that the same description answers well for all, excepting the Hottentots, who are the most degraded of all the human species; they are supposed to have no idea of a Supreme Being, or of his providence.

Q. What European nations have settlements upon this coast?

A. The Portuguese took possession of several stations upon the coast, in their early discoveries in the Indian ocean; but they are all small, and of little value. They have derived some advantage from the gold mines of Fura, in the interior of this coast.

## CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of the settlement at the Cape of Good Hope?

A. The situation and extent of this settlement is very limited, and confined almost wholly to Cape Town. This was formerly a Dutch settlement, and was tolerably well built; but it is now possessed by the English. The country around Cape Town is low and barren; but it rises in regular succession, in the back country, until you reach the mountains of Karoo, which are a dreary and barren waste. Between these and the Snowy mountains, is an extent of fine grazing country, from which the settlement at the Cape is supplied with grain, wine, fruits, and cattle. The English claim the territory to an extent of 5 or 600 miles north of the Cape of Good Hope. Population of the whole about 50 or 60,000.

Q. How are the seasons divided?

A. The seasons are divided into cold and hot, or rainy and

dry. In the rainy season, the country is deluged with wet ; and in the dry season, it is parched with drought.

Q. What is the state of agriculture in these settlements ?

A. The state of agriculture is low, because the planters are both ignorant and indolent in the extreme.

### HISTORY.

Q. What is the history of the Cape of Good Hope ?

A. The Cape of Good Hope was known to the Egyptians, and Phœnicians, who circumnavigated the continent of Africa, before the discovery of the mariner's compass ; but it was not known to the Europeans, until the Portuguese commenced their discoveries in the Indian ocean, at the close of the 15th, and beginning of the 16th centuries. The Dutch, from Holland, commenced the settlement of Cape Town, about the close of the 16th century, and held possession until they were dispossessed by the English, in the year 1806, who now hold possession.

## WESTERN AFRICA.

Q. Which are the countries worthy of notice on the Western Coast ?

A. The countries upon the rivers Senegal and Gambia, under the modern term of Senegambia, and Sierra Leone ; Upper and Lower Guinea, and the tribes lying towards the Cape of Good Hope.

### SENEGAMBIA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Senegambia ?

A. Senegambia is situated upon the rivers Senegal and Gambia, and extends from the coast to their sources.

Q. How is Senegambia divided ?

A. It is divided into the kingdoms of Cayor and Walloo, upon the coast ; and Foota-Toro, Foota-Jallo, Manding, Kaarta, Bambouk and Bondou, in the interior.

Q. What are the face of the country, climate, soil, and productions ?

A. The face of the country is sandy and level near the coast ; but it is mountainous in the interior, particularly about the sources of the rivers. The climate is hot upon the coast, but mild in the mountainous regions. The soil is fertile near the rivers, and in the vallies ; and the productions, such as are common to the tropical regions.

Q. What native tribes inhabit Senegambia ?

A. The principal tribes are the Foulahs, Jaloffs, Feeloops, and Mandingoes.

Q. What are the situation and character of these tribes ?

A. The Foulahs are situated in the basin of the Senegal, and extend from the coast far back into the interior ; they are more like the North American Indians, in their form and features, than like the African blacks ; they lead pastoral lives, like the Tartars, and are the most civilized of any of the African tribes.

The Jaloffs dwell upon the coast, and are distinctly Africans in their forms, features, and character.

The Feeloops dwell upon the coast, between Kong mounts and the Gambia ; they are a wild race of negroes.

The Mandingoes are more numerous, and dwell among the mountains, in the interior, about the sources of the Senegal, Gambia, and Niger.

Q. What are the governments and religion of these tribes ?

A. They are under the government of chiefs, or kings, who are absolute ; and all the religion they have is Mahometan.

### SIERRA LEONE.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Sierra Leone ?

A. It is situated upon the coast, a little south of the Lion, or Kong mounts. It was barely a settlement at Freetown, which was established by the British African Society, for the benefit of re-captured slaves, where they might find protection and support. The primary object has been extended, and it is now a flourishing missionary station, for the purpose of civilizing and christianizing all Western Africa ; flourishing schools are established here ; and the present population is about 12,000.

Q. What late improvements have been made upon the Western coast ?

A. The Colonization Society of the United States have commenced a settlement, called Liberia, at the mouth of the river Mesurado, (see the atlas,) for the benefit of free Africans, and such slaves as have been, or may hereafter be emancipated in the United States.

### UPPER GUINEA.

Q. What are the situation and extent of Upper Guinea ?

A. Upper Guinea is situated between the mounts of Kong and the coast ; it is about 1200 miles long and 300 broad (See the Atlas.)

Q. What are the divisions of Upper Guinea ?

A. It is divided into the Slave Coast, Gold Coast, Ivory Coast, and Grain, or Pepper Coast ; because these are the principal articles of traffic under their several divisions.

Q. Which are the principal kingdoms upon this coast ?

A. The principal kingdoms are, Ashantee, Dahomey, and Benin.

Q. What are the situation and character of Ashantee ?

A. It is situated in the interior of the Gold Coast, and extends to the mounts of Kong ; their late ravages upon the coast shew them to be one of the most powerful tribes of Western Africa.

Agriculture and the arts are in great forwardness among the Ashantees ; cotton, rice, and sugar-cane, are among their productions ; and they spin, weave, and dye cotton cloths, of fine texture, and sightly colours ; they have the use of iron and leather, which they manufacture to their wants.

Q. Which is their chief town ?

A. Their chief town is Coomassie, and is supposed to contain a population of 100,000.

Q. What is the government ?

A. The government of Ashantee is despotic, and numerous slaves are buried alive with the king at his death, to attend him beyond the grave.

Q. What are the situation and character of Dahomey and Benin ?

A. Dahomey is situated about the centre, and Benin upon the eastern part of Upper Guinea. Dahomey is next in population and power to Ashantee ; but falls far short of Ashantee in agriculture and arts.

Q. What is the government of Dahomey ?

A. It is one of the most barbarous governments in all Africa ; and the king and people are the most ferocious.

The custom of burying slaves with the king is common in Dahomey, as in Ashantee, and throughout Guinea.

Benin is a small state, but similar in its general character to the States of Ashantee and Dahomey.

## LOWER GUINEA.

Q. What are the situation and character of Lower Guinea ?

A. Lower Guinea is situated upon the coast, between 14 degrees north, and 17 degrees south latitude ; it resembles Upper Guinea in its general character.

Q. What are the divisions of Lower Guinea ?

A. It is divided into Loango, on the north ; Congo and Angola, in the middle ; and Benguela, on the south. (See the atlas.)

Q. What are the climate, soil, and productions of these States?

A. The climate of Loango, Congo, and Angola, is remarkably pure; the soil fertile; and the productions such as are common to the equatorial regions; but the climate of Benguela is peculiar noxious, and fatal to strangers.

Q. What is the general character of these States?

A. Their general character is rude and barbarous; but the three former are more improved than Benguela; yet they are all inhabited by negroes of Guinea.

Q. What Native Tribes are situated between *Lower Guinea* and the *Cape of Good Hope*?

A. The Caffres and Hottentots.

Q. What is the character of these tribes?

A. The Caffres are a numerous, well made, industrious, and intelligent race, and subsist by tilling the ground and raising cattle; they lead pastoral lives; the men raise the cattle, and the women till the ground. They are without letters and the arts, and know but very little of numbers. They are pleasant, social, and friendly, in their habits. They extend across to the Indian ocean, and are not as black as the Hottentots. The Hottentots have been described, a low, filthy race.

### African Isles.

Q. Which are the African Isles?

A. The African Isles are the Azores, or Western Isles, Madeiras, Canaries, Cape de Verdes, with the small isles of St. Matthew, Ascension, Prince's Isles, Fernando Po, St. Thomas, and St. Helena, in the Atlantic ocean.

The Southern Isles are Kerguelen's Land, Amsterdam, St. Paul's, and Tristan de Acunha.

The Eastern Isles are Madagascar, Mauritius, or Isle of France, Bourbon, the Comoro Isles, Socotra, the Almirante, and Mahe Isles.

### AZORES.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Azores?

A. The Azores are situated in the Middle Atlantic, about the latitude of 38 degrees; and are nine in number: they are pleasantly situated, in a mild climate, and abound in delicious



wines, and fruits. A tenth island appeared, from a sub-marine volcanic eruption, in the year 1811, but has since disappeared. This affords strong evidence, together with many other marks of volcanic origin, that the others were produced in the same way. The Azores are, like Ireland, free from venomous reptiles.

## MADEIRAS.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Madeiras ?

A. The Madeiras are situated off the coast of Morocco, about latitude 32 deg. ; and are owned by the Portuguese. Madeira is the principal isle, and gives name to the group ; they enjoy a mild climate, and abound in the tropical fruits. The wine of Madeira is the best in the world.

Q. What is the capital of Madeira ?

A. The capital is Funchal ; a place that enjoys a rich and extensive commerce.

## CANARIES.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Canaries ?

A. The Canaries are situated off the south-west coast of Morocco, in latitude 28 deg. Teneriffe is the principal : they also enjoy a mild climate, and are noted for their excellent wines. The peak of Teneriffe has an elevation of about 13,000 feet above the level of the sea. Santa Cruz is a rich and flourishing capital.

## CAPE DE VERDS.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Cape de Verd Isles ?

A. The Cape de Verds are a group of islands, situated off the coast of Senegambia, in latitude 15 deg. They are inferior to the other isles, both in their climate, soil, and productions ; but abound in salt and hides, which are the principal exports. St. Jago, St. Vincent, and Bonavista, are the principal ; they belong to the Portuguese. Fugo is a small volcanic isle, that belongs to the group. Goree, near the coast, belongs to France.

ST. MATTHEWS, ASCENSION, PRINCE'S ISLE, FERNANDO PO.  
ST. THOMAS, AND ST. HELENA.

Q. What are the situation and character of these isles ?

A. They are small islands of the Atlantic, that are situated off the coast of Africa, between 4 deg. north, and 16 deg.

south latitude. The two first are owned by the Portuguese. Ascension abounds in turtle. The others are of too little note to deserve a description, except St. Helena; this is a barren rock, inaccessible with ships, excepting at the port of Jamestown, and contains a population of about 3000, who are fed by the ships of the East India Company, that touch here on their passage. This island is rendered famous, as the prison of the emperor Napoleon, who was transported here from England in the year 1815, and died in 1821.

### SOUTHERN ISLES.

KERGUELEN'S LAND, AMSTERDAM, OR PRINCE EDWARD'S ISLES,  
ST. PAUL'S, AND TRISTAN DE ACUNHA.

Q. What are the situation and character of these isles?

A. These isles are situated in the South Pacific, between 38 deg. and 40 deg. south latitude. The first is entirely barren; the two next are noted for their seal fishery; and the last is a desolate forest.

### EASTERN ISLES.

MADAGASCAR, MAURITIUS, BOURBON, THE COMORO ISLES, SOCOTRA, ALMIRANTE, AND MAHE ISLES.

Q. What are the situation and character of Madagascar?

A. Madagascar is situated off the eastern coast of Africa, partly under the tropic of Capricorn, and is one of the largest islands in the world. A range of mountains extends through the centre of this island, from north to south, from which it is richly watered, and supplied with minerals.

Q. What are the climate, soil, and productions?

A. The climate is mild, considering its latitude; the soil is remarkably fertile; and it abounds in all the productions of the torrid zone.

Q. What is the population?

A. The population is about 4,000,000.

Q. What is the state of learning, agriculture and manufactures?

A. The state of learning is low among the Malays and Africans; but the Arabians have the use of letters, and the arts, and are making considerable progress in civilization. They have abolished the slave trade.

Q. Which are the chief towns?

A. The chief towns are Tananarive, the capital; Tamatave and Foul Point, the commercial ports; and Port Dauphin, an old French settlement, now in ruins.

Q. What are the situation and character of Mauritius and Bourbon?

A. They are situated east of Madagascar, and are valuable only as places of resort for the India ships; they are both owned by the English at this time. Bourbon is noted for its volcano, which serves as a light-house to this part of the Indian ocean. The principal part of the island is a barren waste; but the remainder is very fertile.

Q. What are the situation and character of the Comoro Isles?

A. The Comoro Isles are a small group that lie north-west of Madagascar; and are rich and fertile, under a fine climate.

Q. What are the situation and character of Almirante and Mahe Isles?

A. These small groups lie north of Madagascar, and are mere rocky barrens, without utility.

Q. What are the situation and character of Socotra?

A. Socotra is situated off point Guardafui, and is noted for its excellent aloes. The Arabians own this island.

---

## ASTRONOMICAL GEOGRAPHY.

Q. What do we understand by Astronomical Geography?

A. The *relation* that the *Earth* bears to the *heavenly bodies*. This may be illustrated in the following manner, viz. the Sun is 1,000,000 times greater than the Earth, and 539 times greater than all the planets of our system, taken collectively. The Earth, and all the other planets of our system, move round the Sun at stated, regular periods, according to their size and distance. (See the table.)

The Earth moves in her orbit round the Sun once in 365 days and 6 hours, nearly, which measures each year. It also revolves round its own axis once in 24 hours, from West to East, which measures each day, and causes the succession of day and night.

Q. What causes winter and summer?

A. The Earth is suspended in the heavens, with the North pole elevated just  $23^{\circ} 28'$  higher than the South pole.† In winter the Earth is directly over the Sun, and the Northern part is turned up from the Sun, and receives but a small part of his heat; but in summer, the Earth is right under the Sun, and

---

† The poles of the Earth are the extremities of its axes, and the axis is an imaginary line that extends through the centre of the Earth, from North to South.

the Northern part is turned up towards that body, and receives an increased quantity of heat.

Q. How many planets belong to our system?

A. Seven Primary Planets, and four Asteroids. See the following system.

*Solar System.*



Q. What are the comparative size, distances, &c. of the primary planets?

A. See the following table :

	Diameter in miles.	Distance from the sun in miles.	Day, or ro- tation on axis.	Year, or revolution round sun.	Hourly motion in orbit
Mercury	3,224	36 millions	unknown <i>hrs. m.</i>	3 months.	111,000
Venus	7,689	86 do.	23 20	7 do.	81,000
Earth	7,928	98 do.	23 56	13 do.	68,000
Mars	4,189	144 do.	24 39	22 do.	56,000
Jupiter	89,170	491 do.	9 55	12 years.	30,000
Saturn	79,042	901 do.	10 16	29 do.	22,000
Herschel	35,112	1800 do.	unknown	83 do.	15,000

Q. What are comets ?

A. They are wandering stars, with bright luminous trains.

(See the plate:)

Q. How many comets have appeared ?

A. About 4 or 500.

Q. What are the periods of their revolutions round the Sun ?

A. From 50 to 500 years.

Q. What is the figure of the EARTH ?

A. The Earth is a *globe* or *sphere*, very nearly, being only 34 miles longer, from east to west, than from north to south.

Q. What evidence have we that the Earth is a globe or sphere ?

A. Because all the other heavenly bodies are globes ; because it casts a circular shadow upon the Moon in an eclipse ; and because it has often been circumnavigated. Also, the higher we are elevated, the further we can see : and we can discover the mast of a ship, at sea, before we can the hull.

Q. What is the length of the Earth's diameter ?

A. About 8000 miles.

Q. What is the Earth's circumference ?

A. About 25,000 miles.

Q. What is the Earth's distance from the Sun ?

A. About 96 millions of miles.

Q. What is the Earth's orbit ?

A. That great circle she describes in her revolution round the Sun.

Q. What is the diameter of this circle or orbit ?

A. About 192 millions of miles.

Q. What is the circumference of this orbit ?

A. About 600 millions of miles.

Q. How many millions of miles does the Earth travel in each month ?

A. About 50,000,000, or 68,000 miles an hour.

Q. What is the Earth's diurnal velocity round her own axis ?

A. About 1000 miles an hour, or 16 miles each minute.

Q. Why is it that men are insensible of these wonderful velocities ?

A. Because they are so perfectly equable.

Q. What would be the effects upon the Earth, if this diurnal motion should cease instantly ?

A. The whole Earth would be convulsed to her centre, and every thing standing upon the Earth would be laid prostrate, and level with the surface. The whole globe would be one universal wreck.

Q. What would be the effects if the Earth's revolution round the Sun should instantly cease?

A. They would be two fold; the whole Earth would become a wreck as before, and she would fall directly into the Sun.

Q. What would be the effects if the velocity of the Earth in her orbit round the Sun, should be diminished one fourth or one half?

A. The Earth would commence a spiral revolution about the Sun, which would bring her into that body.

Q. Suppose the velocity should be increased?

A. The Earth would recede from the Sun in the same manner.

Q. What principal in nature has preserved these equable motions of the Earth for so many thousand years, without the least variation?

A. The attraction of gravitation between the Sun and the Earth, exactly balanced by the Earth's revolution in her orbit.

Q. Why does not the Earth incline to rest?

A. This is beyond the research of man, and must be ascribed to God, who balances the stars, and fixes the destinies of the universe.

Q. What is the form of the Moon?

A. The Moon is a *globe* or *sphere*.

Q. What is the diameter of the Moon?

A. The diameter of the Moon is about 3,180 miles.

Q. What is the circumference of the Moon?

A. About 9,194 miles.

Q. What is the Moon's period in her revolution round the Earth?

A. About 28 days.

Q. How often does the Moon turn on her own axis?

A. The Moon turns on her axis once in each lunation, or from new Moon to new Moon, being 29 1-2 days.

Q. What occasions this difference?

A. The motion of the Earth in her orbit.

Q. How many days has the Moon in her year?

A. Three hundred and fifty-four.

Q. How many lunar months in her year?

A. Twelve and one third.

Q. How far is the Moon distant from the Earth?

A. The distance of the Moon from the Earth is about 240,000 miles.

Q. What is the diameter of her orbit?

A. About 480,000 miles.

Q. What is the circumference of her orbit?

A. About 1,508,571 miles.

Q. How fast does the Moon go in her orbit?

A. About 53,977 miles in a day, 2,249 miles in an hour, and 37 1-2 miles in a minute.

Q. What occasions the changes in the Moon?

A. The changes of the Moon are owing to her different situations in her orbit in reflecting the light of the Sun to the Earth.

Q. Has the Moon any light of her own?

A. The Moon of herself would be invisible.

Q. What part of the Moon is enlightened by the Sun?

A. One half, without any variation.

Q. Why is it that we see so small a part at the change, or new Moon?

A. Because the Moon has passed the Sun but one day, and this is the only luminous part that is turned towards the Earth.

Q. Why could we not see the Moon the day she passed the Sun?

A. Because the whole dark half was turned towards the Earth.

Q. Why do we see one half of the Moon's disk at the first quarter?

A. Because she has performed one fourth of her revolution, and has turned such a part of her luminous disk towards the Earth.

Q. Why do we see the whole of her disk at the full?

A. Because she is in opposition to the Sun, and has turned her whole luminous disk towards the Earth.

Q. Does she decrease through the other half of her orbit upon the same principles?

A. Yes, until she passes the Sun, and becomes new Moon, as before.

Q. Why does the Moon appear at times so far in the North, and again in the South, in every month or revolution?

A. Because the orbit of the Moon is inclined to the plane of the ecliptic, 5 degrees and 9 minutes, so as to cross it at the distance which we see, North and South, twice in each revolution.

Q. What causes an eclipse of the Moon?

A. This is always at the full, when the Earth is between the Sun and Moon, and when the Moon at this time is exactly upon the Earth's orbit, or crossing the ecliptic; it then passes through the shadow of the Earth, which causes an eclipse.

Q. Why does not an eclipse happen at every full Moon?

A. Because the Moon is sometimes North or South of the Earth's orbit, or of the ecliptic, at the full.

Q. What causes an eclipse of the sun?

A. When the Moon passes between the Earth and the Sun.

and is at the same time upon the Earth's orbit, or crossing the ecliptic.

Q. Why do we not see an eclipse of the Sun the day before new Moon every month?

A. Because the Moon is sometimes North or South of the Earth's orbit, or the ecliptic, as before.

Q. Why do not the same eclipses of the Sun and Moon happen every year, at the same time, and the new and full Moon take place on the same days, in each year, successively?

A. Because the Moon revolves about the Earth about eleven days in each year, before the Earth completes her yearly revolution round the Sun; and this gain of eleven days, in each year, changes the time of her phases.

Q. What other effect is produced from this gain of eleven days?

A. In 18 years and 11 hours, she gains one whole revolution, and begins a-new, at the same point, which is called the cycle of the Moon.

Q. When are the Sun and Moon said to be in conjunction, and in opposition?

A. In conjunction, on the day before every new Moon; and in opposition, on every full Moon.

Q. What influence has the Moon upon the Earth?

A. It causes the ebbing and flowing of the sea, called tides.

Q. How often do the tides rise?

A. Twice in each day, or in about 25 hours.

Q. When do the tides rise?

A. In places nearly under the Moon, or rather when she has passed about three hours, and upon the opposite side of the Earth, at the same time.

Q. Why do the tides rise after the Moon has passed?

A. Because the waters do not flow as fast as the Moon travels in her orbit.

Q. What variation is common to the tides?

A. There are two variations, called spring tides and neap tides, or high and low tides.

Q. What occasions this difference?

A. The attraction of the Sun and Moon, united.

Q. When are the spring tides?

A. When the Sun and Moon are in conjunction, as at the new Moon, or when in opposition, as at the full Moon.

Q. When are the neap tides?

A. When the Moon is in her quarters.

Q. How high do the tides rise?

A. The tides rise from 10 to 50 or 60 feet.



## Geographical Definitions.

### PREPARATORY TO THE USE OF THE GLOBES.

- Q. What is a right line ?  
 A. The shortest distance between two points ?
- Q. What is a curve line ?  
 A. A line drawn between two points with a uniformly varying direction ?
- Q. What are parallel lines ?  
 A. Lines drawn equally distant from each other.
- Q. What are oblique lines ?  
 A. Lines that approach or recede from each other.
- Q. What is a perpendicular line ?  
 A. A line drawn perfectly erect upon a given plane.
- Q. What is a tangent ?  
 A. A line so drawn as to touch the surface, or periphery of a curve or circle, without cutting it.
- Q. What is an angle ?  
 A. It is the opening of two lines that meet at a point.
- Q. What is a right angle ?  
 A. The point where two lines meet that are perpendicular to each other.
- Q. What is an oblique angle ?  
 A. That which is greater or less than a right angle. If greater, it is called obtuse angle ; but if less, it is called acute angle.
- Q. What is a circle ?  
 A. A line drawn round a centre until it meets.
- Q. What is this line mathematically termed ?  
 A. The periphery of the circle.
- Q. What is the space within the line termed ?  
 A. The area, or plane.
- Q. How are circles mathematically divided ?  
 A. A circle contains 360 degrees, each degree contains 60 minutes, and each minute 60 seconds, marked thus,  $360^{\circ} 60' 60''$ .
- Q. What is the diameter of a circle ?  
 A. A right line drawn through its centre.
- Q. What is a semi-diameter, or radius ?  
 A. A right line drawn from the centre to the periphery.
- Q. What is a semi-circle ?  
 A. It is half the circumference.
- Q. What is a quadrant ?  
 A. It is one fourth of the circumference.
- Q. What is an arc or arch of a circle ?  
 A. Any part of a circle less than the whole.
- Q. How are angles measured ?  
 A. Upon the arch of a circle ?
- Q. What are the contents of a right angle ?  
 A. Ninety degrees.

# DEFINITIONS.

## OF THE GLOBES.

Q. What is an artificial Globe or Sphere?

A. Any round body whose surface is equally distant from its centre; half a globe is termed a hemisphere.

Q. What are artificial globes or spheres made to represent?

A. The heavens and the earth; the first is termed Celestial, and the second Terrestrial.

Q. How does the Terrestrial globe represent the Earth?

A. By shewing its form, natural divisions of land and water, and face of all the several countries, mountains, rivers, &c.

Q. How does the Celestial globe represent the Heavens?

A. By showing the apparent situation of all the heavenly bodies, and their relative distances, &c.: and the figures or constellations into which they were divided or arranged by the ancients.

Q. How are these globes divided?

A. They are divided into the following parts, viz.—The axis of the earth, or the imaginary line, upon which it revolves once in 24 hours; this, when extended to the heavens, becomes the axis of the celestial globe, and terminates at the two pole stars, north and south.

The sun, and other heavenly bodies, are supposed to describe several circles round the earth, in her annual, and diurnal revolutions.

Q. How are these circles divided?

A. Into Great and Lesser Circles, viz. those that divide the earth into equal parts are called Great Circles; such as the Equator, or Equinoctial, the Horizon, the Meridians, the Ecliptic, and the two Colures.

Q. How are these circles described?

A. The equator passes round the centre of the earth, from east to west, and divides it into two equal parts, termed the northern and southern *hemispheres*; when the sun passes this line, the days and nights are equal. This line is divided into 180 degrees, or equal parts, which measure the degrees of longitude, east or west from London, or any other given meridian.

Q. What is the Horizon, and how is it divided?

A. The horizon is divided into two parts, the *rational* and *sensible*. The Rational horizon encircles the Earth, from north to south, and divides it through the poles, into two equal parts, termed the upper and lower hemispheres. It is also divided into four equal parts, of 90 degrees each, termed the cardinal points, viz. East, West, North, and South; these are sub divided into 32 intermediate points.

Q. What other points belong to the Rational horizon?

A. The poles of the horizon, which are the extremities of a line drawn perpendicularly through its centre; they are also termed Zenith and Nadir, in allusion to one being right over the earth, and the other right under it.

Q. How is the rational horizon represented upon the artificial globe?

A. By a *broad wooden circle*, upon which the globe is suspended. Upon this circle are represented the 32 points of the compass; the 12 signs of the Zodiac, divided into 30 degrees each; the several months of the year, with the days of each to correspond with the 12 signs.

Q. What is the Sensible horizon?

A. That circle that terminates our view, wherever we are, and upon which the heavens and the earth appear to meet.

Q. How are the Meridians drawn upon the earth ?

A. They are 12 in number, drawn from north to south, through the poles, at the distance of 15 degrees each, because the sun passes through 15 degrees each hour, which completes the whole circle of 360 degrees once in 24 hours, or each day.

Q. What is the Ecliptic ?

A. It is a great circle drawn round the earth obliquely to the equator, and shews the course of the earth in her annual revolutions round the sun.

Q. How is it divided, and why is it called Ecliptic ?

A. It is divided into 12 equal parts, called signs, of 30 degrees each : and is called ecliptic, because the eclipse of the sun and moon necessarily happen when the moon is upon or very near to it.

Q. What is the Zodiac ?

A. That space in the heavens, 16 degrees wide, or 8 degrees upon each side of the ecliptic, which contains all the stars that form the 12 signs, or constellations, and through which space all the planets of our system appear to describe their revolutions.

Q. What are the 12 signs called, how are they expressed, and when does the sun enter them ?

A. See the following table :

1. Aries $\varphi$ ,	or the Ram ;	March 20th.
2. Taurus $\beta$ ,	the Bull ;	April 20th.
3. Gemini $\text{II}$ ,	the Twins ;	May 21st.
4. Cancer $\text{♋}$ ,	the Crab ;	June 21st.
5. Leo $\text{♌}$ ,	the Lion ;	July 23d.
6. Virgo $\text{♍}$ ,	the Virgin ;	August 23d.
7. Libra $\text{♎}$ ,	the Balance ;	September 23d.
8. Scorpio $\text{♏}$ ,	the Scorpion ;	October 23d.
9. Sagittarius $\text{♐}$ ,	the Archer ;	November 22d.
10. Capricornus $\text{♑}$ ,	the Goat ;	December 22d.
11. Aquarius $\text{♒}$ ,	the Waterman ;	January 20th.
12. Pisces $\text{♓}$ ,	the Fishes ;	February 19th.

The first six are called the *northern signs*, and the six last *southern* : and are formed by twelve clusters of fixed stars, through which the sun appears to pass in his annual course.

Q. Which are the other great circles ?

A. They are two meridians drawn only in the heavens, or upon the celestial globe, termed Colures ; one passing through the signs Aries and Libra, called the equinoctial colure ; and the other passing through the signs Capricorn and Cancer, and called the solstitial colure.

Q. Which are the Lesser Circles, how are they described, and what are they called ?

A. The two tropics, and two polar circles. The two first are described 23 degrees 30 minutes north and south from the equator, and are called the tropic of Cancer and the tropic of Capricorn, because they pass through those signs of the Zodiac. The two others, 23 degrees 30 minutes from the north and south poles, are called polar circles, or Arctic and Antarctic ; because the first or northern passes through the constellation, Arctus or Arcturus, or the bear, and the other is its opposite in the southern hemisphere.

Q. How is time measured upon the globe ?

A. By degrees, as before mentioned : and by an index graduated upon a circle round the north pole.

Q. How are *distances* measured upon the globe?

A. By a thin slip of brass, graduated up to 90 degrees, corresponding with the degrees graduated upon the equator: this extended upon the globe will shew the distance of places in degrees, which multiplied by 60, will shew the mathematical miles, or 69 1-2, will shew the geographical miles, according to the number of miles in each degree where the distance is taken.

Q. What is latitude, and how many degrees of latitude are there upon the globe?

A. Latitude is any given distance from the equator, north or south. There are 90 degrees of latitude.

Q. What is longitude, and how many degrees of longitude are measured upon the globe?

A. Longitude is any distance, east or west, from a given meridian; and there are 180 degrees of longitude measured upon the globe, viz. 180 degrees east, and 180 degrees west longitude; which include all the degrees of a circle, viz. 360 degrees.

Q. How is the temperature of the earth generally divided?

A. Into five zones, one *torrid* or *burning* zone, lying between the tropics, and divided into northern and southern, by the equator: two *temperate* or *moderate* zones, which lie between the two tropics and polar circles; and two *frigid* or *frozen* zones, that lie between the two polar circles and the poles.

Q. In which of these zones is the sun vertical, and when?

A. The sun is vertical, or right over all parts of the torrid zone, twice in each year, viz. in passing from north to south, and in returning.

Q. Why are these circles called zones?

A. Because they encircle the earth like so many belts, or girdles, which is the meaning of the word zone.

Q. What is a *climate*?

A. A climate is any distance north or south of the equator, that increases the length of a day half an hour.

Q. Does the breadth of the climates decrease from the equator to the poles?

Yes: the first climate from the equator is eight degrees broad; but the last climate at the poles does not exceed four miles.

Q. What other meaning is affixed to this word?

A. Climate is used to express difference of temperature, in the air in different latitudes and places, as a hot or warm climate, cold climate, or a mild and temperate climate.

## PROBLEMS ON THE TERRESTRIAL GLOBE.

PROBLEM I.—*To find the latitude of any place or places on the Globe.*

Turn the Globe until the place sought comes under the brazen meridian; and the graduated number upon the meridian over the place, will shew its latitude, either North or South.

*Examples.*—What is the latitude of Hartford?—Boston?—London? and all the capitals in the world.

**PROBLEM II.**—*To find the Longitude of any place.*

Turn the Globe until the place sought comes under the meridian, and the point where the meridian crosses the Equator is the Longitude East or West; this will give both the Latitude and Longitude.

*Ex.*—What is the Longitude of Washington?—London?—Petersburg, &c.?

**PROBLEM III.**—*To find the difference of Latitude between any two places.*

Find the Latitude of each place as before, and if both are North or South of the Equator, subtract the Lesser from the Greater, and the remainder is the difference; if one is North and the other South, add the two sums, and the amount is the difference of Latitude.

*Ex.*—What is the difference of Latitude between Boston and Washington?—between Cape Horn and Cape of Good Hope, &c.?

**PROBLEM IV.**—*To find the difference of Longitude of any two places.*

Find the Longitude of each place as before, and the distance between them is the difference of Longitude in degrees and minutes.

*Ex.*—What is the difference of Longitude between New York and London?

**PROBLEM V.**—*To find any place whose Latitude and Longitude is given.*

Find the Longitude of the place as before, and the graduated edge of the meridian will shew the place under the degree of Latitude.

**PROBLEM VI.**—*To find the distance of any two places on the Globe.*

Lay the quadrant of altitude across both, and the graduated edge will shew the distance in degrees; this multiplied by 69.1-2 will give the distance in geographical miles.

*NOTE.*—*This rule is correct upon the Equator, but varies from thence to the poles: at 60° the difference is one half, a degree being only thirty miles. (See the table)*

**PROBLEM VII.**—*To find the exact difference of time between any two places.*

Bring one of the places to the brazen meridian, and set the index at 12—turn the other place to the meridian, and the index will shew the correspondent time.

*Ex.*—When is it 12 o'clock at Philadelphia?—what is the correspondent time at London?—What time at Petersburg is answerable to 9 o'clock at Pekin?—What time at Calcutta is answerable to 12 o'clock at Mexico, &c.?—What is the difference of time between Constantinople and Paris?

*NOTE.*—*This may be found by dividing the difference of Longitude by 15.*

**PROBLEM VIII.**—*To rectify the Globe for any given Longitude, Zenith, and place of the Sun in the Zodiac.*

1st, Lat.—Elevate the pole to the Latitude required. 2d, Zenith—Upon the same Latitude on the top of the Globe, fix the quadrant of

altitude to the meridian. 3d, The Sun's place--Find this upon the horizon among the signs and months--look the same sign in the ecliptic, and bring it to the meridian, and set the index at 12 at noon.

*Ex.*---Rectify the Globe for the Latitude of London on the 20th of March, Boston the 20th of September, Calcutta the 20th of June, and Jerusalem the 20th of December.

**PROBLEM IX.**---*To find at what hour of the day the Sun rises and sets on any day of the year, and what point of the compass.*

Rectify the Globe as before, in Problem VIII. for the Latitude and place of the Sun; turn the Sun's place to the Eastern horizon, and the index will shew the time of rising; turn the Sun's place to the Western horizon, and the Index will shew the time of setting.

*Ex.*---When does the Sun rise and set at Hartford on the 20th of March?---20th of June?---20th of August?---When does it rise and set on the same days at London, Petersburg, Constantinople, and Cairo?

**PROBLEM X.**---*To find the length of the day and night at any time of the year.*

Find the Sun's rising and setting as before, then double the time of his rising gives the night, and double the time of his setting gives the length of the day.

*Ex.*---What is the length of the days and nights at London on the 21st of June, and 21st March?---What is the length of the days and nights at Moscow, Delhi, and Canton, for the same time.

**PROBLEM XI** ---*To find the Sun's declination upon any given day of the year, and all those places where the Sun will be vertical on the meridian of that day*

Bring the Sun's place on the ecliptic to the meridian, and the degree of Latitude is the declination. The Sun will be vertical to all places upon the same parallel of Latitude.

*Ex.*---What is the declination of the Sun on the 1st of May, 11th of June, 5th of September, and 21st of December, and to what places will he be vertical on each of those days?---Which two days in each year will the Sun be vertical on the North side of the island of Cuba, and on the southern part of Madagascar?

**PROBLEM XII.**---*To find when the Sun is vertical at any given time and place.*

Find the declination as before; elevate the pole to that latitude, and bring the place sought to the meridian, and set the index at 12 at noon: turn the Globe until the index points to the given hour, and the place sought will be under the brazen meridian upon the parallel of declination.

*Ex.*---When it is 12 o'clock at Boston on the 20th June, where will the Sun be vertical? On the 20th of September, where will the Sun be vertical when it is 6 o'clock at London? At 9 o'clock at Canton on the 21st of December, where will the Sun be then vertical?

**PROBLEM XIII.**---*The day and hour being given to find when the Sun is then rising and setting, and where it is noon, and where it is midnight.*

Find where the Sun is vertical, as before, at the given time, bring that place to the meridian, and rectify the Globe to the Sun's declina-

tion. the Sun is then rising to all places under the edge of the western horizon, and setting at all places under the edge of the eastern horizon. It is noon to all places under the upper meridian, and midnight to all places under the lower meridian.

## MAPS.

Q. What is a Map and how does it differ from the Globe?

A. A Map represents upon a plane a certain portion of the surface of the earth; and a Globe represents a part or the whole in its true form.

Q. How are latitudes and longitudes measured upon Maps?

A. The same as upon the Globe; Latitude is measured upon the sides of Maps, up and down, from the Equator; and Longitude is measured on the top and bottom, the same as upon the Equator on the Globe. If the figures increase to the right, the Longitude is East; but if they increase to the left, it is West. The top of all Maps is North, and the bottom South; the right hand East, and the left hand West.

Q. How are Maps divided?

A. By parallels of latitude, and meridional lines of longitude; the same as the Globes.

Q. How are distances measured upon Maps?

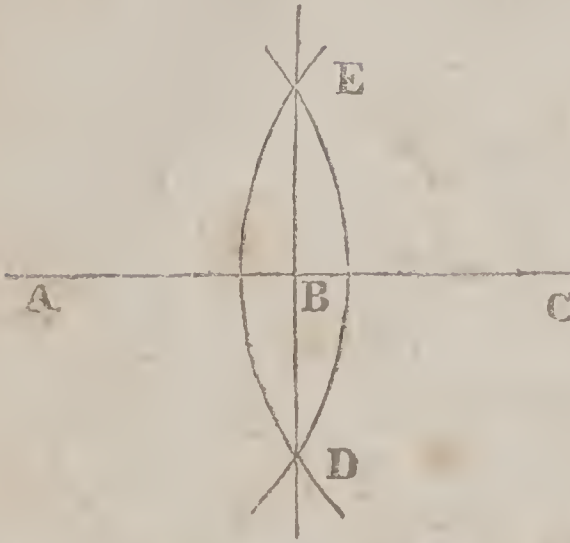
A. Generally by a scale of miles, laid down upon one corner of the Map; but distances may be calculated by degrees, the same as upon the Globe, viz. if the distance is due East and West, the difference of longitude, in degrees and miles, will be the true distances; [see the table of degrees and miles.] The same is true of latitude; if the place be due North and South from each other, the difference of latitude, in degrees and miles, will be the true difference; but if two places differ in latitude and longitude, first find the square of the true difference of longitude in miles, according to the table, and then the square of the true difference of latitude, in miles; add them together, the square root of the sum is the true distance, according to the Pythagorian problem.†

---

† Children that are unacquainted with the regular process of extracting the square root, will soon learn to solve these questions, by assuming some number, which, when multiplied into itself, will give the sum stated: for instance, the sum stated or to be solved, is 100, the distance is then 10, because this is the square root of 100, and when multiplied into itself gives that sum—20 is the square root of 400, and 32 of 1000, sufficiently near for such calculations. Teachers that will practice this method will soon find it interesting and useful.

## PROBLEMS.

PROBLEM I.—(Fig. 1.)—To divide a line ( $A C$ ) into two equal parts.  
Fig 1.

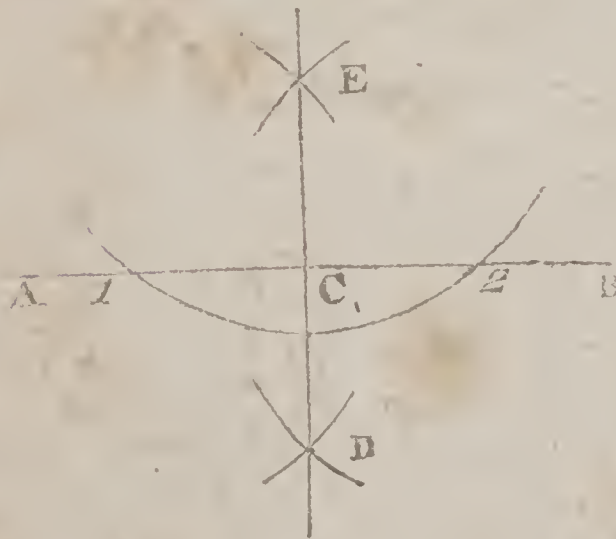


1. From the points  $A$  and  $C$  as centres, with any distances in the compasses greater than half  $A C$ , draw arcs of circles, cutting each other in  $D$  and  $E$ .

2. Through the points  $D$  and  $E$  draw the line  $E D$ , and it will cut  $A C$  in the middle of the line, or divide it into two equal parts,  $A B$  and  $B C$ .

3. The same process erects the perpendicular  $B E$ , or lets fall the perpendicular  $B D$ .

PROBLEM II.—(Fig. 2.)—From a given point ( $E$ ), to let fall a perpendicular on a given line ( $A B$ ).  
Fig 2.



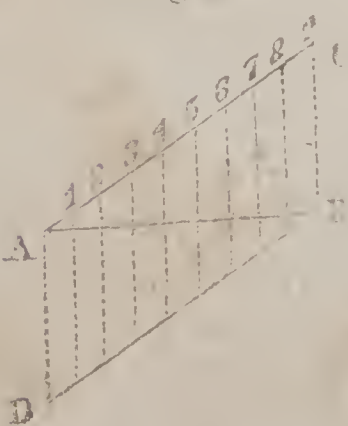
1. From the point  $E$  draw a part of a circle  $1 2$ , cutting  $A B$  in the points  $1$  and  $2$ .

2. From these points describe the two arcs cutting each other in  $D$  and  $E$ .

3. Draw a line joining these two points, and it will be perpendicular to the line  $A B$ .

*Note.*—The same process erects the perpendicular  $C E$ , or lets fall the perpendicular  $C D$ .

PROBLEM III.—(Fig. 3.)—To divide a straight line ( $A B$ ) into any number of equal parts.  
Fig. 3.



1. Take any distance in your compasses and draw arcs of circles from  $A$  and  $B$ .

2. Draw two lines  $A C$  and  $B D$ , from these points  $A$  and  $B$ , touching these circles, and they will be parallel lines.

3. Take any small distance in your compasses and set it off upon the line  $A C$  as many times as the number of divisions required. Set off the same distance on the line  $B D$ .

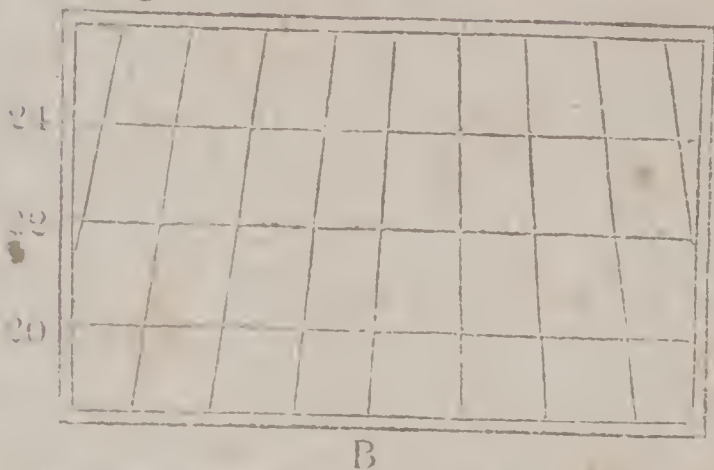
4. Join the division of these two lines by other lines, as at  $A$ ,  $1$ ,  $2$ ,  $3$ , &c. and they will divide the line  $A B$  into the equal parts required.



RULES FOR CONSTRUCTION.

1.—To construct a Map of a Country on a Plain Projection.

Fig. 4. A



1. Construct a scale of degrees agreeable to the size of the proposed map, and lay down lines for the bottom and top of the map.

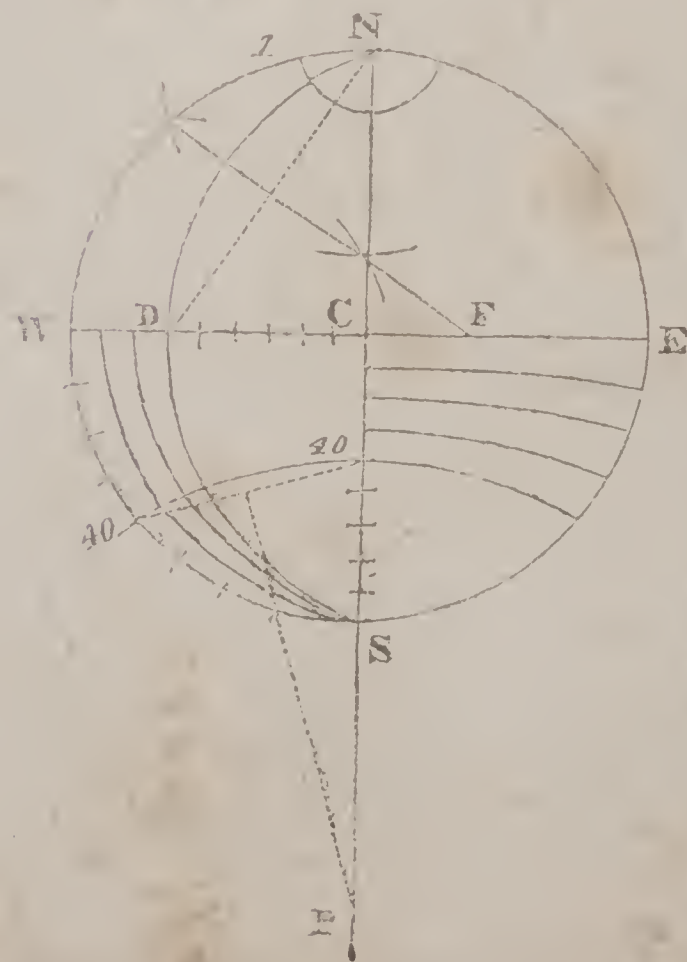
2. Erect the perpendicular A B as the first meridian, to terminate at the line bounding the top of the map: divide this meridian into 4 equal parts by the parallels 20, 22, 24.

3. From the table of degrees and miles, find the length of a degree of longitude upon the parallels 20, 24; set them off upon their parallels with your compasses, each way from the first meridian, and draw the remainder of the meridians through these points.

4. Proceed to construct your map, by laying down first the most important places in their true latitude and longitude, and then by connecting them in proper form.

21.—To construct a Map of a Hemisphere by a Globular Projection on the plane of a meridian.

Fig. 5.



1. Draw the circle E W, N S, and draw the diameters N S, E W, to intersect each other at right angles at C, with accuracy.

2. Divide C W and C S into nine equal parts each, or 90 degrees. Divide the arcs W S in the same manner, and number the distances thus, 10, 20, 30, 40, &c. up to 90.

3. Find the centre of the meridian by drawing the line D N, and bisecting it with a perpendicular that will cut the line E at G, and the point F will be the centre of the meridian N D S. The same process will find the centres of all the other meridians.

4. Find the centres for the parallels of latitude upon an extended line of N S by the same rule.—(See the figure.)

5. Draw a line through the points 40 40, and bisect it with a perpendicular that will cut the line N S, extended in P, and this will be the centre from which to describe the parallel 40 40. Proceed in this way to find the centres, and describe all the other parallels of latitude.

## TABLE

OF THE LENGTH OF ONE DEGREE OF LONGITUDE FOR EVERY DEGREE OF LATITUDE, IN GEOGRAPHICAL MILES.

<i>Lat.</i>	<i>Miles.</i>	<i>Lat.</i>	<i>Miles.</i>	<i>Lat.</i>	<i>Miles.</i>	<i>Lat.</i>	<i>Miles.</i>
1	59,99	24	54,81	47	41,00	69	21,51
2	59,96	25	54,38	48	40,15	70	20,52
3	59,92	26	54,00	49	39,36	71	19,54
4	59,85	27	53,46	50	38,57	72	18,55
5	59,77	28	53,00	51	37,76	73	17,54
6	59,67	29	52,48	52	37,05	74	16,53
7	59,55	30	51,96	53	36,11	75	15,52
8	59,42	31	51,43	54	35,27	76	14,51
9	59,26	32	50,88	55	34,41	77	13,50
10	59,09	33	50,32	56	33,55	78	12,48
11	58,89	34	49,74	57	32,68	79	11,45
12	58,69	35	49,15	58	31,70	80	10,42
13	58,46	36	48,54	59	30,90	81	9,38
14	58,22	37	47,92	60	30,00	82	8,35
15	58,00	38	47,28	61	29,09	83	7,32
16	57,60	39	46,62	62	28,17	84	6,28
17	57,30	40	46,00	63	27,24	85	5,23
18	57,04	41	45,28	64	26,30	86	4,18
19	56,73	42	44,95	65	25,36	87	3,14
20	56,38	43	43,88	66	24,40	88	2,09
21	56,00	44	43,16	67	23,45	89	1,05
22	55,63	45	42,43	68	22,48	90	
23	55,23	46	41,68				

## QUESTIONS ON THE MAPS.

### *Questions on the Map of the World.*

What is the figure of the earth? What are its dimensions? What are the grand divisions of the earth ---the grand divisions of the land, and how situated? ---the grand divisions of the water, and how situated? What are the next grand divisions of the land? How do they correspond with the divisions of the water? What are the dimensions of the several grand divisions of the earth?

What is a map? How does it differ from a globe? Which part of the map is North? East? South? West? What are these four points called? What are the whole number of points? What is the eastern map of the world called --the western called? How is that part north of the equator distinguished? How is that part south of the equator distinguished? Which hemisphere contains the most land:---the most water?---the largest islands?---the greatest number of islands: Which hemisphere contains the largest continent? How is the eastern continent bounded? How is the western? How is New Holland situated? Where is Australasia? Where is Polynesia, and which are the principal islands? Which are the principal capes of the eastern continent: seas? bays? Which of the western. Which oceans surround the eastern continent -- which the western continent? Which are the principal islands of the eastern continent: -- which of the western continent? Which are the grand divisions of the eastern continent? -how are they connected? Which are the grand divisions of the western continent? -how are they connected?

Where are Beering's straits? Baffins' bay: Davis' straits? Cape Horn? Cape St. Roque? Gulf of Mexico? Fox Islands? West Indies? Newfoundland? Hudson's bay: Cape Cod? California? Alaska? Cuba? Straits of Magellan? Ithmus of Darien? Greenland? Queen Charlotte's Island? Iceland? Where is the Cape of Good Hope? North Cape: Kamskatka? Cape Comorin? Straits of Babelmandel?---of the Dardanelos? Island of Madagascar? Japan? Baltic Sea? Red Sea? Nova Zembla? British Isles? Mediterranean sea? Caspian sea? Gulf of Venice? Straits of Gibraltar? Where are the isles called Azores? Madeiras? St Helena? Borneo? New Guinea: Ceylon? Where is the sea of Okotsk? Gulf of Corea? Persian Gulf?

What is the latitude of China? What country in North America corresponds in latitude? What is the latitude of New England? What countries in Europe and Asia answer to this latitude? What is the latitude of Sumatra and Borneo? What parts of North America and Asia correspond? Which is most southerly, Cape Horn, the Cape

of Good Hope. or Van Dieman's Land? What parts of Europe and America correspond in latitude with the Caspian Sea?—what parts correspond with Syria and the Japan Isles? What sea in America corresponds with the Arabian sea and gulf of Bengal? Where is Nootka? Where is Otaheite?—what cluster of islands does it belong to, and which way is it from New Zealand? Which are the principal of the Sandwich Isles?—for what is it famous?— which way does it lie from Queen Charlotte's Isles? Where are the Bahama Isles?

*Let the Instructor extend these Questions upon the Map of the World, as occasion may require.*

### *Questions on the Map of North America.*

What connection has Greenland with North America? Which is more southerly, Repulse bay or James' Bay? What lake gives rise to Mackenzie's river? What river flows from the west into the Lake of the Hills? What river flows from Lake Winnipeg into Hudson's bay? What river flows out of Black Bear Lake into Hudson bay? Which is more northerly, Canada or New Britain?—more easterly, New South Wales or Labrador?— more northerly, Hudson's straits or Baffin's bay?—more easterly, Baffin's straits or Davis' straits? What lakes divide Upper Canada from the U. States? What river discharges these lakes into the ocean? How does the Canada line divide these lakes? Which of the great lakes lie within the U. States? Which are the four great rivers of North America that rise in the high lands, and flow in opposite directions? How far do the tide waters extend up the St. Lawrence? What islands are in the gulf of St. Lawrence? What bay lies between Nova Scotia and New England? Which is the most northerly, Halifax or Lewisburg?—more easterly, Newfoundland or Anticosti?—more northerly, New England or New Brunswick?—more easterly, the St. Lawrence or Mississippi rivers?—which is the largest of the two? What river bounds Louisiana on the east?—on the west? Which is the more southerly, Mexico or Florida?—more westerly, New Mexico or California? What isthmus unites N. and S. America? What gulf lies between these two divisions?

### *Questions on the Map of the United States.*

How are the United States bounded? What are the grand divisions of the United States?— what is their capital?—which is the most northerly?—name them in their order, with their capitals, and the rivers on which they stand. Which are the principal rivers in the U. States? Which river is more northerly, the Potomac or Hudson?—more easterly, the Connecticut or Susquehannah?—more northerly the Delaware or James river? What great rivers falls into the Chesapeake bay? Which is more northerly, Pamlico sound or Delaware bay? Which are the principal rivers of North Carolina—South Carolina—Georgia? Where are Niagara falls what is their height, and how far can they be heard? Through what States do the Allegany mountains extend?—where do they terminate on the north and south? Where is the Blue Ridge? Where are the Muscle Shoals? Which is more northerly, the Tennessee or Illinois? Which is the largest of

the U. States?—which is the smallest? Through what States does the river Connecticut run? What States are washed by the Ohio river? In which State does the Tennessee rise?—through what State does it run, and where does it empty? What mountains intersect the State of Tennessee? What two rivers rise under the White Hills, and flow north and south, the one into the St. Lawrence at Quebec, and the other into Casco bay? Which are the principal rivers in Louisiana?—which are the principal settlements? What two rivers water the State of Tennessee? On what river does Pensacola stand? How is Boston situated? How is New York? Philadelphia? Washington? Where are Detroit and Michillmackinac situated? Where is Sackets harbour? How is New Orleans situated? Where is Perdido river, and what boundary does it form? What two rivers at their junction, commence the Ohio? Near what lake does the river Illinois take its rise? Where and what distance does the great canal of New York extend? How will this connect the waters of the Mississippi with the Hudson?

*Questions on the Map of South America.*

On which coast of South America is Peru—Guiana—Brazil—Chili—Cayenne? Where is Buenos-Ayres? Where are the settlements of the Natives? What is the latitude of Cape Horn?—the latitude of Cape De la Vela? Which is more northerly, Porto Bello or Parama? more southerly, Lima or Quito? more easterly, Maracaibo or Carthagena? more southerly, Caraccas or Buenos Ayres? Which is the largest river, Oronoco, Amazon, or La Plata? What range of mountains give rise to these rivers?—what ocean do they fall into?—which falls under the equator? What kingdom is bounded west by a line drawn from the mouth of the Amazon to the La Plata? What settlements lie between the Amazon and Orinoco? Where is Cape Negrillos? Cape Blanco? Where is the widest part of South America?

*Questions on the Map of Europe.*

Which is more northerly, England or Scotland? What direction is Ireland with Scotland, and how separated?—France from England, and how separated?—Spain and Portugal from France, and how divided? Italy and Switzerland from France, and how divided? Germany from Italy? Which is more westerly, Germany or Holland? more easterly, Holland or Hungary? more northerly, Hungary or Russia? more southerly, Poland or Turkey? more northerly, Denmark, or Norway and Sweden? more southerly, the Baltic or Mediterranean? What strait connect these two seas with the ocean? What direction is Petersburg from London? Madrid from Paris? Paris from Rome? from Vienna? from Berlin? from Copenhagen? from Stockholm? from Warsaw? from Moscow? What are their distances when computed upon the map? Which are more northerly, the White sea or Marmora? more easterly, the Adriatic or sea of Azoph? Where is the Crimea? Morea? the Naze? Lizzard? Where are the Capes of Wrath? Clear? North Cape? Finisterre? Which are the great commercial ports of England? France? Spain? Portugal? Holland? Germany? Denmark? Sweden? Prussia? Russia? Turkey? Which is more northerly, the Archipelago or Black Sea? Which is the

Highest mountain in Europe? the greatest volcano? and which are the three principal volcanoes? On which of the great rivers are the capitals of two kingdoms situated, and where does it empty? What direction is Hanover from Vienna? Of what is Prague the capital? of what is Breslau the capital? Where is Tokay, and what is it famous for? How is Amsterdam built - how is it situated? How is Venice built? how is it situated? How is Naples situated? What is its appearance from the bay? How are Copenhagen, Stockholm, and Petersburg situated? and how with regard to each other? Where is Mont Blanc? the Ural mountains? the Pyrenees? the Carpathian mountains? the Appenines? Where is lake Ladoga? Onega? Constance? Geneva? Where is the river Wolga? Danube? Vistula? Oder? Thames? Tiber? Seine? Rhine? Tagus? Forth? Shannon? Which are the European isles? name them generally? Where is Corsica, and for what is it famous? Where is Elba, and for what is it famous? Where is Spitzbergen? Iceland? Nova Zembla? Shetland? Orkneys? Rhodes? Malta? Where is the Maclstrom, and what is it? Where is Gibraltar, and what is it? Where are Aland and Gothland?

### *Questions on the Map of Asia.*

How is Asia divided from Europe? from Africa? What oceans wash the shores of Asia? What are the grand divisions of Asia? the capital of each, and the river it stands on? Where is mount Caucasus? Ararat? Taurus, and how far does it extend? the two Gauts? the Altain chain, and its extent? Where is the river Euphrates? Tigris? Indus? Ganges? Hoang-Ho? Burrampooter? Amour? Sihon? Jihon? Ob or Oby? Where is the gulf of Persia? Ormus? Siam? Tonquin? the Caspian sea? Red sea? the straits of Malacca? of Sunda? of Nankin? of Bengal? the sea of Celebes? of Kamskatka? Where is Hindoostan? Kamskatka? Cambodia? Malacca? Corea? What islands are in the Archipelago? in the Levant? in the Indian ocean? in the bay of Bengal? in the Eastern Archipelago? in the Pacific between Asia and America? in the bay of Canton? in the South Pacific? Where is cape Comorin? cape Tamour? Van Dieman? Lopatka? What isthmus joins Asia to Africa? Where is Pekin? the Chinese wall? what is its length? Where is Astracan? Tobolsk? Irkustk? Canton? Where is Calcutta? Bombay? Samercand? Delhi? Mecca? Medina? Lassa? Ispahan? Pegu? Siam? Goa? Where are Beering's straits? Beering's island? Where are the isles of Faroe? the Kurile isles? the isle of St. Jonas? Which is more northerly, cape Tamour or cape Comorin? Where is the sea of Okotsk? the Yellow sea? the sea of Karskoc? the sea of Bengal?

### *Geography of the Bible.*

Where was the garden of Eden? for what is it famous? Where is mount Ararat? for what is it celebrated? Where are the rivers Euphrates and Tigris? for what are they famous? Where did Nineveh stand? for what is it noted? Where did Babylon stand? for what is it famous? Where was Ur of Chaldea? for what is it celebrated? Where is Canaan? for what is it noted? Where is Egypt? for what

is it famous as regards Abraham and his family? Where is the Red sea? for what is it famous in the history of the same family? Where is mount Sinai? Where the wilderness of the forty years journey of the Jews? Where is mount Nebo? for what is it noted? Where is the river Jordan, and for what is it distinguished? Where was the city of Jericho, and for what is it celebrated? Where dwelt the Canaanites? How did the Twelve tribes divide the country? Where is Jerusalem, and for what is it famous? Where is Samaria, and for what is it noted? Where are Dan and Bethel? what distinguished them? Which way and how far is Nineveh from Samaria? from Babylon? Which way and how far is Babylon from Jerusalem? Where was old Tyre? Where was ancient Media and Persia? How was Babylon situated with regard to these kingdoms? Where is Greece? which way and how far from Babylon? Which way and how far is Jerusalem from Greece? Where was modern Tyre? Where is Rome - which way and how far from Tyre? Which way and how far is Jerusalem from Rome? Which way and how far is Bethlehem from Jerusalem? What distinguished event took place at Bethlehem? Name the places on the map where Jesus Christ ministered - where he wrought his miracles, and name them - where he was crucified, and where he ascended to heaven. Name the places on the map where St. Paul and the Apostles preached, and trace Paul's voyage to Rome. [*Turn to the Map of the World.*] Which way and how far is Constantinople from Rome? Babylon from Rome? Egypt from Rome? Carthage from Rome? England from Rome? Spain and France from Rome? the Danube from Rome? Where is Arabia? Mecca? Medina? What remarkable character rose up here, and propagated a new religion? Which way and how far is Egypt from Arabia? the Coast of Barbary from Arabia? the straits of Gibraltar from Arabia? the kingdom of Spain from Arabia? Jerusalem from Arabia? the land of Palestine from Arabia? Persia from Arabia? Babylon from Arabia? When the Arabians had conquered all these countries, what city did they build in the east, and what did its name imply? Where are Georgia and Circassia? what is their distance and direction from Jerusalem? what conqueror rose up here? what is their history with regard to the Jews and Romans? Which way and how far is Constantinople from Circassia? Constantinople from Jerusalem? what is their history in relation to each other?

*Questions on the Map of Africa.*

How is Africa bounded? Where is Mount Atlas? Where is Sierra Leone? Where are the Mountains of the Moon, and how far do they extend? Where is the river Nile? where does it rise and where does it empty? when does it overflow its banks and how long? Where is the river Niger? where does it rise, and where is it supposed to empty itself? What inland city stands on the Niger? What commercial cities stand on the Nile? Where is the river Senegal? the Gambia? where do they empty? Where are Cunana and Congo? Where is the Gulf of Guinea? the Channel of Mozambique? the Straits of Babelmandel? Where are the Azores? the Madeiras? the Canaries? the Cape de Verd Isles? St. Thomas? Formosa? St. Matthew? Ascension? St. Helena? for what is St. Helena noted?

Where is Cape Surat? Cape Guardafui? the Cape of Good Hope? Cape Negro? Cape Verd? Where is Madagascar? Bourbon? Mauritius or Isle of France? the Comero Isles? What Sovereignities compose the States of Barbary? what is their situation and character. what power holds them tributary? Which way and how far is Constantinople from Morocco? Where is the Desert of Zahara? of Barca? Where is Negroland? Which way is Caffraria from Adela? What are the divisions of Nubia? Which is the more northerly, Barbary or Guinea? Which way is Abyssinia from Sierra Leone? Which is the more southerly, the country of the Hottentots or Ethiopia? Which way is Ethiopia from Egypt?

*Questions upon the Map of Palestine.*

Which is more northerly, Jerusalem or Samaria? Which is more southerly, Tyre or Zidon? Which is more easterly, Mount Hermon, or Mount Lebanon? Which is more westerly, Mount Carmel or Mount Gilboa? Which is more easterly, Jerico or Bethel? Which is more northerly, the Dead Sea or Sea of Gennesareth? Which is the principal river of Palestine? where does it rise, and where does it empty? Which is more northerly, Dan or Beersheba? How were the twelve tribes of Israel located, in regard to each other? which were the most northerly and which the most southerly? which tribes were located on the west and which on the east side of Jordan?

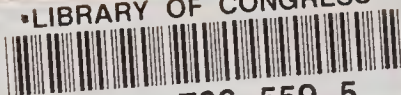








LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 015 766 559 5